REV. P. BULLIONS' GRAMMARS AND CLASSICS.

1. Practical Lessons in English Grammar and Composition.
2. The Principles of English Grammar, (for Common Schools.)
3. Introduction to Analytical and Practical English Grammar
5. Exercises in Parsing and Analysis.
8. First Lessons in Greek.
9. Caesar's Commentaries, with Introduction, Notes, Index, &c.
10. Caesar's Commentaries, with map.
11. Cicero's Orations, with map, notes, &c.
12. Latin Exercises.
13. First Lessons in Greek.
15. Greek Reader, with Introduction, &c.
16. Cooper's Virgil.

In constructing the above Grammars, the author has expressed the principles of the different languages as nearly as possible in the same words, and has arranged them in the same order. Thus the progress of the pupil is greatly facilitated, the study of one Grammar becomes an important aid in the study of another, an opportunity is afforded of seeing wherein they agree and wherein they differ, and a profitable exercise is furnished in comparative or general grammar.

"We are using Dr. Bullions' Grammars, English, Latin and Greek, and shall introduce all his works. We like them much."
(Prof.) Rev. C. Martin Hampden, Sydney College.

"We shall adopt Bullions' entire works."
Jerome Allen, Magnoketa Academy.

"I like much Dr. Bullions' whole series."
J. B. Wickersham.

"Send us 500 Bullions' Analytical English Grammar to introduce into the English Department of Antioch College. We use the Greek and Latin."
A. S. Dean.

A very large number of similar testimonials from all parts of the country are in the hands of the publishers.
Farmer, Brace & Co.'s Publications.

MATHEMATICAL SERIES.

2. Enos' Intellectual and Practical Arithmetic.
3. Dodd's Elementary and Practical Arithmetic.
4. Dodd's High School Arithmetic.
5. Dodd's Elementary Algebra.
6. Dodd's High School Algebra.
7. Dodd's Key to Algebra.

The steps taken in Scheir's Arithmetic are as easy as possible, but at every step the child gets on. In Enos' work the mental exercises are so varied as to prepare the pupil for almost every contingency in after life. The books prepared by Prof. J. B. Dodd, of Transylvania University, not only give great satisfaction in the school-room, but they have a marked influence upon other text books. No slight indication this of originality and well directed genius. The following gentlemen express in brief the opinions of those who use these books:

"I wish to introduce Scheir's little Arithmetic. It is just the thing for beginners."
J. Markham, Ohio.

"Having used Enos' Arithmetic in my school, I believe it to be superior to all other works of the kind."
W. Bailey, N. Y.

"Having used Dodd's High School Arithmetic for more than a year, I am free to say that I have no wish to change it for any other. Its divisions and general arrangement peculiarly adapt it to my wants."
J. W. P. Jeans, Principal Pierce Academy, Mass.

"I am delighted with Dodd's Algebra, and think it the best extant."
A. Lester.

"I consider Dodd's Algebra the very best work I have ever seen. We are using it."
B. F. Stern.

Dr. J. L. Comstock's Series on the Sciences, viz: Philosophy, Chemistry, Botany, Geology, Mineralogy, Physiology and Natural History.
Olney's Geographical Series and Outline Maps.
Griffin's Southern Reader, 1, 2, 3, 4.
Brocklesby's Meteorology and Views of the Microscopic World.
The Students' Series, including Primer, Spelling Book, Readers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and Juvenile Speaker. By J. S. Denman.

Kirkham's Elocution
Pahner's Bookkeeping for Common Schools.
Greeneaf's Grammar simplified.
Gallaudet & Hooker's School and Family Dictionary.
Bentley's Pictorial Spelling Book.
Goldsmith's Geographical View of the World.
Prof. Worthington Hooker's Physiology for High Schools.
Prof. Peissner's German Grammar.
THE FIRST SIX BOOKS
OF
CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES
ON THE
GALLIC WAR,
ADAPTED TO
BULLIONS’ LATIN GRAMMAR;
WITH AN INTRODUCTION, ON THE IDIOMS OF THE LATIN
LANGUAGE; COPIOUS EXPLANATORY NOTES; AND
AN INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, ETC.
REVISED AND CORRECTED.

By Rev. PETER BULLIONS, D. D.,
PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY; AUTHOR
OF THE SERIES OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN AND
ENGLISH, ON THE SAME PLAN, &C., &C.

TWENTIETH EDITION.

NEW YORK:
PRATT, WOODFORD, FARMER, AND BRACE.
NO. 4, COURTLANDT-STREET.
1855.
Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1847, by

PETER BULLIONS,

in the Clerk's Office of the Northern District of New-York.
Cæsar is usually, and with great propriety, among the first books but into the hands of pupils commencing the study of Latin. In adapting a portion of this work, as well as the Latin Reader, to his Latin Grammar, the chief object of the Editor has been to lead the student, in the beginning of his course, to a minute and thorough acquaintance with the principles of the language. The text of Oudendorp has been generally followed. For the sake of convenience, and also because, with many, Cæsar is the first book studied after the Grammar, the Introduction on the Latin Idioms prefixed to the Latin Reader has been prefixed here also. To this as well as to the Grammar reference is constantly made at the foot of the page, for the purpose of explaining and illustrating principles as they occur; and if the pupil will only take the pains to examine these references as he proceeds, he will gradually, and with comparatively little labor, become so familiar with the grammatical structure and idioms of the language that his future progress will be much more rapid and pleasant than it can be without such a course of training.

To the text copious notes have been added, for the purpose of explaining more particularly some constructions of the language,—aiding the pupil in the selection of an appropriate term, or, in giving variety to his expression,—and, in some cases, of assisting him to apprehend more clearly the meaning of the author. These, together with the references to the Introduction and Grammar above specified, contain such and so much assistance as an industrious and intelligent pupil, at this stage of his progress, in preparing his lessons, may be supposed to need from his teacher; so that by a proper use of this work, both the teacher will be relieved in a great measure from that labor, and interruption of other duties which the ren-
dering of this assistance would require, and the pupil will have always at hand the assistance needed. These notes are taken chiefly from Dymock's Cæsar, Glasgow edition. A few have been added from other sources.

The Vocabulary or index at the end of the work is abridged from the same author, and contains various and important information respecting the persons and places mentioned in the text, and also respecting many things belonging to the antiquities and polity of the Romans and their method of conducting military operations. In this part several wood cuts have been introduced to aid the pupil in forming correct ideas of some of the engines and operations of war, as they existed in the days of Cæsar.

The map of Ancient Gaul has been prepared with special reference to this work, and exhibits the divisions of that country, with the names of nations, tribes, and towns, mentioned by Cæsar, as they existed in his time, so far as their position can be ascertained from authentic sources. The modern names of the same places will be found, generally, by consulting the Index.

A correct pronunciation as it regards quantity should be attended to from the beginning. In order to aid the pupil in forming correct habits in this too much neglected part of study, the quantity of the penult syllable has been marked in all words of more than two syllables, except where the penult vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant, in which case it is always long; or where the penult vowel is followed by another vowel, in which case it is almost always short; or when the syllable being common, that is, either short or long, there is no danger of the quantity being given wrong. In words of two syllables there is little danger of wrong pronunciation, and if, in words of more than two syllables, the quantity of the penult is correctly given, there is little danger of error elsewhere.

With a view to render the work as full as was deemed necessary, and at the same time to bring the price so low as to make it more generally accessible, only the first six books of the Commentaries on the Gallic war have been taken. These contain all that portion of this author usually read in academies and schools, and to have taken more would only have increased the size and the price of the book without any corresponding benefit to the purchaser.

The Editor takes this opportunity to renew his grateful acknowledgements to the many learned men, and instructors of youth, for
the favor with which his humble labors have been received by them, and for the many important suggestions communicated, by which he has been enabled to add essentially to their value and usefulness. A Greek Reader adapted to the Greek Grammar is now preparing, and will be published as speedily as possible.

Albany Academy,
February 26, 1845.
INTRODUCTION.

SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, Man is mortal.
2. Sentences are of two kinds, simple and compound.
3. A simple sentence contains but one subject and one verb; as, Life is short. Time flies.
4. A compound sentence contains two or more simple sentences combined; as, Life, which is short, should be well employed.
5. In the combining of words to form a sentence, observe carefully the following

General Principles of Syntax.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood, and a subject, expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, must have a substantive expressed or understood with which it agrees, § 98 and § 146.*
3. Every relative must have an antecedent or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees, § 99.
4. Every nominative has its own verb expressed or understood, of which it is the subject, §§ 100, 101, 102. Or is placed after the substantive verb in the predicate, § 103.
5. Every finite verb; i.e., every verb in the indicative, subjunctive or imperative mood, has its own nominative, expressed or understood, §§ 101, 102, and when the infinitive has a subject it is in the accusative, § 145. The infinitive without a subject does not form a sentence or proposition, § 143.
6. Every oblique case is governed by some word, expressed or understood, in the sentence of which it forms a part

* The references are to the sections in the Latin Grammar.
Resolution or Analysis.

Every simple sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate, § 94, 6. 7. 8. In analyzing a sentence, it is necessary to distinguish between the Grammatical subject and predicate, and the Logical subject and predicate.

The Grammatical subject is the name or thing spoken of, without, or separated from, all modifying words or clauses, and which stands as the nominative to the verb, or the accusative before the infinitive.

The Logical subject is the same word in connection with the qualifying or restricting expressions, which go to make up the full and precise idea of the thing spoken of.

The Grammatical predicate is the word or words containing the simple affirmation made respecting the subject.

The Logical predicate is the grammatical predicate combined with all those words or expressions that modify or restrict it in any way; thus:

In the sentence, "An inordinate desire of admiration often produces a contemptible levity of deportment;" the Grammatical subject is "desire;" the Logical "An inordinate desire of admiration." The Grammatical predicate is "produces," the Logical, "produces often a contemptible levity of deportment."

In Latin and English, the general arrangement of a sentence is the same, i. e., the sentence commonly begins with the subject and ends with the predicate. But the order of the words in each of these parts, is usually so different in Latin, from what it is in English, that one of the first difficulties a beginner has to encounter with a Latin sentence, is to know how "to take it in," or to arrange it in the proper order of the English. This is technically called construing or giving the order. To assist in this, some advantage may be found by carefully attending to the following

Directions for Beginners.

Direct. I. As all the other parts of a sentence depend upon the two leading parts, namely, the subject or NOMINATIVE, and the predicate or VERB; the first thing to be done with every sentence, is to find out these. In order to this,
1. Look for the leading verb, which is always in the present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, or future of the indicative, or in the imperative mood,* and usually at or near the end of the sentence.

2. Having found the verb, observe its number and person; this will aid in finding its nominative, which is a noun or pronoun in the same number and person with the verb, commonly before it, and near the beginning of the sentence, though not always so, § 151. R. I. with exceptions.

**D**i**r**e**c**t. II. Having thus found the nominative and verb, and ascertained their meaning, the sentence may be resolved from the Latin into the English order, as follows:

1. Take the Vocative, Exciting, Introductory, or connecting words, if there are any.
2. The NOMINATIVE.
3. Words limiting or explaining it, i.e., words agreeing with it, or governed by it, or by one another, where they are found, till you come to the verb.
4. The VERB.
5. Words limiting or explaining it, i.e., words which modify it, are governed by it, or depend upon it.
6. Supply everywhere the words *understood.*
7. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally as they depend one upon another, proceeding with each of them as above.

**D**i**r**e**c**t. III. In arranging the words for translation, in the subordinate parts of a sentence, observe the following

*Rules for construing.*

I. An oblique case, or the infinitive mood, is put after the word that governs it.

Exc. The relative and interrogative are usually put before the governing word, unless that be a preposition; if it is, then after it.

II. An adjective, if no other word depend upon it or be coupled with it, is put before its substantive; but if another word depend upon it, or be governed by it, it is usually placed after it.

* All the other parts of the verb are generally used in subordinate clauses. So, also, is the pluperfect indicative. In oblique discourse, the leading verb is in the infinitive, § 141. Rule VI.
INTRODUCTION.

III. The participle is usually construed after its substantive, or the word with which it agrees.

IV. The relative and its clause, should, if possible, come immediately after the antecedent.

V. When a question is asked, the nominative comes after the verb; (in English between the auxiliary and the verb.) Interrogative words, however, such as quis, quotus, quantus uter, &c., come before the verb.

VI. After a transitive active verb, look for an accusative, and after a preposition, for an accusative or ablative, and arrange the words accordingly.

VII. Words in apposition must be construed as near together as possible.

VIII. Adverbs, adverbial phrases, prepositions with their cases, circumstances of time, place, cause, manner, instrument, &c., should be placed, in general, after the words which they modify. The case absolute commonly before them, and often first in the sentence.

IX. The words of different clauses must not be mixed together, but each clause translated by itself, in its order, according to its connection with, or dependence upon, those to which it is related.

X. Conjunctions should be placed before the last of two words, or sentences connected.
LATIN IDIOMS.*

PARTICULAR DIRECTIONS AND MODELS FOR TRANSLATION.

The following explanations and directions are intended chiefly for reference. But it will be of great advantage for the pupil to become familiar with them by going through them two or three times, in course, simultaneously with his reading lessons.

1. Before translating, every sentence should be read over till it can be read correctly and with ease, paying special attention to the quantity and pronunciation. The words should then be arranged according to the preceding general directions, and translated as they are arranged, separately or in clusters, as may be found convenient; always remembering to place adjectives and adjective pronouns with their substantives before translating. The sense and grammatical construction being thus ascertained, the translation may then be read over without the Latin, and due attention paid to the English idiom. The whole sentence, whether simple or compound, may then be analyzed as directed § 152, and last of all, every word parsed separately as directed, § 153.

2. In order to arrange and translate with ease, it is necessary to be familiar with, and readily to distinguish the different cases, genders, and numbers of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles, and to translate them correctly and promptly, in these cases and numbers, &c.; and also to distinguish and correctly translate the verb in its various moods, tenses, numbers, persons, &c. This can be acquired only by continual practice and drilling, which should be kept up till the utmost readiness is attained.

3. The English prepositions used in translating the different cases in Latin, for the sake of convenience, may be called signs of those cases; and in translating these, the English definite or indefinite article is to be used as the sense requires. The signs of the cases are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom. (No sign.)</th>
<th>Gen. (No sign.)</th>
<th>Dat. (No sign.)</th>
<th>Ace. (No sign.)</th>
<th>Voc. 0. or no sign.</th>
<th>Abl. With, from, in, by, &amp;c.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Of.</td>
<td>To or for.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* A Latin idiom, strictly speaking, is a mode of speech peculiar to the Latin language. It is here used in a more extended sense, to denote a mode of speech different from the English, or which, if rendered word for word, and with the ordinary signs of cases, moods, tenses, &c., would not make a correct English sentence.
In certain constructions the idiom of the English language requires the oblique cases in Latin to be translated in a manner different from the above. The chief of these constructions are the following:

4. The Genitive.

1. The genitive denoting the place where, R. XXXVI., is translated *at*; as, *Roma*, “At Rome.”

2. Denoting *price*, sometimes *for*; as, *Vendidit pluris*, “He sold it for more;” or without a sign; as, *Constitit pluris*, “It cost more.”

5. The Dative.

1. After a verb of taking away, R. XXIX.; the dative is translated *by*; as, *Eripuit me morti*, “He rescued me from death;” *Eripitur morti*, “He is rescued from death.” R. XXXII–III. See § 123, Exp.

2. Denoting the doer after a passive verb, R. XXXIII., it is translated *by*; as, *Vix audior ulli*, “I am scarcely heard by any one.”

3. Denoting the possessor, R. XV., Obs. 1, it is translated as the genitive; as, *E i in mentem venit*, “It came into the mind to him,” i.e., *of him*, or into his mind.

4. After verbs signifying “to be present,” *at*; as, *Adfuit precibus*, He was present at prayers. § 112, R. I.

6. The Ablative.

1. The ablative denoting a property or quality of another substantive, R. VII., is translated *of*; as, *Vir mira magnitudine*, “A man of wonderful size.”

2. The place where, R. XXXVI. Exc., commonly *at*, sometimes *in*.

3. After the comparative degree, § 120, R. XXIV., *than*; as, *Dulcior melius*, “Sweeter than honey.”

4. Denoting the material of which a thing is made, § 128, Obs. 2, *of*; as, *Factus ebore*, “Made of ivory.”

5. After *dignus* and words denoting origin; also after *opus* and *usus*, signifying need, *of*; as, *Dignus honore*, “Worthy of honor.”
6. Denoting time how long, sometimes in; as, *Unodie fecit, "He did it in one day;" sometimes without a sign; as, *Unodiegoabfuit, "He was absent one day."

7. Time when, at, on; as, *Solisoccasu, "At the setting of the sun;" *IdibusAprilis, "On the ides of April."

8. After verbs of depriving, § 125, of; as, *Eumvestespolidvit, "He stripped him of his garment.

**Cases without Signs.**

7. When the genitive, dative, or ablative, is governed by an intransitive verb which is translated by a transitive verb in English, (§ 38, Obs. 4.,) or by an adjective denoting likeness, the sign of the case is omitted; as,

2. Dat. *Prefuitexercitui,* He commanded the army.
3. " *Placuitregi,* It pleased the king.
5. " *Potitusestimperio,* He obtained the government.
6. Dat. *Similispatri,* Like his father.

Obs. But when rendered by an intransitive verb in English, the sign of the case must be used; as,

7. *Insidianturnobis,* They lie in wait for us.

8. When a verb governs two datives, by R. XIX., the dative of the end or design is sometimes rendered without the sign; as,

1. *Estmihi voluptati,* It is to me [for] a pleasure; i.e., It is [or brings] a pleasure to me.

9. The ablative absolute, R. LX., (See No. 109,) and frequently time how long, R. XL., are without the sign; as,

1. *Bellofinito,* The war being ended.
2. *Sex mensibusabfuit,* He was absent six months.

10. When the ablative is governed by a preposition, the English of that preposition takes the place of the sign of the ablative, and no other will be used; thus,

1. *Abexercituum,* From the army.
3. *Inagro,* In the field.
4. *Cumdignitáte,* With dignity.
5. *Pr castris,* Before the camp.
6. *Tenuspube,* Up to the middle.

11. In order to specify more particularly, the English idiom sometimes requires the possessive pronouns, my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their, (not expressed in Latin unless contrasted with others,) to be supplied before a noun, and espe-
cially if they refer to the subject of the sentence. The sense will shew when this is to be done and what pronoun is to be used; as,

1. *Filius similis patri,* A son like his father.
2. *Reverére parentes,* Reverence your parents.

12. Nouns in apposition, (§ 97, R. I.,) must be brought as near together as possible, and the sign of the case, when used, prefixed to the first only; as,

1. Nom. *Cicéro Oratór,* Cicero the orator.
3. Dat. *Ciceróni oratóri,* To Cicero the orator,

13. The noun in apposition is sometimes connected with the noun before it by the words *as, being,* &c.; as,

1. *Misit me e comitém,* He sent me as a companion.
2. *Hic puer venit,* He came, when [or being] a boy.

Adjectives and Substantives.

14. In translating an adjective or adjective pronoun and a substantive together, the adjective is commonly placed first, and the sign of the case is prefixed to it, and not to the noun, § 98, R. II.; as,


15. When two or more adjectives, coupled by a conjunction belong to one substantive, they may be placed either before or after it; as,

1. *Jupiter optimus et maximus,* Jupiter the best and greatest; or *Optimus et maximus Jupiter,* The best and greatest Jupiter.
2. *Viri sapientis et docti,* Of a man wise and learned; or *Sapientis et docti viri,* Of a wise and learned man.

16. The adjective must be placed after its substantive when the former has a negative joined with it, or another word in the sentence governed by it, or dependent upon it. So also *solus*; as,

1. *Dux peritus belli,* A general skilled in war.
2. *Filius similis patri,* A son like his father.
3. *Poeta dignus honóre,* A poet worthy of honor
4. *Hónines soli sapienti,* Men alone are wise.
5. *Avis tam parum decória,* A bird so little beautiful.
17. The adjectives *primus, medius, ultimus, extrémus, infimus, imus, summus, suprémus, reliquus, ceter, or ceterus, and some others describing a part of an object, are translated as substantives, with the sign of the case prefixed, and of before the substantive following, § 98, Obs. 9; as

1. *Mediâ nocte,* In the middle of the night.
2. *Ad summum montem,* To the top of the mountain.

18. When these adjectives (No. 17,) describe the whole and not a part only, they are translated as No. 11.

_Summum bonum,* The chief good.
_Supremus dies,* The last day.

19. An adjective without a substantive usually has a substantive understood, but obvious from the connexion, § 98, Obs. 5. Masculine adjectives, (if plural,) commonly agree with *hominès,* or, if possessives, with *amicæ, cive, or militès,* understood; and neuters, with *factum, negotium, verbum, tempus, &c.*; as,

1. *Boni (hominès) sunt rari,* Good men are rare,
2. *Caesar misit suos (militès,)* Caesar sent his soldiers.
3. *Cocles transvavit ad suos (cives,)* Cocles swam over to his fellow-citizens.
5. *In posterum (tempus,)* In time to come,—for the future.
6. *In eo (loco) ut,* In such a situation that.

20. Adjectives commonly used without a substantive, (but still belonging to a substantive understood,) may be regarded as substantives. They are such as *mortâles, boni, mali, supéri, inféri, Græcus, Romanus,* &c. (See § 98, Obs. 5;) as,

1. *Mali odérunt bonos,* The wicked hate the good.
2. *Græcos Romanî vicérunt,* The Romans conquered the Greeks.

21. Adjective words when partitives, or used partitively, take the gender of the noun expressing the whole, and govern it in the genitive plural, (if a collective noun, in the genitive singular,) § 107, Rule X. In this case verbs and adjectives agree with the partitive as if it were a noun; as,

1. *Aliquis philosophōrum Some one of the philosophers has dixit,* said.
2. *Una musârum veniet,* One of the muses will come
3. *Multi nobilium juvēnum, Many noble young men.*

22. The comparative degree not followed by an ablativus, or the conjunction *quam,* (than) is usually translated by the positive with *too or rather* prefixed. For explanation see § 120, Obs. 5; as,
1. Iracundior est, (scil. He is too (or rather) passionate)

2. Ægrius ferebat, He took it rather ill.

3. Altius volavit, He flew too high.

Obs. In a comparison, eo or tanto with a comparative in one clause, and quo or quanto in the other, may be rendered "the;" (See No. 44. 7. 8.) as,

4. Quo plures, eō feliciōres, The more the happier.

23. The superlative degree expressing comparison, is usually preceded by the article the in English, (§ 25,) as,

1. Doctissimus Romanorum, The most learned of the Romans.
2. Fortissimus miles in ex- The bravest soldier in the army.

24. When the superlative does not express comparison, but only eminence or distinction, it is translated with the article a or an prefixed in the singular, and without an article in the plural; or by the positive, with very, eminently, &c., prefixed, (§ 25,); as,

1. Homo doctissimus. A most learned (or a very learned) man.
2. Homines doctissimi, Most learned (or very learned) men.

25. Alius repeated with a different word in the same clause, renders that clause double, and requires it to be translated as in the following examples:

1. Alius alia via, One by one way, another by another.
2. Aliud aliis videtur, One thing seems good to some, another to others, i. e. Some think one thing, and some another. (See other varieties. § 98. Obs. 11.)

The same usage occurs with words derived from alius. See Gr. § 98, Obs. 12.

26. The distributive numeral adjectives are usually translated by the cardinal number indicated, with "each," or "to each," annexed; sometimes by repeating the cardinal thus, "one by one;" "two by two," &c., § 24, 11; as,

1. Consules binas naves habēbant, The consuls had each two ships, or, had two ships each.
2. Quā singūli carri ducerentur, Where wagons could be led one by one.
3. Tigna bina, Beams two by two, or in pairs.
4. Singūlis singūlas partes dēstrībuit aequales He distributed equal parts, one to each.
5. Singūlis mensibus fecit, This he did every (or each) month.
6. Plures singūliuxores habent, They have each many wives.
Pronouns.

27. 1st. The adjective pronoun, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, with a noun following, is used as an adjective, and means, in the singular, “*this,*”—in the plural, “*these.*”—*ille*, *illa*, *illud,*—*is*, *ea*, *id,*—*iste*, *ista*, *istud,* with a noun, in the singular, mean “*that,*”—in the plural, “*those.*”

2d. Without a noun following they are all used substantively, and mean, in the singular, *he*, *she*, *it*; in the plural, *they*; thus,

1. *Hic vir,* This man.
2. *illa femina,* That woman.
4. *Hic fecit,* He did it.
5. *illa venit,* She came.
6. *ea (Dido) condidit eam,* She built it, (Carthage.)

Obs. In sentences containing an enumeration of particulars, the same pronoun is sometimes used in successive clauses, but they require to be translated differently, (§ 98, Obs. 12.); thus,

7. *Hic,*
8. *Is,*
9. *Ille,*
10. *Alter,*

When antithesis or contrast is stated, *hic* is translated “this,” and refers to the nearer antecedent, *ille,* “that,” and refers to the more distant; as,

11. *Hic minor natu est, ille major,* This is the younger, that, the older.

28. *Is*, *ea*, *id,* followed by *ut,* or the relative, *qui*, *quae*, *quod,* in the next clause, means “*such,*” and implies comparison. The relative after it may be translated, *that I,* *that thou,* *that he,* *that they,* &c., according as the antecedent requires, or it may be translated *as,* and its verb by the infinitive (§ 31, Obs. 2.); thus,

1. *Is homo erat ut,* &c., He was such a man that, &c.
2. *Neque is sum qui terrear,* I am not such *that* I may be frightened. Or better thus, I am not such a one *as* to be frightened.

Obs. The adverb *èo* with *ut* following it means “so far,” “to such a degree,” “to such a point,” “in such a state;” as,

3 *E ë pervénit ut,* “He came so far, (i. e. made such progress,) that;”
INTRODUCTION.

Possessive Pronouns.

29. The possessive pronoun is equivalent in meaning to the genitive of the substantive pronoun, and may often be so translated; as,

1. *Beneficio suo* popultque Romāns, By the kindness of himself and of the Roman people.
2. *Cum me a nemo scripta legat*, Since no one reads the writings of me, fearing to recite them publicly.

30. The possessives, *suus, sua, suum*, in Latin, agrees in gender, number, and case, with the noun denoting the *object possessed*, but in English must be translated by a pronoun denoting the *possessor*; thus,

2. *Parentes diligunt suam sobōlem*, Parents love their offspring.

_Obs._ In the first sentence, "suos," agrees with "liberos," but must be translated "his," denoting "pater," the possessor. In the second, *suam*, though singular, to agree with *sobōlem*, must be translated "their," so as to denote the possessors, "parentes," &c.

Usage of Sui, Suus;—Illae, Iste, Hic, Is.

31. The reflexive, *sui*, and its possessive, *suus*, generally refer to the subject of the leading verb* in the sentence; *ille, iste, hic, is*, never refer to that subject, but to some other person or thing spoken of; thus,

4. *Dicit se valēre*, He says that he is well.

_Obs._ In the second and third sentence, *suos*, "his," and *suam*, "their," referring to some other person than *pater* or *parentes*, would be made by the genitive of *ille, iste, hic, is*. In the first and fourth, *se* would be made *eum*. For the difference between these words usually translated "he," see Gr. § 28, Obs. 3.

* See Gr. § 28, Obs. 3, Ist., with note.
Note. If a second subject and verb be introduced, the reflexive governed by that verb will belong to the new subject, unless the whole clause refer to the words, wishes, or actions, of the first subject; as,

5. Scipio civitatibus Italiam reddi. Scipio restored to the States of Italy, all the things which they recognised as their own.

Usage of Ipse.

32. Ipse renders the word with which it is joined emphatic, whether expressed or understood, and is equal to the English, myself, thyself, himself, themselves, &c., annexed to it; sometimes to the word very prefixed. With numbers it denotes exactness, and sometimes it is used by itself as a reflexive instead of sui, § 28, Obs. 3, 2d.; as,

1. Ipse faciam, (i.e. ego ipse,) I will do it myself.
2. Ipse fruēris otio, (i.e. tu ipse,) Thou thyself enjoyest ease.
3. Jaculo cadit ipse, (i.e. ille ipse,) He himself falls by a dart.
5. Tempus ipsūm convēnit, The very time was agreed on.
6. Ad ipsās portas, To the very gates.
7. Decem ipsi dies, Ten whole days.
8. Precātus est ut ipsum liberāret, He begged that he would liberate him.
9. Donum ipsi datum, A present given to him.

33. When joined with the personal pronouns, used in a reflexive sense, and in an oblique case, it sometimes agrees with them in case, but more commonly with the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative. It is always, however, to be translated with the oblique case, to which it adds the force of the word self, or simply of emphasis; thus,

1. Se ipsō interfēcit (or se ipsum,) He slew himself.
2. Nosce te ipsē (or te ipsum,) Know thyself.
3. Mihi ipsē (or ipsi,) I favor myself.
4. Agam per me ipsē, I will do it myself.
5. Virtus est per se ipsa laudābilis, Virtue is to be praised for itself.
6. Se ipsōs omnes naturā dīlītunt. All men naturally love themselves.

RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

General Principle.

34. Every sentence containing a relative and its antecedent, is a compound sentence, of which the relative with its
clause forms one of the parts, and is used further to describe or limit its antecedent word in the other part. That word may be the subject, or belong to the predicate, or to some circumstance connected with either. But to whichever of these it belongs, the relative and its clause must all be translated together, and in immediate connexion with its antecedent word. Hence the following

**General Rule of Arrangement.**

35. The relative with its clause should be placed immediately after, or as near as possible to the antecedent, and, unless unavoidable, another substantive should not come between them; thus,

**Latin Arrangement.**

1. *Urbi immīnet mons, qui ad Arcadiam procurrît.* Here "qui" with its clause, "ad Arcadiam procurrît," belongs to, and further describes the antecedent subject, "mons." As then the subject with all that belongs to it must be taken before the verb, (Gr. § 152, Direct. 2, 2d, 3d,) the above sentence should be arranged for translation, thus: *Mons qui procurrît ad Arcadiam, immīnet urbi,* A mountain, which extends to Arcadia, hangs over the city.

Or, the English order may be inverted, thus: *Urbi immīnet mons, qui procurrît ad Arcadiam,* Over the city hangs a mountain, which, &c.

But not, *Mons immīnet urbi, qui,* &c., because this arrangement would place "urbi" between the antecedent, "mons," and the relative, "qui," and so lead to a false translation. The following sentence also affords an example:

2. *Proxīme urbem Eurōtas fluvius delabitur, ad cujus ripas Spartānī se exercēre solēbant.* Arrange, *Proxīme urbem delabitur,* &c., Close to the city flows; or, *Eurōtas fluvius, ad cujus ripas,* &c.

36. When another noun necessarily comes between the relative and its antecedent, there is more danger of ambiguity in English than in Latin, as the gender and number of the Latin relative will generally direct to the proper antecedent, to which in English we are directed chiefly by the
sense. The following sentence affords an example of this kind: *Ad Byzantium fugit, oppidum naturae munitum et arte, quod copiam abundat.*

37. The antecedent in Latin is often understood when the English idiom requires it to be supplied. It is generally understood, and should be supplied in the proper case:

1st. When it is intentionally left indefinite, or is obvious from the gender and number of the relative, and the connexion in which it stands, as in No. 19; as,

1. *Sunt (homines) quos iuvat*; There are men whom it delights.

2. *Hic est (id) quod quærimus*; That which we seek is here.

"*Hic sunt, (ea) quae quærimus* Those things which we seek are here.

3. (*Is*) qui cito dat, bis dat; (*He*) who gives promptly, gives twice.

*Note.* In the preceding sentences the antecedent supplied is in parentheses.

2d. The antecedent is usually understood before the relative, when it is expressed after it, and in the same case, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 2d.); as,

4. *Pars terrae* quae terrae fuit; The part which was earthy.

5. *Locum in quem venit*; The place into which he came.

"*Apud Actium locum* qui locum est; At Actium a place which is, &c.

*Note.* 1. When the antecedent word is expressed in the relative clause, as in the examples Nos. 4, and 5, or is repeated, as in the following, No. 6, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 3d.,) it is omitted in translating; as,

6. *Erant omnino duo itinera, qui ...* There were only two ways by which they could go from home.

*Note 2.* *Quisquis, quidquid, or quicquid,* (and also *quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque,* "whoever, whatever," used as a relative without an antecedent, includes a general or indefinite antecedent, in such case as the construction requires, and is equivalent to *omnis,* or *quivis qui,—omne,* or *quidvis quod;* as,

7. *Fortunam quae cuncte (i.e. They would hazard whatever fortune which) might happen.*

8. *Quidquid tectigeta aurum* Whateve (i.e. everything which) fielbat, he had touched became gold,
Note 3. When the antecedent is a proposition, or clause of a sentence, § 99, Exp., the relative is put in the neuter gender, and sometimes has id before it referring to the same clause; as,

9. Servi, quod (or id quod) nonquam ante factum, manumissi et milites facti sunt; The slaves, which never had been done before, were set free and made soldiers.

38. In the beginning of a sentence, a relative, with or without quum, or other conjunctive term, and referring to some word, clause, or circumstance, in a preceding sentence, usually has the antecedent word repeated, or, if evident, understood; and instead of who or which, may be rendered this, that, these, those, or, and this, and that, &c., according as the closeness of the connexion may require, (§ 99, Obs. S), as,

1. Quæ urbs quum infestaretur, And since (or because) this city was infested.

" Quæ urbs quum missi essent, When these ambassadors had been sent.

2. Quæ contentio cuncta permiscuit, This contention threw all things into confusion.

3. Quibus nunciis acceptis, These tidings being received.

4. Quod ille cernet, And when he saw this.

5. Quod impetrasset, And when he had obtained this.

6. Quod ille cernet, And when he saw this.

7. Quod missi essent, When these ambassadors had been sent.

8. Quod factum est, And this being done (or accomplished).

9. Quod factum est, And this being done (or accomplished).

Note. To this construction belongs quod, (apparently for propter or ad quod, § 128,) in the beginning of a sentence, referring to something previously stated, and meaning, “on account of, with respect to, or as to, this thing;” as,

10. Quod diis gratias habeo, On account of this, (for this thing, wherefore,) I give thanks to the gods.

11. Quod dicet se venturum, As to what (as to that thing which) he said, that he would come.

39. When the antecedent word is not repeated, as in No. 38, the relative, with or without quum, or other conjunctive term, may be rendered he, she, it, they, or and he, and she, &c., according as the antecedent word requires, (§ 99, Obs. S); as,
1. Qui quum admitterēret, And when he admitted.
2. Qua quum vidisset, And when she had seen.
3. Qua quum vixer esset, When she had been (or was) seen.
4. Qua quum dare nollet, And when he would not give it
5. Quibus quum occurrisset, When he had met them.
6. Quae quum visisset, When she had been (or was) seen.
7. Quae quum visa esset, When she had been (or was) seen.
8. Quibus quum dare nollet, And when he would not give it
9. Qua quum admitterēret, And when she had admitted.
10. Qua quum admitterēret, And when he admitted.

40. When the relative in any case is followed by the subjunctive mood, and the two clauses, viz: the antecedent and relative, involve a comparison; or the latter expresses the purpose, object, or design, of something expressed by the former, the relative is better translated by the conjunction that and the personal pronoun; thus, that I, that thou, that he, that they, &c., as the antecedent word may require, (See Gr. § 141, R. II. and Explanation);

1. Missus sum quia te adducerem, I have been sent that I might bring you.
2. Neque is quia facias id, You are not such a person that you should do that.
3. Quis est tam lynceus quia, &c. Who is so sharp sighted that he.
4. Misit legatos quia cognoscērent, He sent ambassadors that they might find out.
5. Fruges mandavit quia s disseminaret, She gave him fruits that he might scatter them.

41. In the expressions, quippe quia, ut quia, utpote quia, the relative is better translated by the personal pronoun which represents the antecedent, (§ 141, Obs. 4.); as,

1. Quippe quia nunquam legērim, For, (or because) I have never read them.

42. After dignus, indignus, idoneus, and the like, in the predicate, the relative and subjunctive mood may be rendered by the infinitive, (§ 141, Obs. 2. 1st.); as,

1. Dignus quia amētur, Worthy to be loved.
2. Si dignum quia numerētur If you shall elect a person worthy to be reckoned, &c.

43. Sometimes the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should generally be placed first; as,
1. *Qui bonis non recte utitur, e i* Good things become evil to *him*
bona mala fiunt, *who does not use good things*
well.
2. *Qui cito dat, (is) bis dat,* He gives twice *who gives quickly*

**Correlative Adjectives.**

44. The demonstratives, *tot,* so many, and *totidem,* just
so many; *tantus,* as great, so great, as much, so much;
talis, such; are followed by their relatives, *quot,* *quantus,*
*qualis,* signifying *as,* to denote comparison; as,
1. *Tot homines quot,* As many men as.
2. *Totidem naves quot,* Just so many ships as
3. *Tantus exercitus quantus,* As great (or so great) an army as.
4. *Talis homo qualis,* Such a man as.

So also the correlative adverbs.
5. *Toties quoties,* As often as.
6. *Tam quam,* So as.
7. *Eo quod,* By so much as.
8. *Tanto quanto,* By so much as; or
   In proportion as.

45. Instead of the relative in such sentences, the conjunctions
*ac,* *atque,* (§ 149, Obs. 6,) *ut,* and the relative *qui,*
*quae,* *quod,* are sometimes used and may generally be translated,
"as," or "that."
1. *Honos talis paucis est delatus* Such honor has been bestowed
    a c mihi, upon few persons, *as upon me.
2. *Cum totidem navibus atque* He returned with just as many
    profectus erat, rediit, ships as he had departed with.
3. *Nulla est tanta vis quae non* No power is so great *as (or, that*
    frangit possit, it) cannot be broken.

46. When the relative only is expressed in sentences implying
comparison, the *demonstrative* (No. 44,) must be supplied
and the sentence translated as above; as,
1. *Crocodilus parit (tant a) ova* The crocodile lays *as large*eggs
    gu an t a ansères, *as geese lay.
2. *(Tot) millia quot unquam* As many thousands *as ever came*
    venere Mycenis, from Mycenae.

47. Sometimes, as in No. 43, the natural order of the sentence
is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first
and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent
clause should be placed first; as,
1. *Quot homines tot causae,* *As many causes as there are men.*
   *arrange*
48. The relatives, *quot*, *quoties*, *quantus*, *qualis*, used interrogatively, or in an exclamation, or indefinitely, in the indirect interrogation, and without implying comparison, have no reference to an antecedent term either expressed or understood, and are translated respectively, "how many," "how often," "how great," or "how much," or "what," or "of what kind;" as,

1. *Inter.* Quo *t annos habet?* How many years has he? i.e. how old is he?
2. *Indef.* Nescio *quot*, I know not how much.
4. *Indef.* Doce *quales sint*, Tell us of what kind they are.

**THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.**

**General Principle.**

49. Every finite verb (§ 95, 5,) has its own subject, expressed or understood, in the nominative case.

*Obs.* The subject of the verb is the person or thing spoken of, and may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, a *verb in the infinitive mood*, a *clause of a sentence*, or any thing which, however expressed, is the subject of thought or speech. (§ 101, Exp.)

**General Rule of Arrangement.**

50. The subject and all the words agreeing with it, governed by it, connected with it, or dependent upon it, must be arranged in the order of their connection and dependence, and translated before the verb.

1. *Canis latrat,* The dog barks.
2. *Ego Scribo,* I write.
3. *Ludere est iucundum,* To play is pleasant.
4. Dulce est pro patriâ mori, To die for one's country is sweet.
6. *Vir sapit qui pauca loquitur,* The man who speaks little is wise.

51. When the subject of a verb is the infinitive, either alone or with its subject; or a clause of a sentence, connected by *ut*, *quod*, or other conjunctive term, the English pronoun, *it*, is put with the verb referring to that infinitive or clause following it, and which is its proper subject; as,
1. Facile est jubēre, It is easy to command.
2. Nuntiatum est classem devinci, It was announced that the fleet was conquered.
3. Semper accidit ut absis It always happens that you are absent.
4. Quō fit ut metuas, How happens it that you fear.
5. Nunquam Romānis placuisset That it never had pleased the Romans, that a commander should be killed by his own soldiers.

52. The verb must always be translated in its proper tense, and in the same person and number with its nominative. (See paradigms of the verb, §§ 54-70.) But when it has two or more nouns or pronouns in the singular, taken together, or a collective noun expressing many as individuals, as its subject, the verb must be translated in the plural; as,

1. Et pater et mater venērunt, Both his father and mother have come.
2. Turba quoquoversum ruunt, The crowd rush in every direction.

53. The nominative to a verb in the first or second person, being evident from the termination, is seldom expressed in Latin; but must be supplied in translating; as,

1. Scribo, I write.
2. Legis, Thou readest.
3. Scribimus, We write.
4. Legitis, You read.

54. When the verb in the third person has no nominative expressed, it refers to some noun or pronoun evident from the connection; and, both in translating and parsing, the pronoun ille, or is, in the nominative case, and in the gender and number of the noun or pronoun referred to, must be supplied; as,

1. (Ille) scribit, (He) writes.
2. (Illi) scribunt, (They) write.

55. When the same word is the subject of several verbs closely connected in the same construction, it is expressed with the first and understood to the rest, both in Latin and English; thus,

1. Cæsar venit, vidit, et vicit, Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.
2. Dicitur Cæsārem venisse, It is said that Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.

56. A question is made in Latin in four different ways, as follows:
1st. By an interrogative pronoun; as, Quiis venit? "Who comes?" Quem misit? "Whom did he send?" Cujus pecus hoc? "Whose flock is this?" &c.

2d. By an interrogative adverb; as, Unde venit? "Whence came he?" Cur venit? "Why did he come?"

3d. By the interrogative particles, num, an, and the enclitic, ne. Thus used these particles have no corresponding English word in the translation; they merely indicate a question; as, Num venit, or an venit, or venit ne? "Has he come?" Num videtur? "Does it seem?"

4th. By simply placing an interrogation mark at the end of the question; as, Vis me hoc facere? "Do you wish me to do this?"

57. The interrogative pronoun or adverb, in all cases, translated before the verb; as,

1. Quiis fecit? Who did it? or who has done it?
2. Quem misit? Whom did he send?
3. Quanto constilir? How much did it cost?
4. Qualis est? What sort of a man was he?

This is true also of the indirect question, i. e., when the substance of a question is stated but not in the interrogative form; as,

5. Nescio quanta constiterit, I know not how much it cost.
6. Docuit quam firma res esset He shewed them how firm a thing agreement was.

Note. When the verb in the direct or indirect question comes under § 103, R. V., the predicate, or nominative after the verb, is translated first, and the subject or nominative, in the direct question after the verb, as in Ex. 4; but in the indirect, before it, as in Ex. 6. Thus, in Ex. 4, qualis is the predicate, and ille understood, the subject; in Ex. 6, res is the predicate, and concordia the subject.

58. In all forms of interrogation not made by an interrogative pronoun, as in No. 57, the nominative or subject is translated after the verb in English, in the simple forms, and after the first auxiliary in the compound forms; as,

1. Videsne? Seest thou? or dost thou see?
2. An venisti? Hast thou come? or have you come?
3. Scribeste? Will he write?
4. Num ibimus? Shall we go?
5. Nonne fecit? Has he not done (it?)
INTRODUCTION.

6. Quis set melius? Would he have done better?
7. Nosne alémus? Shall we support?
8. Nonne Dei est? Does it not belong to God?
9. Iste est frater? Is that your brother?

59. When a sentence not interrogative is introduced by nec or neque, not followed by a corresponding conjunction, (See No. 124,) in a connected clause, the verb will be translated by an auxiliary, and the English nominative will stand after the first auxiliary; as,

1. Neque hoc intelligo, Neither do I understand thus.
2. Nec venisset, Neither would he have come.
3. Nec adeptus sum, Nor have I attained.

The object of the verb.

60. In translating, the object of a transitive verb in the accusative is arranged after the verb, and as near to it as possible. That object may be a noun, a pronoun, an infinitive mood, or a clause of a sentence, (§ 116, Exp.); as,

1. Romulus condidit urbem, Romulus built a city.
2. Vocavit eam Romanum, He called it Rome.
3. Discere veram, Learn to speak the truth.
4. Obtulit ut captivos redimere, He offered that they should redeem the captives.

61. The interrogative or relative pronoun is always translated before the verb that governs it; as,

1. Quem mittamus? Whom shall we send?
2. Cui dedisti? To whom did ye give it?
3. Deus quem colimus, God whom we worship.
4. Cui omnia debemus, To whom we owe all things.

62. When a transitive verb governs two cases, the immediate object in the accusative, according to the natural order, is usually translated first, and after that the remote object in the genitive, § 122; dative, § 123; accusative, § 124; or ablative, § 125; as,

1. Arguit me furti, He accuses me of theft.
2. Comparo Virgilium Homero, I compare Virgil to Homer.
3. Poscimus te pacem, We beg peace of thee.
4. Onéral naves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

Note. The accusative of the person after verbs of asking, is translated by of, or from; as,

5. Pyrrhum auxilium poposcérent, They demanded aid of (or from) Pyrrhus.
63. But when the remote object is a relative, or when the immediate object is an infinitive, or a clause of a sentence, or a noun further described by other words, the remote object must be translated first; as,

1. *Cui librum dedimus,* To whom we gave the book.
2. *Da mihi fallère,* I give me to deceive.
3. *Dixit e t consilior meum pecca* He said to him, I confess my fault.
4. *Eum rogaverunt, ut ipsos defederent,* They entreated him, that he would defend them.
5. *Civitatem, anteas solicitudinem,* He supplies the city with arms, already excited.

64. When a verb, which in the active voice governs two cases, is used in the passive form, that which was the immediate object in the accusative, becomes the subject in the nominative, and the remote object in its own case immediately follows the verb. Thus, the examples No. 62, may be arranged and translated as follows, § 126.

1. *Arguor furti,* I am accused of theft.
2. *Virgilius comparatur Homero,* Virgil is compared to Homer.
3. *Pax poscitur te,* Peace is begged of thee.
4. *Naves onerantur auro,* The ships are loading with gold.

So also the participles.

5. *Accussatus furti,* Accused of theft.
7. *Onerata auro,* Loaded with gold.

**Impersonal Verbs.**

65. The impersonal verb has no nominative before it in Latin. It is translated by placing the pronoun it before it in English; as, (§ 85, 2.)

1. *Decet,* It becomes.
2. *Constat,* It is evident.
4. *Pugnatur,* It is fought.
5. *Iter,* It is gone.
6. *Curritur,* It is run.

66. Impersonal verbs governing the dative or accusative in Latin, may be translated in a personal form by making the word in the dative or accusative the nominative to the English verb, taking care always to express the same idea (§ 85, 6, and § 113); thus,
INTRODUCTION.

Impersonally.   Personally.

1. Placet mihi,  It pleases me;       I am pleased.
2. Licet tibi,   It is permitted to you; You are permitted
3. Decet eum,   It becomes him;       He ought.
4. Pudet nos,   It shames us;         We are ashamed.
5. Tædet vos,   It wearies you;       You are wearied.
6. Favetur, illis, Favor is done to them; They are favored.
7. Nocetur hosli; Hurt is done to the enemy; 67.

8. Misèret me tui, It moves me to pity  I pity you.
of you;
9. Pœnitet e o s, It repents them;    They repent.
10. Pænitet me pec- It repents me, i. e., I repent of having
    cässe,                           sinned.

67. When the doer of an action denoted by an impersonal verb, or by a passive verb used impersonally, is expressed by the ablative with a (§ 85, 6,) the verb may be translated personally in the active voice, and the doer, in the ablative, be made its English subject or nominative; as,

Impersonally.   Personally.

1. Pugnatur a me,  It is fought by me;       I fight.
2. Curritur a t e,  It is run by thee;        Thou runnest.
3. Favetur a nobis It is favored by us;      We favor.
4. Favetur tibi a n o- It is favored to you by us;  We favor you; or
    b is,                                          you are favored by us.

Note. The doer in the ablative with a, is frequently understood, (especially when no definite person or thing is intended,) and must be supplied as the context requires; as,

5. Ubi perventum est (ab illis,)  When it was come by them, i. e., when they came.
6. Descenditur (ab hominibus,)  Men (or people,) go down.
7. Conveniebatur (ab hominibus,)  People assembled.

68. Some verbs, not impersonal, are used impersonally, when used before the infinitive of impersonal verbs, (§ 113, Obs. 1,) as,

Impersonally.   Personally.

1. Potest credi  It can be trusted to you; You can be trusted; 66. 2.
tibi,
2. Non potest no- It cannot be hurt to the The enemy cannot
    serti hosti,    enemy; 66. 7.
3. Ut fièri soit,  As it is wont to be done; or, As is usual.

69. Verbs usually impersonal are sometimes used personally, and have their subject in the nominative, (§ 113, Obs. 1,) as,
1. Doleo, I grieve, (Impersonally Dolet mihi,) It grieves me,

2. Candida pa x homines decet, Candid peace becomes men.

3. Ista g e s t a m i n a nostros hu- These arms become my shoul-
   ders.

Usage of Videor, “I seem.”

70. Videor, “I seem,” though never impersonal in Latin, is often rendered impersonally in English; and the dative following it, seems properly to come under Rule XXXIII, § 126, to denote the person to whom anything seems or appears, i. e., by whom it is seen; thus, Videor tibi esse pauper, I seem to you, (i. e., I am seen by you,) to be poor Videor mihi esse pauper, I seem to myself, (i. e., I am seen by myself,) to be poor; or, I think that I am poor. So the following:

1. Videor esse liber, I seem to be free; or, It seems that I am free.

2. Videor mihi esse liber, I seem to myself to be free; or, It seems to me, (or, I think) that I am free.

3. Vidéris esse, You seem to be; or, It seems that you are.

4. Vidéris tibi esse, You seem to yourself to be; or, It seems to you, (i. e., you think) that you are.

5. Vidéris mihi esse, You seem to me to be; or, It seems to me, (i. e., I think) that you are.

6. Tu, ut vidéris, non scribis, You, as you seem, (or, as it seems) do not write.

Obs. The third person singular of videor followed by an infinitive, with its subject in the accusative, or by a dependent clause after ut, or quod, may be said to be used impersonally; though strictly speaking, that infinitive with its accusative, or that clause, is the subject, (See No. 51.; as,

7. Videtur mihi te valea, It appears to me that you are well; strictly rendered, That you are well appears to (or, is seen by) me.

8. Illi videtur ut valeat, It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (another person) is well.

9. Videtur sibi valére, It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (himself) is well. He seems to himself to be well
**Verbs.—Indicative Mood.**

71. Verbs in the indicative mood are translated as in the paradigm in the Grammar. Care must be taken, however, to notice when the sense requires the *simple*, or *emphatic*, or *progressive* form.

72. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event extending to, or connected with the present, in itself or in its consequences, it is used *definitely*, and must be rendered by the auxiliaries, *have, hast, has, or hath*; as,

1. *Regem v i d i hodie,*  
   *I have seen the king to day.*

73. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event, without reference to the present, it is used *indefinitely*, (Gr. § 44, III.) and cannot be rendered by *have, hast, has, or hath*; as,

1. *Regem v i d i nuper,*  
   *I saw the king lately.*

**Subjunctive Mood.**

The subjunctive mood is used in two different ways, viz: *subjunctively* and *potentially*. (Gr. § 42, II. and §§ 139–141.)

**Subjunctive used subjunctively.**

74. This mood is used subjunctively, but for the most part translated as the indicative, when it expresses what is actual and certain though not directly asserted as such. This it does,

1. *E a c u m ita s i n t d i s c é d a m,*  
   *Since these things are so, I will depart.*

2. *S i m a d e a t,*  
   *If it is wet.*

3. *Q u u m C a s a r r e d i r e t,*  
   *When Caesar returned—was returning.*

4. *I t a p e r t e r r i t u s e s t u t m o r i,*  
   *He was so frightened that he died.*

5. *G r a t u l o r t i b i q u o d r e d i é r i s,*  
   *I am glad that you have returned.*
6. Si imperitaverint, If they have commanded.
7. Si reliquissem iniqui. If I had left him, &c. dicitur.
8. Quum Caesar profectus When Caesar had departed.

Obs. In the first of the above examples the direct assertion, is discēdam, “I will depart.” The dependent clause, ea cum ita sint, “since these things are so,” expresses the existence of certain things referred to without directly asserting it, but taking it for granted as a thing admitted or supposed, but still affecting in some way the event directly asserted. This holds good of all the other examples above.

The dependent clause connected by ut, or ubi, “when;” dum, “whilst;” priusquam, “before;” postquam, “after;” and other conjunctions, (§ 140, Obs. 2 and 3,); and also by quum or cum, “when,” (Obs. 4,) sometimes take the indicative mood.

2d. The subjunctive mood is used subjunctively, as above, after an interrogative word used indefinitely, in a dependent clause, or in what is called the indirect question, i.e., an expression containing the substance of a question without the form. All interrogative words may be used in this way, (See § 140, 5,); thus,

9. Nescio quis sit quid I know not who he is—what is doing.
10. Doce me ubi sint dix, Tell me where the gods are.
11. Nescio uter scriberet I know not which of the two wrote.
12. Nescio quid scriptum I know not what was written.
13. Scio cui, (a quo) scripsit I know to whom (by whom) it was written.
14. An scis quis hoc fecerit? Do you know who has done this?
15. An scis a quo hoc facit? Do you know by whom this has been done?
16. Nemo sciēbat quīs hāc fecerit None knew who had done these things.
17. Percunctatus quid vellet Having enquired what he wished.

Note. The direct question requires the indicative; as, Quis fecit? “Who did it?” The indirect requires the subjunctive; as, Nescio quis fecerit, “I know not who did it.”

75. This mood is used subjunctively, and usually translated as the indicative in a relative clause, after an indefinite general expression, (§ 141, R. 1,) a negation, or a ques-
tion implying a negation, and also after the relative in oblique narration, (§ 141, R. VI.); as,

1. *Est qui dicit*, There is one who says.
2. *Nullus est qui neget*, There is no one who denies.
3. *Quis est qui hoc faciat?* Who is there that does this?
4. *Antonius inquit, artem esse* Antonius says that art belongs to *ea rum rerum quae sciant*.; those things which are known.

The Subjunctive used Potentially.

76. The subjunctive mood is used potentially; 1st, in interrogative sentences; and 2d, to express a thing not as actual and certain, but contingent and hypothetical, (Gr. § 42, II. 2, and Obs. 3.) Thus used it is much less definite with respect to time, and is translated with some variety; as follows:

1. *Present,* by *may, can, shall, will, could, would, should.*
2. *Imperfect,* by *might, could, would, or should.*
3. *Perfect,* by *may have, can have, must have,* &c.
4. *Pluperfect,* by *might have, could have, would have, should have,* and denoting futurity, *should.*

The most usual renderings of each tense are the following:

77. *Present.* The present subjunctive used potentially expresses present liberty, power, will, or obligation, usually expressed by the English auxiliaries, *may, can, shall, will, could, would, should.* (§ 45, 1.)

1. *Licet eam,* You may go.
2. *An sic intelligat?* Can he so understand it?
3. *Men' movet simex Panti-lius?* Shall (or should) the insect Pantisus discompose me?
4. *Quis istos ferat?* Who could bear those men?
5. *Sic sis, aliter sentias,* If you were here you would think otherwise.

Imperatively.

6. *Sic eat,* Thus let her (or him) go
7. *Eamus,* Let us go.
8. *Pugnetur,* (Impersonally,) Let it be fought.
9. *Dii faciant,* May the gods grant.

78. *Imperfect.* The imperfect subjunctive used potentially, is preceded by a past tense, and expresses past liberty, power, will, or duty, but still in its use expresses time very indefinitely. It is usually rendered by the English
auxiliaries, might, could, would, should, sometimes had: would have, should have; as,

1. Legesbat ut disceret, He read that he might learn.
2. Quid facerem? What could I do?
3. Iret si juberes, He would go if you should order it.
4. Cur veniret, Why should he come.
5. Rogaverunt ut veniret, They entreated that he would come.
6. Si quis diceret, nunquam If any one had said it, I would not have thought it.

Note. After verbs denoting to hinder, forbid, and the like, quo minus with the subjunctive, may be rendered by from and the present participle, (§ 45, II. 3); thus,
7. Impedivit quo minus iret, He hindered him from going

Obs. An action or state which would, or would not exist, or have existed, in a case supposed, but the contrary of which is implied, is expressed in Latin by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, without an antecedent verb or conjunction, (§ 139, 2); as,
8. Scriberem, si ncesseset, I would write, if it were necessary.
9. Scripsisset, si ncessesett, I would have written, had it been necessary.

79. Perfect. The perfect subjunctive properly expresses what is supposed to be past, but of which there exists uncertainty. Thus used it is commonly rendered by the auxiliaries may have, can have, &c. It is also used sometimes in a present and sometimes in a future sense, with much variety of meaning, according to its connection, (§ 45, III.); as,
1. Fortasse erraverim, Perhaps I may have erred.
2. Etsi non scriperit, Though he cannot have written.
3. Ut sic dixerim, That I may so speak.
4. Cilios crediterrim, I would sooner believe.
5. Facile dixerim, I could easily tell.
6. Quasi affuerim, As if I had been present.

80. Pluperfect. The pluperfect (§ 45, IV.) is usually rendered by the auxiliaries, might have, could have, would have, should have, as in the paradigm of the verb. But when an action is related as having been future at a certain past time, it is expressed in Latin in the pluperfect subjunctive, and translated should; as,
1. Quodcunque jussisset me I said that I would do whatsoever facturus dixi, he should order.
2. Promisisti te scriptūrum, si You promised that thou would write, if I should desire it.
3. Dum convāluisset, Until he should get well.

S1. The pluperfect subjunctive active, with quum, in verbs not deponent, is used instead of a past participle active, (§ 49, 8,) and may be rendered by the compound perfect participle in English; as,

1. Cæsar, quum hæc dixisset Caesar having said these things; (literally, Cæsar, when he had said these things.)

S2. When the subjunctive has a relative for its subject, and the relative and antecedent clause involve a comparison, they may be rendered as in No. 40, or the sense will be expressed if we render the relative by as, and the subjunctive by the infinitive; thus,

1. Quis tam esset amens qui sem- Who would be so foolish as to live
tem vivēret, always.
2. Neque tuis es qui nescias, You are not such a one as not to know.

S3. When the relative and subjunctive follow such adjectives as dignus, indignus, idoneus, (§ 141, Obs. 2.) and the like; or when they express the end or design of something expressed in the antecedent clause, their meaning will be expressed as in No. 40, or by the infinitive alone, or preceded by the phrase "in order to;" thus,

1. Dignum qui secundus ab Ro- Worthy to be ranked next after
mulō numerētur, Romulus.
2. Legatos miserunt qui eum a c- They sent legates to accuse (or, in
cusārent, order to accuse) him.
3. Virgas iis dedit quibus He gave them rods to drive, (in
agērent, order to drive; or, so that with
these they might drive.)

S4. The subjunctive with, or without ut, after verbs signifying to bid, forbid, tell, allow, hinder, command, and the like, (§ 140, 1, 3d, and Obs. 5,) may be rendered by the English infinitive preceded by the subject of the verb in the objective case; as,

1. Precor veniās, I pray that you may come; i. e. I pray you to come.
2. Dic veniāt, Tell her to come.
3. Sine eāt, Permit him to go.
4. Non putēris ut eānt, You will not suffer them to go.
5. Non patēris ut vescamur, You do not suffer us to eat.
85. When several verbs in the same mood and tense, have the same nominative, and are connected in the same construction, the auxiliary and "to," the sign of the infinitive, in the translation is used with the first only, and understood to the rest; as,
1. *Et vidisset et auditisset*, He might have both seen and heard.
2. *Et visus et auditus esset*, He might have been both seen and heard.
3. *Cupimus et videre et audire*, We wish both to see and hear.

The Infinitive Mood.

86. When the infinitive is without a subject, it is to be considered as a verbal noun, (§ 144,) and translated as in the paradigm of the verb; as,
1. *Volo scribere*, I wish to write.
2. *Dictur didicisse*, He is said to have learned.
3. *Dictur iturus esse*, He is said to be about to go.
4. *Dictur iturus fuisse*, He is said to have been about to go.

87. When the verbs *possunt*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, in the indicative or subjunctive, are translated by the English auxiliaries, *can, will, will not, will rather,* and sometimes, in the past tense, by *could, would, &c.,* the infinitive following is translated without *to* before it; as,
1. *Potest fieri*, It can be done.
2. *Volo ire*, I will go.
3. *Nolo facere*, I will not do it.
5. *Ut se voluerem facere vellet*, That he would make her a bird.
7. *Hoc facere non potuit*, He could not do this.
8. *Nolite timere*, Do not fear.

88. The present is generally translated as the perfect without "to," after the imperfect, perfect and pluperfect tenses of *possunt*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo,* when translated *could, would, would not, would rather;* and with "to" after the same tenses of *debeo,* and *oportet,* translated *ought;* as,
1. *Melius fieri non potuit*, It could not have been done better.
2. *Volui dicere*, I would have said.
3. *Sumere arma voluit*, He would not have taken arms.
4. *Maluit augere*, He would rather have increased.
5. *Quam potuisset edere*, Than he could have caused.
6. *Debueristi mihi ignoscere*, You ought to have pardoned me.
7. *Dividi oportuit*, It ought to have been divided.
**Note.** A strictly literal translation of most of the above sentences would not express the precise idea intended; thus, in the third sentence, “He would not have taken arms,” and “He was not willing to take arms,” manifestly do not mean the same thing.

89. After verbs denoting to see, hear, feel, and the like, the present infinitive is often translated by the English present participle; as,

1. *Aitdvi euin di S r e,* I heard him saying.
2. *Sur g è r e videt lunam,* He sees the moon rising.
3. *Terrum trem è r e sensit,* He felt the earth trembling.

**Obs.** So also when the infinitive alone, or as part of a clause, is the subject of another verb; as,

4. *Mor ã ri periculòsum est,* Delaying is dangerous.
5. *Mor ã ri periculòsum (esse)* They think that delaying is dangerous.

**The Infinitive with a subject.**

90. The infinitive with its subject in the accusative, though but seldom, is sometimes translated in the same form in English; as,

1. *Cupio te veni r e,* I wish you to come.
2. *Quos discordare novè -* Whom he had known to differ.
3. *Hoc optimum esse judicavit,* He decided this to be the best.
4. *Eum vocà ri jussit,* He ordered him to be called.

91. The infinitive with a subject, usually is, and always may be, translated by the English indicative or potential, according to the sense intended. When so rendered, its subject must always be translated in the nominative; and this, if not a relative, is usually preceded by the conjunction that, (§ 145); as,

1. *Cupio te veni r e,* I wish that you would come.
2. *Dict me scrib è r e,* He says that I write.
3. *E o s iv isse putabat,* He thought that they had gone.
4. *Quem nunquam risisse ferunt,* Who they say never laughed.
5. *Rogà vit quid faciendum (esse) putà ret,* He asked what he thought ought to be done.

92. Both the Latin and the English infinitive, by their tenses, represent an act, &c., as present, past or future, at the time of the governing verb. Hence, when the one is translated by the other; that is, the Latin infinitive by the English infinitive, (Nos. 86 and 90,) any tense of the one
will be correctly translated by the same tense in the other, (except as in No. SS,) no matter what be the tense of the governing verb; as,

1. Pres. *Dicitur,*  
   2. Past, *Dicebatur,*  
   3. Fut. *Dicetur,*

1. Pres. He is said  
2. Past, He was said  
3. Fut. He will be said

93. But when the Latin infinitive, with its subject, is translated by the English *indicative* or *potential,* the tense used in these moods, must be that which will correctly express the time of the act expressed by the Latin infinitive as estimated, not from the time of the governing verb, as in Latin, but as estimated from the present. That is, events present at the same time, or past at the same time, will be expressed in English by the same tense; an event represented in Latin as prior to the present time, (perfect infinitive after the present tense,) will be expressed by the English imperfect or perfect indefinite; and an event represented in Latin as prior to a past event, (perfect infinitive after a past tense,) will be expressed by the English pluperfect; thus:

1. Pres. *Dicunt eum venire,* They say that he is coming, or comes.  
2. Past, *Dixerunt eum venire,* They said that he came.  
3. Pres. *Dicunt eum venisse,* They say that he came.  
4. Past, *Dixerunt eum venisse,* They said that he had come.  
5. Past, *Coeperunt suspicari illam* They began to suspect that she *venire,* came.

*Note.* The infinitive after the future does not follow this analogy, but is always translated in its own tense; as,

6. *Dicent eum venire,* venisse, venturum esse  
   They will say that he comes, has come, will come.

94. 1. Present, past, and future time, are variously expressed as follows:

1st. *Present time* is expressed by the *present tense,* and generally by the *perfect definite.*

2d. *Past time* is expressed by the *imperfect,* perf. indefinite and *pluperfect.*—by the *perfect participle,*—the present infinitive after a past tense,—the present tense used to express a past event, § 44, 1, 3,—and by the pre-
sent participle, agreeing with the subject of the governing verb in any of these tenses, § 49, 5.

3d. Future time is expressed by the future, and future perfect.

2. The infinitive of deponent verbs, is translated in the same manner as the infinitive active in the following examples in Nos. 95 to 100.

3. After verbs denoting to promise, request, advise, command, and the like, implying a reference to something future, the present infinitive, with its subject, is usually translated as the future, by should, or would, (See No. 100, 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9); as, Jussit, eos per castra duci, He ordered that they should be led through the camp.

4. The Latin words for "he said," "saying," or the like, introducing an oblique narration, are often omitted, and the infinitive takes the form of translation corresponding to the time expressed by the word to be supplied.

From these principles are deduced the following directions for translating the infinitive with a subject.

Present Infinitive after Present or Future time.

95. DIRECT. I. When the preceding verb is in the present, the perfect used definitely, or future tense, the present infinitive is translated as the present; as,

Active Voice.
1. Dico eum laudare, I say that he praises.
2. Dixi eum laudare, I have said that he praises.
3. Dicam eum laudare, I will say that he praises.

Passive Voice.
4. Dico eum laudari, I say that he is praised.
5. Dixi eum laudari, I have said that he is praised.
6. Dicam eum laudari, I will say that he is praised.

Present Infinitive after Past time.

96. DIRECT. II. When the preceding verb is in the imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect, or in the present infinitive after a past tense, the present infinitive is translated as the imperfect, or perfect indefinite; as,
LATIN IDIOMS.

Present Infinitive Active.
1. Dicēbam eum laudāre, I said that he praised.
2. Dixi eum laudāre, I said that he praised.
3. Dixēram eum laudāre, I had said that he praised.
4. Cēpit dicēre eum laudāre, I began to say that he praised.

Present Infinitive Passive.
5. Dicebam eum laudāri, I said that he was praised.
6. Dixi eum laudāri, I said that he was praised.
7. Dixēram eum laudāri, I had said that he was praised.
8. Cēpit dicēre eum laudāri, I began to say that he was praised.

Exc. I. When the present infinitive expresses that which is always true, it must be translated in the present, after any tense, § 44, I. 1; as,
9. Doctus erat deum gubernāre mundum, He had been taught that God governs the world.

Exc. II. When the present infinitive expresses an act subsequent to the time of the governing verb, it is translated after any tense, by the potential with should; would; as,
10. Jubet, He orders
11. Jussit, He ordered
12. Jussērat, He had ordered

that you should go.

Perfect Infinitive after Present or Future time.

97. Direct. III. When the preceding verb is in the present, perfect definite, or future tense, the perfect infinitive is translated as the imperfect or perfect indefinite; as,

Active Voice.
1. Dico eum laudāvisse, I say that he praised.
2. Dixi eum laudāvisse, I have said that he praised.
3. Dicam eum laudāvisse, I will say that he praised.

Passive Voice.
4. Dico eum laudatūtum esse, I say that he was praised.
5. Dixi eum laudatūtum esse, I have said that he was praised.
6. Dicam eum laudatūtum esse, I will say that he was praised.
7. Dico eum laudatūtum fuisse, I say that he has been praised.
8. Dixi eum laudatūtum fuisse, I have said that he has been praised.
9. Dicam eum laudatūtum fuisse, I will say that he has been praised.
Perfect Infinitive after Past Tenses.

98. Direct. IV. When the preceding verb is in the imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect, or in the present infinitive after a past tense, the perfect infinitive is translated as the pluperfect; as,

Active Voice
1. Dixi eum laudavisse, I said that he had praised.
2. Dixi eum laudavisse, I said that he had praised.
3. Dixérat eum laudavisse, I had said that he had praised.
4. Cæpi dicēre eum lauda - I began to say that he had praised.

Passive Voice.
5. Dixi eum laudātum esse, I said that he had been praised.
6. Dixi eum laudātum esse, I had said that he had been praised.
7. Dixēram eum laudātum esse, I had said that he had been praised.
8. Cæpi dicēre eum laudātum esse, I began to say that he had been praised.

Future Infinitive after the Present Tense.

99. V. When the preceding verb is in the present, or perfect definite, or future tense, the future infinitive with esse, is translated as the future indicative; and with fuisse, by would have, or should have, in the pluperfect potential in a future sense; and fore, for futūrum esse, is translated by will be.

Active Voice.
1. Dico eum laudātūrum esse, I say that he will praise.
2. Dixi eum laudātūrum esse, I have said that he will praise.
3. Dicam eum laudātūrum esse, I will say that he will praise.
4. Dico eum laudātūrum fuisse, I say that he would have praised.
5. Dixi eum laudātūrum fuisse, I have said that he would have praised.
6. Dicam eum laudātūrum fuisse, I will say that he would have praised.
Passive Voice.
7. Dico eum laudatum iri, I say that he will be praised.
8. Dixi eum laudatum iri, I have said that he will be praised.
9. Dixcram eum laudatum iri, I will say that he will be praised.

Future Infinitive after Past Tenses.
100. Direct. VI. When the preceding verb is of the imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect, the future of the infinitive with esse, is rendered by would or should; and with fuisse, by would have, and should have; and fore for futurum esse after any past tense, by would be; as,

Active Voice.
1. Dicebam eum laudatum esse I said that he would praise.
2. Dixi eum laudatum, &c. I said that he would praise.
3. Dixeram eum laudatum I had said that he would praise.
4. Dicebam eum laudatum I said that he would have praised.
5. Dixi eum laudatum, &c. I said that he would have praised.
6. Dixeram eum laudatum I had said that he would have praised.

Passive Voice.
7. Dicebam eum laudatum I said that he would be praised.
8. Dixi eum laudatum iri, I said that he would be praised.
9. Dixeram eum laudatum iri, I had said that he would be praised.
10. Dicebam (dixi) eum for e I said that he would be safe.

Usage of Fore.
Obs. Fore is used for futurum esse, and, with a subject after present tenses means "will be," after past tenses "would be." Both of them when followed by a subjunctive with ut (§ 145, Obs. 6,) after a present tense, may be translated by the future indicative of that verb; and after a past tense, by the imperfect potential; as,

11. Crede eum for e tutum, I believe that he will be safe.
12. Credebam, or credidi, (credidi) eum for e tutum, I believed, (had believed) that he would be safe.
13. Crede for e (or futurum esse) ut discas, I believe that you will learn.
14. Credebam or credidi (credidi-ram) for e (or futurum esse) ut disceres, I believed, (had believed) that you would learn.
INTRODUCTION.

Participles.

101. Participles are usually translated after their nouns, as in the paradigms of the verb; thus,

1. Present active, Homo carēns fraude, A man wanting guile.
2. Future active, Homo scriptūrus, A man about to write.
3. Perfect passive, Vita bene a c t a, A life well spent.
4. Future passive, Cæsar c o a c u t u s, Cæsar being (or having been) compiled.
5. (Deponent,) Cæsar re g r e s s u s, Cæsar having returned.
6. Future passive, Mala vit a n d a, Evils to be avoided, i.e., which ought to be avoided.

Exc. But when a participle is used as an adjective, (§ 49, 3,) it is translated, like the adjective, before its substantive; as,

7. Tigrin ostendit man s u e. He exhibited a tamed tiger.
   f a c t a m, Insists.

8. In ferventibus a r e n i s Standing on the burning sands.

Future Participle Active.

102. When the Future participle active is used to express a purpose, end, or design of another action, (§ 146, Obs. 3,) it is rendered by “to,” or the phrase “in order to,” instead of “about to;” as,

1. Pergit consultūrus or a . He goes to consult (or, in order to consult) the oracle.
   O b s. The present participle is also sometimes used in this sense; as,

2. Venerunt postulantes ci. They came to (or, in order to) ask food.

Perfect Participle Passive.

103. As the Latin verb has no perfect participle in the active sense, (except in deponent verbs,) its place is usually supplied by the perfect participle passive in the case absolute, (§ 146, Obs. S,) thus, “Cæsar having consulted his friends,” rendered into Latin, will be, Cæsar amicis consultis, literally, “Cæsar, his friends being consulted.” Hence,

104. When the action expressed passively by the perfect participle in the case absolute, or agreeing with the object of a verb, is something done by the subject of the leading
verb in the sentence, the participle is rendered more in accordance with English idiom, by the perfect participle in the active voice, in English, agreeing with the subject of the verb, and followed by its noun in the objective case, (§ 49, 8, and § 146, Obs. 8); thus,

1. *Caeser, his dictis, proiectus est*, translated in the Latin idiom, *Cæsar, these things being said*, departed. English idiom, *Cæsar, having said these things*, departed.

2. *O pèr e p e r a c t o, ludêmus*, Latin idiom, *Our work being finished*, we will play. English idiom, *Having finished our work*, we will play.


105. The perfect participle of deponent verbs having an active signification, accords with the English idiom, and is best translated literally; as,

1. *Na c t u s naviculâtm*, Having found a boat.
2. *C o h o r t â t u s exercitâtm*, Having exhorted the army.

106. When the perfect participle of deponent or common verbs, expresses an act nearly or entirely contemporaneous with the leading verb, it may be translated by the English present participle in ing, (§ 49, 5, Note,); as,

1. *Rex hoc facinus mirâtus* The king, admiring this act, disjuvenevi dimisit, missed the youth.
2. *Columba delâpsa refert sagittam*, The dove falling brings back the arrow.

The Future Participle Passive.

107. After verbs signifying to give, to deliver, to agree or bargain for, to have, to receive, to undertake, and the like, the participle in dús generally denotes design or purpose, and is rendered simply as in the paradigm, or with the phrase “in order to,” prefixed, (§ 146, Obs. 4,); as,

1. *Testamentum tibi tradit le* He delivers his will to you to (or *gendum*, in order to) be read.
2. *Attribuit nostrucidandos* He has given us over to Cethegus Cethégo, (in order) to be slain.

108. The participle in dús, especially when agreeing with the subject of a sentence or clause, generally denotes propriety, necessity, or obligation, and is rendered variously as
the tense of the accompanying verb and the connection re-
quire, (§ 146, Obs. 5); the following are examples:

1. *Legátus mittendus est,* An ambassador must (or should) 
   be sent.
2. *Legátus mittendus erat or An ambassador had to be sent.* 
   fruit,
3. *Legátus mittendus erit,* An ambassador will have to be sent. 
   rule,
4. *Legátum mittendum esse,* That an ambassador should be sent. 
   might,
5. *mittendum fuit,* ought to (or should) have been sent.
6. *Disseminulanda loquitur,* He speaks things that ought to be 
   concealed.
7. *Dissimulanda loquebatur,* He spoke things which ought to 
   have been concealed.
8. *Quod dissimulanda erunt,* Which will have to be concealed.
9. *Dice quid statuendum sit,* Say, what is to be (or must be) 
   thought.

Ablative Absolute.

109. When a participle stands with a substantive in the 
ablative absolute, R. L.X., the substantive is translated without 
a sign, No. 9, and after it the participle, as in the para-
digm of the verb; as,

2. *Hac oratione habitu,* This oration being delivered.
3. *Césäre ventūro,* Caesar (being) about to come.
4. *Praceptis tradendis,* Rules being to be delivered.
5. *Bello orto,* War having arisen.

*Note.* The future participles, Ex. 3, 4, are seldom used in the 

110. When two nouns,—a pronoun and a noun,—a noun or 
a pronoun and an adjective, are used in the ablative 
without a participle, (§ 146, Obs. 10,) they are translated in 
the nominative without a sign, and the English participle 
"being," inserted between them; as,

1. *Adolescentulduce,* A young man being leader.
2. *Mario consule,* Marius being consul.
3. *Me suusore,* I being the adviser.
4. *Annibāli vivo,* Hannibal being alive.
5. *Se invito,* He being unwilling.

Gerunds and Gerundives.

111. The gerund, being a verbal noun, is translated in
the same manner as other nouns of the same case, and at
the same time may govern the case of its own verb, § 147; as,

1. N. Petendum pacem, Seeking peace.
2. G. Petendi pacem, Of seeking peace.
3. D. Utendo libris, To (or for) using books.
5. Abl. Parendo magistratui, By obeying the magistrate.

112. Of verbs that govern the accusative, instead of the
gerund in the oblique cases, the Latins commonly used the
participle in das, in the sense of the gerund, and agreeing
with its object in gender, number and case; the case being
governed by the same word that would have governed the
gerund. When thus used it is called a gerundive. (§ 147,
R. LXII.)

Gerunds. Gerundives.
2. Utile vulnera curando, 6. Utile vulneribus curandis, Useful for healing wounds.

113. When the gerund is the subject of the verb est, govern-
ing the dative, it implies necessity, and is variously
translated into the English idiom, as the tense of the verb
requires, (§ 147,); as,

Latin Idiom. English Idiom.
1. Legendum est mihi, I must read; I ought to read;
   Reading is to me; i. e., I should read.
2. Legendum erat (fuit) mihi, I had to read; I ought to have
   Reading was to me; read; I should have read.
3. Legendum fuerat mihi, I had been obliged to read.
   Reading had been to me;
4. Legendum erat mihi, I will have to read; It will be
   Reading will be to me; necessary for me to read.
5. Dicit legendum esse mihi, He says that I must read—
   He says that reading is to me;
   He ought to read—should read.
6. Dicit legendum fuisse mihi, He says that I had to read—
   He says that reading was to me; ought to—or should—have
   He ought to—or should—have read.

Obs. The dative is frequently omitted, and generally
when it denotes persons or things, in a general or indefinite
INTRODUCTION.

sense. In such cases, *homīni*, *homīnibus*, *nobis*, or the like, must be supplied; as,

7. *Vivendum est recte* (scil. *homīni* - Living honestly, is viz: to men; *bus,*

i. e., men ought to live honestly.

8. *Dicit vivendum esse recte*, (scil. He says that living honestly is,

*viz: to a man;* i. e. a man ought to live honestly.

**Supines.**

114. The Supines are rendered without variation, as in the paradigm, and under the rules, (§ 148,); as,

1. *Abiit deambulātum,* He has gone to walk.

2. *Facile dictu,* Easy to tell, or to be told.

**Passive Voice.**

115. The passive voice, in the indicative mood, is translated as in the paradigms. The subjunctive mood is subject to all the variety of construction and translation used in the active voice, Nos. 7484, acting on the verb *to be*, which as an auxiliary with the perfect participle, makes up the passive form of the verb in English.

In the compound tenses, (§ 53, 3,) when two or more verbs in a sentence are in the same tense, and have the same nominative, or are in the same construction, the verb *sum* is commonly expressed with the last and understood to the rest, as in the following Ex. 1. But when the nominative is changed, the verb “to be” should be repeated as in Ex. 2.

1. *Nisus a Minōe victus et occisus* Nisus was conquered and killed by Minos.

2. *Tres naves captae*, *decem demersae, duo millia hostium capta, tredēcem millia occisa sunt.* Three ships were taken, ten sunk; two thousand of the enemy were taken, thirteen thousand killed.

**Passive Voice in a Middle Sense.**

116. The Latin passive voice is often used to represent its subject, not as acted upon by another, but as acting on itself, or for itself, or intransitively, by its own impulse; and so corresponds in sense to the middle voice in Greek. Thus used, it is best translated by the active voice followed by the reflexive pronoun as an object, or by an intransitive
verb expressing the idea intended, (§ 41, Obs. 3.) The fol-
lowing are examples.
1. Paludibus *abditi sunt*, They concealed themselves in the
marshes.
2. *Cum omnes in omni genere sce-
lérum voluptantur*, Since all give themselves up to
every kind of wickedness.
3. *Fer t ur in hostes*, Rushes against the enemy.
4. *Voluntati super poma*, Rolling themselves over the apples.
5. *Cingitur armis*, Girds himself with his armor.
7. *Gallus victus occulta tur*, The cock, when conquered, hides
himself.

117. The verb *sum* governing the genitive by R. XII., §
108, may generally be translated by the phrase "belongs to," "is the part," "is the property," &c. See explanation
under Rule; as,
1. *Est regis*, It belongs to the king.
3. *Prudentia est senectūtis*, Prudence is the characteristic of
old age.

118. The verb *sum* (also *desum*,) in the third person,
governing the dative by § 112, Rule II., may generally be
translated by the corresponding tenses of the verb "to have,"
with the Latin dative for its subject, and the Latin subject
for its object; as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Idiom.</th>
<th>English Idiom.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Liber est mihi, A book is to me,</td>
<td>I have a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Liber erat mihi, A book was to me,</td>
<td>I had a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Liber fuit mihi, A book was (or has been) to me,</td>
<td>I had, or have had a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Liber fuerat mihi, A book had been to me,</td>
<td>I had had a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Liber erit mihi, A book will be to me,</td>
<td>I will have a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Libri sunt mihi, Books are to me,</td>
<td>I have books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Est mihi, It is to me,</td>
<td>I have it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Liber deest mihi, A book is not to me,</td>
<td>I have not a book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

119. When a compound verb, rendered by the simple
verb and a preposition, is followed by two cases, the simple
verb with the immediate object (always in the accusative,) is
usually translated first, and then the preposition with the
remote object.
1. *Flumen copias transuxit*, He led his forces across the river.
2. *Circumdare mania op. To build walls around the city
 pido,*
3. *Caput dejeicit saxo,* He threw the head down from the
rock.
An adverb, adverbial phrase, or clause expressing some circumstance in translating, may often be arranged in different situations in a sentence, due regard being paid to the sense and harmony of the whole; thus, Magna debēmus suscipēre dum vires suppētunt, may be arranged variously for translating, as follows:

1. Debēmus suscipēre magna, dum vires suppētunt; or,
2. Dum vires suppētunt, debēmus suscipēre magna; or,
3. Debēmus, dum vires suppētunt, suscipēre magna.

The negative conjunction ne, is variously rendered lest, lest that, that-not, not; and after verbs signifying to fear, forbid, and the like, it is translated that, while ut in the same situation, means that not.

1. Ne quis eat, Lest (or that not) any one may go. 
2. Orat n e se perdat, She entreats that he would not destroy her. 
3. Egi ne interessem, I managed that I should not be present. 
4. Dum n e veniat, Provided he do not come. 
5. Respondit n e cogitāta quidem He replied that not even the thoughts are concealed. 
6. Vereor n e cadas, I am afraid that you may fall. 
7. Timui ut ventret, I feared that he would not come.

Note 1. But when the fear expressed, refers to such things as we wish, ne means that-not; as, Paves n e ducas illam, You are afraid that you do not get her to wife.

Ne, after a command implying a negative, or prohibition, is often omitted; as, cave titūbes, take care that you do not stumble.

Note 2. Ne quidem, (always separate,) is an emphatic negative, and has the emphatic word between; as, ne hoc quidem, not even this; ne tum quidem, not even then.

When a verb is translated into English by the aid of an auxiliary, an adverb, or clause modifying it, will often have to be placed between the auxiliary and the verb, (Eng. Gr. § 74,); as,

1. Dixit ne ob hoc alios con- He said that we should not on this tennāmus, account despise others.
2. Timui ut veniet, I feared that he would not come.

Some prepositions are variously translated according to the meaning of the words, or the case with which they are connected; thus,
1. *In* followed by an accusative, means *to, into, towards, for, against.* &c., (§ 136, R. L.)
2. *In,* followed by the ablative, means *in, upon, among, in the case of.* (§ 136, R. L. I.)
3. *Inter,* referring to *two,* means *between; to more than two,* *among.*
4. *Sub* means *under, at the foot of, close up to.*
5. *Pra* means *before, in comparison of;—sometimes, more than.*

124. When the following conjunctions, adjectives, and adverbial particles, are placed, one before each of two successive words or clauses, the first is commonly translated differently from the second, and usually in the following manner, (§ 149, Obs. 5.)

1. *Et* — *et,* Both — and.
2. *Que* — *que,* Both — and.
3. *Aut, vel,* — *aut, vel,* Either — or.
4. *Nec* — *nec,* Neither — nor.
5. *Neque* — *neque,* Whether — or.
6. *Sive, sequ* — *sive, sequ,* {Not only — but also.
7. *Tum* — *tum,* Both — and.
8. *Cum or quum* — *tum,* {Not only — but also.
10. *Nunc* — *nunc,* {No sooner — than.
11. *Simul* — *simul,* {At one time — at another.

**Corresponding Conjunctive Terms.**

13. *Ne* — *an,* Whether — or.
15. *Hæ, sic. tam, adeo — ut,* So — that; so — as.
17. *Is, ejusmodi — ut,* Such, of such a kind — that.
18. *Simul* — *ac, or atque,* As soon as — as.
19. *Tamdiu — quandiu,* As long — as.
20. *Ut* — *sic,* As — so.

*Ne* is frequently omitted with the first word or clause, and must be supplied when *an* stands with the second; as,

21. *Recte an perpèram,* (Whether) right or wrong.
General Rules for Accentuation.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first, or penult; as, pā't-er, mā'sa, au'-rum.
2. Words of more than two syllables, when the penult is long, have the accent on the penult; when the penult is short, they have the accent on the antepenult; as, a-mī'-cus, dom'-i-nus.
3. When the enclitics, que, ve, ne, are added to a word the two words are considered as one, and it is accented accordingly; as, pā'-ter, pā'-ter'-que; dom'-i-nus, dom'-i-nus'-ve.

General Rules for the Quantity of Syllables.

1. A vowel before another vowel, is short; as, via, Dēus.
2. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, is long by position; as, arma, fallo, axis.
3. A vowel before a mute and a liquid, (l, r,) is common, i.e. either long or short; as, volūcris, or volūcris.
4. A diphthong is always long; as, aurum, Cæsar.

Note. In this work when the quantity of the penult, in words of more than two syllables, is determined by any of these rules, it is not marked, otherwise it is marked.

Explanation of References.

The references at the foot of each page, to which a section mark (§) is prefixed, are to the sections and their subdivisions in the Grammar, and are intended chiefly to explain the construction.

In those references which have no section mark prefixed, the first number directs to the same number in the preceding Introduction, and the second, to the example under that number. Thus for example, in p. 53, § 38, 8; the number 38 refers to Introduction 38, (p. 22,) which shows how the relative in the beginning of a sentence is to be translated; and the number 8 refers to example 8, A quo consilio, &c., showing that the relative quā is here to be translated "this," and Quā de causā, "for this cause." These references are intended to explain particular phrases and idioms, and to give an example of the mode of translating them.

The references made by figures are to the notes on the text, commencing p. 207, where it will be observed that all the notes belonging to a page are contained in one paragraph, at the beginning of which is the number of the page to which the notes refer.

N. B. In the text the reference letter stands after, and the reference figure stands before the word or words to which they respectively belong.
C. JULII CAESARIS COMMENTARIUM
DE BELLO GALLICO.

BOOK I.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. General description of Gaul—Chap. 1. II. The war with the Helvetii—Chap. 2-29. III. War with Ariovistus—Chap. 30-54.


Eórum una pars, quam Gallos obtinère dictum est, initium capit a flúmine Rhodáno; continéntur Garumná flumíne, Oceáno, finibus Belgárum; attingit etiam ab Sequánis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriónes.

---

a § 107, R. X.      e § 147, R. LXII, &  b § 129, R.
b § 103, R. V.     112, 7.      i 31, 3.
c § 128, R.       f § 111, R.      k § 145, R. LVIII.
d § 28, Obs. 5.    g 38, 8.
Belgæ ab extrémis Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentriones et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnâ flumine ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceâni, quæ est ad Hispanicam, pertinent; spectat inter occàsum solis et septentriones.


3. His rebus adducti, et auctoritâtis Orgetorîgis permôti, constituêrunt ea, quæ ad proficiscendum pertinère, comparâre; jumentôrum et carrôrum quàm maximum numèrum coëmère; sementes quàm maximas saccère, ut in itinère copia frumenti suppeteret; cum proxî-
mis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res coniicendas a biennium sibi satis esse b duexerunt; 1 in ter-
tium annum profecti'onem lege confirmant. Ad eas res con-
fiicendas a Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi e legationem ad civ-
itates suscepit. In eo itinere persuasit Castico, d Cataman-
tal'dis filio, e Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis mul-
tos annos f obtinebat, et a senatu Populi Romani amicitus g
appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua 2 occuparet, h quod
pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi d 3 Eduo, fratri e Di-
vitiaci, qui eo tempore i 3 principatum in civitate obtinebat, k
ac maxime plebi 1 acceptus erat, ut idem m conarerit b pers-
uadet, eique c filiam suam in matrimonium dat. 4 Perfa-
cile " factu o esse, b illis d probat, conata m perficere, propterea
quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset: non esse
dubium, quin p 5 totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent:
se q suis copiis r suoque exercitu illis c regna conciliaturum,
confirmat. Hac oratione adducti, 6 inter se sidem et jus-
randum dant, et, regno occupato, per tres potentiissimos ac
firmissimos 7 populos totius Galliae sese q potiri posse 8 spe-
rant.

4. 9 Ea res ut et Helvetiis t per 10 indici um enunciata,
moribus t suis Orgetorigem ex 11 vinculis causam dicere coe-
gerunt: 12 damnatum pænam u sequi oportebat, ut igni cre-
mareretur. Die l constituat causa dicti onis, Orgetorix ad
judicium omnem suam 13 familiam, 14 ad hominum w millia
decem, undique coegit; et omnes clientes, obfratrosque suos,
quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit: per
cos, ne causam dicere t, x se eripuit. Cùm civitas, ob eam

---

a 112, 7.
1 b 94, 3.
c § 123, R.
d 63.
e § 97, R.
1 f § 131, R. XLI.
g § 103, R. V.
b § 140, 1, 3d.
i § 131, R. XL.
j § 44, II. 2.
k § 111, R.
l § 19, 4.
m 19, 4.
n § 98, Obs. 6.
o 114, 2.
p § 140, 3.
q § 145, R. LVIII.
r § 129, R.
s § 121, R. XXVI.
t € § 126, R. III
u § 113, Exc. III.
v § 140, 1. 4th.
w § 24, 5.
x § 140, 1, 2d
rem incitata, armis jus suum exsequi conarētor, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogērent. Orgetōrix mortuus est: neque abest suspicion, ut Helvetii arbitrantur quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

5. Post ejus mortem nihil minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facère conantur, ut e finibus suis exeat. Ubi jam se ad eam rem parātos esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodēcim, vicās ad quadringentos, reliquā privātā adicīs incendunt; frumentum omne, prāter quod secum portātūr erant, comburunt; ut, domum oppidiōnis sublātā, paratiōres ad omnā periculā subeunda essent: trium mensium molīta cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Persuādent Raurācis, Tulingis, et Latobrīgis, fīnitimis, utī, cōdem usi consilio, oppīdis suis vicisque exustis, una cum iis profisciēcantur: Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluērunt, et in agrum Noicūm transīerant Noreiamque oppugnārunt, receptos ad se, socios adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnino itinēra duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequānos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodānum, vix quà singūli carri ducentur; mons autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent: altērum per Provinciam nestrām, multō faciēs atque expeditius, propterē quōd Helvetiōrum inter fines, et Allobrogiōnum, qui nuper pācāti erant, Rhodānum fluit, isque nonnullīs locīs vado transitūr. Extremum oppidum Allobrogiōn est, proxīminoque Helvetiōrum finibus, Genēva. Ex eo oppido pons ad
Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum 1 bono animo 2 in Populum Romanum videre rentur, 3 existimabant; vel vi coacturos, 4 ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. 4 Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis, 5 diem dicunt, quâ diem 6 ad ripam Rhodâni omnes conveniant: 7 is dies erat 8 ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, 9 Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio Consulibus.

7. Cæsâri 1 cùm id nuntiatum esset, 2 eos per Provinciam nostram iter facère conâri, matûrat 3 ab urbe proficisci, et, quâm maxîmis 1 potest itineribus, in 6 Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genêvam pervénit: 7 Provinciæ 6 toti quàm maximum 1 militum numerum impêrat (erat omnino in Galliâ ulteriore legio una); pontem, qui erat 8 ad Genêvam, jubet rescindi. 9 Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii 9 certiores facti sunt, legatós ad eum mittunt, 10 nobíssimos cívitatis, 11 cujus legationis Nameius et Verudoctius princípem locum obtinēbant, 12 qui dicèrent, 13 sibi esse in anímo, sine ullo maleficio iter per Provinciam facère, propeterea quôd aliud iter habèrent 14 nullum: rogâre, 15 ut ejus 16 voluntâte id sibi facère liceat. 17 Cæsar, quod memoria tenêbat, Lucium Cassium Consûlem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum, et 12 sub jugum missum, 13 concedendum 14 non putábât: neque homînes inimîco anímo, 15 data facultâte per Provinciam itinêris faciundi, 16 temperatûros ab injurîa et maleficio existimábât. Tamen, ut spatium intercedère posset, 17 dum milîtes, quos imperavérat, convenièrent, legâtis respondit, "diem se ad deliberandum summûrum; si quid vellent, 18 ante diem Idus Aprilis reverterentur." 19
S. Interea ea legione, quam secum habēbat, militibusque, qui ex Provincia convenērunt, a lacu Leannō, 1 qui in flum. men Rhodānum influit, 2 ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanōrum ab Helvetiis dividit, 3 millia 4 passuum decem novem murum, in altitudīnem pedum 5 sedēcim, fossamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto, 6 præsidia dispōnit, 4 castella commūnit, quō satiūs, si 5 se invīto transīre conarentur, 4 prohibēre possit. 6 Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatīs, venit, et legatī ad eum revertērunt, 6 negat, se 4 more 2 et exemplo 6 Popūli Romāni posse iter ulla 9 per Provinciae dare; et, si vim 4 facēre conēntur, 1 prohibītum 9 ostendī. Helvetii, eā spe 1 dejecti, 7 navibus 8 junctis, ratibusque 6 com pluribus factis, alīi vadis 9 Rhodāni, 8 quā minīma altītūdō flumīnis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, sāpiūs noctū, si 9 per rumpēre possent, 10 conāti, opēris munitiōne 6 et militītum concursu 11 et telīs repulsi, hoc conātū 12 destīterunt.

9. Relinquēbātur una per Sequānos via, quā 9 Sequānīs 6 invītīs, propter angūstias ire non potērant. Hīs 13 cūm suā 30 sponte persuadēre non possent, 5 legātos ad Dumnōrīgem Ėduum mittunt, ut eo 10 deprecatōre  0 a Sequānīs impetrērent. 7 Dumnōrix 11 gratiā 8 et largitiōne apud Sequānos plurīnum potērat, et Helvetiis 8 erat amīcus, quōd ex eā civitātē Orgetorīgis filiām, 12 in matrimonium duxērat; et, cupidītātē 7 regni adductūs, 13 novīs rebus 1 studēbat, et quām plurīmas 6 civitātes suo sibi 1 beneficio habēre obstrictas volēbat. Itāque rem suscīpit, et a Sequānīs impētrat, ut per fines suos ire Helvetios patiantur; obsidesque uti inter sese

---

1. 131, R. XLII. 
2. § 24, 5. 
3. § 106, R. VI. 
4. § 104, 1, & 109. 
5. § 140, 2. 
6. § 140, 1. 
7. § 145, R. LVIII. 
8. § 129, R. 
9. § 123, R. 
10. § 15, 12. 
11. § 47, Note 1. and 100, 1. 
12. § 136, R. LII. 
13. § 149, R. 
14. § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.) 
15. 110, 5. 
16. § 30, 2. 
17. § 140, Obs. 4. 
18. § 140, 1, 3d. 
19. § 111, R. 
20. § 112, R. V 
21. § 134, Obs. 6, 3d. 
22. § 126, R. III.
dent, perficit: 1 Sequāni, 2 ne itinēre Helvetios prohibeant; 2 Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria transirent. 3

10. 8 Cæsāri renunciātur 4 Helvetii5 esse in animo, per agrum Sequanōrum et Ėduōrum iter in Santōnum fines facēre, qui non longē a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in Provincia. Id si fieret, 4 intelligēbat magno cum Provinciae periculo futūrum, 6 ut homines bellicosōs, Popūl Romānī inimicos, 7 locis 8 patentibus magnēque frumentariīs finiūmos habēret. 9 Ob eas causas ei munitīōnī, 1 quam fecerat, Titum Labiēnum legātum praesēcit: ipse in Italiam magnīs itinerībus contendit, duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circūm Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis eūdit; et, quae proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionībus ire contendit. Ibi Centrōnes, et Graiocēli, et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupātis, 1 itinēre 1 exercitum prohibēre conantur. Compluribus his prēliis pulsīs, 1 ab Ocelō, 6 quod est citeriōris Provinciae extrēmum, in fines Vocontīorum ulteriōris Provinciae die septīmō 7 pervēnit; inde in Allobroğum fines: ab Allobroğibus in Segusīanos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra Provinciae trans Rhodānum prīmi. 11

11. Helvetii jam per angustiās et fines Sequanōrum suas copias transduξīrant, et in Ėduōrum fines pervenērant, eorumque agros populabantur. Ėdui, cūm se 6 suaque 10 ab iis defendēre non possent, 9 legātos ad Cæsārem mittunt rogātum 7 auxiliōm: "ita se 5 omni tempore 10 de Popūlo Romānō merītōs esse, ut pæne in conspectu exercītūs nostri agri vastāri, libēri eōrum in servitūtem abduξī, oppīda ex-

---

1 140, 1, 2d.
2 51, 2.
3 112, R. II.
4 140, 2.
5 § 47, Note 1.
6 § 97, R.
7 § 111, R.
8 100, Obs. 14.
9 123, R.
10 104, 2.
11 136, Obs. 5, (in.)
12 131, R. XL.
13 19, (popūlī.)
14 31.
15 19, (negotia.)
16 § 140, Obs. 4.
17 114, 1.
18 145, R. LVIII. & 94, 4.
DE BELLO GALlico.

pugnări non debuerint." a Eōdem tempore Ādui Ambarri, necassarī b et consanguineī Āduōrum, Cēsārem certōrem faciunt, sese, d popułatīs agris, non sūlicēb oppīdis vim hostiūm prohibēre: item Allobrōges, qui trans Rhōdānum vicos possessionesque habēbant, fugā se ad Cēsārem recipiunt, et demonstrant, sibi ē prāter agrī solum nihil ē esse reliquī. Quībus rebūs h adductūs Ĉæsar, non expectandūm sibi statuī, dum, omnībus fortūnis sociōrum consumtīs, in Santōnos Helvetīi pervenīrēnt.

12. 3 Flumen k est Arar, quod per fines Āduōrum et Sequanōrum in Rhōdānum infliūit, 4 incredibīlī lenitātē, b ētū ut ocūlis, h in utram partem fnat, i ējudicārī non possīt. 6 Id Helvetīi ratībus ac lintrībus ē junctūs transībant. Ubi per exploratōres Ĉæsar certiōr m factus est, tres jam copiārum partes Helvetiōs ē id flūmen ē transduxiisse, o quartam verō partem citra flūmen Arārim reliquām ēsse; 7 de tertīā vi-giliā cum legiōnibus tribus e castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnīt, quae nondum flūmen ē transīērat. Ėos ēmpeditīs et inopinantes aggressus, magnam eōrum partem concīdit: reliquī fugā ē sese mandārunt atque ē in proxīmas sylvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabātur Tigurīnus: k nam omnis civitas Helvetiā in quatuor pagos divīsa est. Hic pagus unus, cūm domo ē exissēt, ē patrum nostrōrum memoriā, ē Lucium Cassium Consūlem interfecerat, et ejus exercītum sub juguīm misērat. Ėta, sive u causu, ē sive consiliō Deōrum immobilītum, quae pars civitātis Helvetiāe insignem calamītātem Pōpūlo q Romāno intulērat, ea 10 princeps w pēnas persolvit. Quās ē in re Ĉæsar non solum publicas, sed etiam

a § 140, 1, 1st. b § 97, R. c § 143, R. LVIII. d 109, 2. e § 112, R. II. f § 106, R. VI. g § 103, R. V. h § 129, R. i § 147, & 113. j § 105, R. V. k § 140, 5. l § 103, Obs. 2. m § 119, 1. n § 111, 2. o § 136, R. LIII. p § 136, R. LII. q § 123, R. r § 130, 4. s § 140, Obs. 4. t § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) u 124, 6. v 43, & 37, 2d. 4. w § 98, Obs. 10.
privatas injurias ultus est, quòd ejus soceri Lucii Pisónis avum, Lucium Pisóuem legátum, Tiguríni eódem prélío, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

13. Hoc prélío facto, reliquas copias Helvetiór um ut con-séqui posset, pontem in Aráre faciendum curat atque ita exercitum transdúcit. Helvetii, repentino ejus adventu commóti, cùm id, quod ipsi diébus viginti ægerrímè con-fecerant, ut flumen transírent, uno illum die fecisse intel-ligérent, legátos ad eum mittunt: cujus legatiónis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiánno dux Helvetiorum fuérat. Is ita cum Cásar agit: "Si pacem Popúlus Románus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem itúros atque ibi futúros Helvetios, ubi eos Cásar constituisset atque esse volisset: sin bello perséqui perseveráret, reminiscére tür et vetérís incommódi Popúli Románi et pristínae virtútes Helvetiór um. Quòd improvisò unum pagum adortus esset, cùm ii, qui flumen transíssent, suis auxílium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suæ magno opère virtúti tribuëret aut ipsos despicéret: se ita a patribus majoribusque suís didicisset, ut magis virtús, quàm dolo aut insidiis, niterentur. Quare ne committéret, ut is locus, ubi constitíssent, ex calamitátis Popúli Románi et internecióne exercítús nomen capéret, aut memoriam prodéret."

14. His Caesar ita respondit: "Eo sibi minus dubita-tiónis dari, quòd eas res, quas legáti Helvetii commemo-rássent, memoria tenéret: atque eo graviús ferre, quo minus merito Popúli Románi accidissent; qui si alicujus

---

*a § 97, R. b § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) c § 140, 1, 2d. d § 108, 4. e § 129, R. f § 131, R. XLI. g § 141, Obs. 8. b § 140, Obs. 4. i 35. k § 140, 2. l § 47, 4, Note 1. m § 145, R. LVIII. n 90. o § 140, 1,3d, & Obs. 5. p § 108, R.XIV. & 7, 1. x 22, 4, or 44, 7 q § 123, R. & 19. r § 149, R. s § 120, Obs. 1. t § 140, 1, 3d. u § 126, R III. v § 106, R. VIII. w § 110, 6.
injuriae sibi\(^a\) conscius fuisset,\(^b\) 1 non fuisset\(^c\) difficile\(^d\) cavere, 2 sed eo deceptum,\(^e\) quod neque commissum a se intelliget,\(^f\) quare timet; \(^f\) neque sine causis\(^g\) timendum\(^h\) putaret. 4 Quod si veterris contumelia\(^i\) oblivisci vellet;\(^j\) num\(^k\) etiam recentium injuriarum, quod neque commissum a se intelligeret,\(^k\) memoram deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter adversitantur, quod tam diu se impune tulisse injurias admirarentur, eodem pertinere:\(^k\) consuesse enim Deos\(^l\) immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatiōne rerum doleant,\(^m\) quos pro scelere eorum ulcisceret,\(^n\) his\(^o\) secundiōres interdum res et diuturniōrem impunitatem concedere.\(^p\)

8 Cūm ea ita sint,\(^q\) tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi\(^r\) dentur,\(^b\) ut ei ea, quae polliceantur,\(^n\) factūros intelligat,\(^e\) et si Aeduos\(^1\) de injuriis, quas ipsos\(^o\) sociisque eorum intulerint,\(^o\) item si Allobrogibus\(^1\) satisfaciant,\(^b\) sese\(^l\) cum iis pacem esse factūrum." Divīco respondit: "Ita Helvetios a majoribus\(^a\) suis institutos esse, uti obśides accepère, non dare, consuerint:\(^m\) ejus rei Populum Romānum\(^l\) esse\(^9\) testem." Hoc responso dato, discessit.

15. Postero die\(^r\) castra ex eo loco movent: idem facit Cæsar; equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quatuor milliōnum, quem ex omni Provincia et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociis coactus\(^w\) habēbat, præmissit, qui videant,\(^x\) quas in partes hostes iter faciant.\(^y\) Qui,\(^z\) 10 cupidissīs\(^aa\) novissīnum agmen

---

\(^{a}\) § 111, R.  
\(^{b}\) § 140, 2.  
\(^{c}\) § 51, 5.  
\(^{d}\) § 98, Obs. 6.  
\(^{e}\) § 47, 6.  
\(^{f}\) § 140, 6.  
\(^{g}\) § 113, 8, (sibi.)  
\(^{h}\) § 108, R. XIV. & 7, 1.  
\(^{i}\) § 126. R. III.  
\(^{j}\) § 110, 5.  
\(^{k}\) § 145, R. LVIII.  
\(^{l}\) § 140, 1.  
\(^{m}\) § 141, Obs. 8.  
\(^{n}\) § 123, R.  
\(^{o}\) § 144, R. LVII.  
\(^{p}\) § 140, Obs. 4, & 74, 1.  
\(^{q}\) § 126. R. III.  
\(^{r}\) § 140, 1, 2d.  
\(^{s}\) § 140, 1.  
\(^{t}\) § 112, R. III.  
\(^{u}\) § 126, Obs. 2.  
\(^{v}\) § 131, R. XL.  
\(^{w}\) § 146, R. LIX.  
\(^{x}\) § 141, R. II.  
\(^{y}\) § 140, 5.  
\(^{z}\) 39, 5.  
\(^{aa}\) 22, 3.
insecuti, aliēno loco cum equitātū Helvetiōrum praelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo prēlio sublāti Helvetii, quōd quingentis a equībus tantam multitudinem equitum propulērant, audaciē subsistēre, nonnunquam ex 1 novissīmo agmine prēlio a nostros b lacessēre, cepērint. Cæsar suos b a prēlio continēbat, ac 2 satis habēbat in præsentia hostem rapinis,c pabulationibus,c populationibusque, prohibēre. Ita dies d circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et 3 nostrum primum 4 non amplius 4 quinis f aut senis millibus g passuum interesseret.

16. 6 Intermī quotidie Cæsar Æduos h frumentum, h quod essent i publicē pollētī, flagitāre:k nam propter 6 frigōra, quōd Gallia 7 sub septentrionibus, ut antē dictum est, posīta est, non modō frumenta in agris matūra non erant, sed ne pabūli quidem 1 satis magna copia suppetēbat: eo autem frumento,m quod flūmine a Arāre navibus a subvexērat, propterea uti minus potērat, quōd iter ab Arāre Helvetiī avertērant, a quibus discedēre nolēbat. Diem ex die ducēre k Ædui; 9 conferri, a comportāri, adesse dicēre.k Ubi 10 se diutius duci o intellexit, et diem instāre,o quo die p frumentum militibus metiri oportēret; q convocātīs eōrum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiāco r et Lisco, 11 qui summo magistrātu s præerat (quem Vergobrētum appel·lat Ædui, qui creātur annuus, l et vitæ necisque in suos habet potestātem,) gravīter eos accusāt, quōd, cum neque emi, u neque ex agris sumi posset,r tam necessario tempōrē, tam propinquus hostibus, ab iis non sublevētur;" præsertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precī...
bus adductus bellum susceptit: multo etiam gravius quod sit destitutus, queritur.

17. Tum demum Liscus, oratione Caesaris adductus, quod ante tacuerat, propònit: "Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; qui privati plus possint, quàm ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosà atque impròba oratiöne multitudinem deterrère, ne frumentum conferant, quod praëstare debeant. Si jam principatum Galliæ obtinère non possint, Gallorum, quàm Romanorum imperia perferre, sitius esse; neque dubitâre debère, quin, si Helvetios superavérint Români, una cum reliquâ Galliâ Æduis libertatem sint erepti. Ab iisdem nostra consilia, quæque in castris gerantur, hostibus enunciàri: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessariò rem coactus Caesari enunciât, intellegère sese, quanto id cum periculò fecerit, et ob eam causam, quàm diu potuerit, taecuisse."


---

* § 129, R.  
b § 140, Obs. 3, & 74.  
c § 132, Obs. 6.  
d § 141, Obs. 7.  
e 37, 2.  
f § 140, 1, 3d, & 77.  
§ 141, Obs. 8.  

h § 140, 2.  
i § 123, R.  
k § 45, 1, & § 140, 3.  
l § 140, 6.  
m § 126, R. III.  
§ 140, 5, & 74, 2d.  

o § 97, R.  
p § 146, R. LX. & 9  
q § 107, R. VII. & 6, 1  
r § 107, R. IX.  
s § 131, R. XLI.  
t § 146, Obs. 1.
nemo. His rebus\textsuperscript{a} et suam rem familiarem auxisse,\textsuperscript{b} et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse:\textsuperscript{c} magnum numerum equitatus suo sumtu\textsuperscript{d} semper alère\textsuperscript{e} et circum se habère:\textsuperscript{f} necque solùm domi,\textsuperscript{g} sed etiam apud finitimas civitates\textsuperscript{h} largiter posse: atque hujus potentiae causâ matrem in Biturigibus, homini\textsuperscript{i} illic nobilissimo,\textsuperscript{j} ac potentissimo,\textsuperscript{k} collocasse:\textsuperscript{l} ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habère:\textsuperscript{m} sororem ex matre,\textsuperscript{n} et pro pinquas suas nuptam\textsuperscript{o} propter eam affiniátatem: odisse etiam suo nomine\textsuperscript{p} Cæsarem et Românos, quod eorum adventum\textsuperscript{q} potentia ejus diminuta,\textsuperscript{r} et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus.\textsuperscript{s} Si quid accidat\textsuperscript{t} Românis,\textsuperscript{u} summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi\textsuperscript{v} veniře; imperio\textsuperscript{w} Populi Români non modò de regno, sed etiam de eâ, quam habeat,\textsuperscript{x} gratiâ desperâre.\textsuperscript{y} Reperiēbat etiam\textsuperscript{z} inquiringo\textsuperscript{aa} Cæsar, quod prœlium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus\textsuperscript{ab} esset factum, initium ejus fugæ factum a Dumnorîge atque ejus equitibus\textsuperscript{ac} (nam\textsuperscript{ad} equitatu,\textsuperscript{ae} quem auxilio\textsuperscript{af} Cæsâri\textsuperscript{ag} Ædui misérant, Dumnôrîx præcrat), “eōrum fugâ reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.”

19. Quibus\textsuperscript{ah} rebus cognitis, cûm ad has suspicioṇes\textsuperscript{ai} certissimae res accedērent,\textsuperscript{aj} quod per fines Sequanorùm Helvetios transduxisset,\textsuperscript{ak} quod obsīdes inter eos dandos curâasset,\textsuperscript{al} quod ea omnia non modô injussu suo\textsuperscript{am} et civitâtis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset,\textsuperscript{an} quod a magistrâtu Æduôrum accusâretur: satis esse causæ\textsuperscript{ao} arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadvertēret,\textsuperscript{ap} aut civitātem animadvertere jubēret.\textsuperscript{aq}
His omnibus rebus a unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in Populum Romænum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognovarat: nam, ne b ejus supplicio c Divitiaci animum offendere, d verebatur. Itaque priusquam quicquam conaretur, c Divitiacum ad se vocari e jubet. et, quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per Caium Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provincie, familiarem g suum, cui h summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul 2 commonefacit, quæ ipso presente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnoniège sint i dicta, et 3 ostendit, quæ separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit, i petit atque hortat, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel k ipse de eo, 4 causâ cognitâ, statuat, l vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

20. Divitiacus multis cum lacrymis, Cæsarem complexus, obsecrâre cepit, 5 ne quid gravius m in fratrem statueret: 1 scire se, illa esse vera, nec quenquam ex eo plus, quàm se, doloris n capère, propterea quod, cum 6 ipse gratiâ plurimum domi atque in reliquâ Galliâ, 7 ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus o opibus p ac nervis, non solûm ad minuendam q gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amore 8 fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovéri. Quod si quid 7 ei r a Cæsare gravius m accidisset, cùm 6 ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum, 1 non sua voluntate factum; quà ex re futurum, 4 uti totius Galliæ animi a se averterentur. Hæc cùm pluribus verbis flens a Cæsare peteret, Cæsar ejus dextram prenxit; consolatus

---

a § 112, R. V.  
b § 140, Obs. 6.  
c § 129, R.  
d § 140, 1.  
e § 140, 4.  
r § 90, 4.  
s § 97, R.  

b § 123, R.  
c § 140, 5.  
d 124, 3.  
e § 140, 1, 3d  
m 22.  

r § 106, R. VIII.  
o 38.  

p § 121, R. XXVI.  
q 112, 7.  
r § 112, R. IV.  
s § 140, 2, & 80, 2.  
t 100, 2.  
u 51.  

v 74, 1st, 3.
rogat, finem orandi faciat: tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dunmorigem ad se vocat; fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intelligat, quae civitas queratur, proponi; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; præterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dunmorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

21. Eödem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte consedisse passuum ab ipsius castris octo; qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renunciatum est, facilem esse. De tertiâ vigiliâ Titum Labienum, legatum pro prætore, cum duabus legionibus, et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipsae de quartâ vigiliâ eödem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus hæbæatur, et in exercitu Lucii Sullæ, et postea in Marci Crassi fuérat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

22. Prima luce, cum summus mons a Tito Labiēno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis compèrit, aut ipsius adventus, aut Labiēni, cognitus esset; Considius, equo admisso, ad eum accurrit: dicit, montem, quam a Labiēno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus tenēri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse.

---

*a § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.
*b § 106, R. VII. or 122, R. XXVIII.
*c § 140, 1, 1st.
*d § 140, 5, & 74, 9.
*e § 140, 1, 3d.
*f 19.
*g § 123, R.
*h § 140, 1, 2d.
*i 98, 2.
*j § 132, R. XLII.
*k § 141, R. II. Obs.
*l 2, 4th.
*m 96, 6.
*n § 107, R. IX.
*o § 131, R. XL.
*p § 98, Obs. 9, & 17, 2.
*q § 140, Obs. 4.
*r § 146, R. IX.
*s § 96, 6, & 94, 1, 2d.
*t § 129, Obs. 2.
*u § 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d
sar suas copias in proximum collem subducit,\textsuperscript{a} aciem in-
struuit.\textsuperscript{a} Labienus, ut erat ei\textsuperscript{b} præceptum\textsuperscript{c} a Cæsare ne prælium committet,\textsuperscript{d} nisi ipsius copiæ prope hostium ca-
stra\textsuperscript{e} visæ essent,\textsuperscript{f} ut undique uno tempore in hostes impētus
fiēret,\textsuperscript{g} monte occupāto nostros expectabat præliōque abstin-
ēbat. \textsuperscript{1} Multo denique die per exploratōres Cæsar cognō-
vit, et montem a suis tenēri,\textsuperscript{h} et Helvetios castra movisse,\textsuperscript{i}
 et Considium, timōre perterriūtum, quod non vidisset,\textsuperscript{f} \textsuperscript{2} pro
viso sibi renunciāsse. \textsuperscript{i} Eo die, \textsuperscript{3} quo\textsuperscript{k} consuērat intervallo,
hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria, ab eorum castris
castra ponit.

23. Postridie ejus diē,\textsuperscript{l} quōd omnīno biduum superērat,
cūm \textsuperscript{4} exercītū frumentum metīri oportēret,\textsuperscript{m} et quōd a Bi-
bracte, oppīdo Ėdūorum longē maxīmo et copiosissīmo, non
amplius millībus\textsuperscript{n} passuum octōdēcim abērat,\textsuperscript{5} rei\textsuperscript{o} frumen-
tariāe prospeciendum \textsuperscript{p} existimāvit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit,
ac Bibracte\textsuperscript{q} ire contendit. Ea res per fugītivos Lucīi
Āemilīi, \textsuperscript{6} decurīonis equītum Gallōrum, hostibus\textsuperscript{b} nunciā-
tur. Helvetii, sen,\textsuperscript{r} quōd timōre perterriūtos Romānos \textsuperscript{7} dis-
cedēre a se existimārent,\textsuperscript{s} eo magis, quōd pridie, superiori-
bus locīs occupātīs,\textsuperscript{u} prælium non commovissent;\textsuperscript{a} sive eo.
quōd re\textsuperscript{t} frumentariā interclūdi posse \textsuperscript{8} considērent;\textsuperscript{a} com-
mutāto\textsuperscript{u} consilio atque itinēre converso,\textsuperscript{u} nostros a novissīmo
agmīne insēqui ac lacerāre cæpērunt.

24. Postquam id\textsuperscript{9} anūm advertit, copias suas Cæsar
in proximum collem subducit,\textsuperscript{a} equitatumque, \textsuperscript{10} qui sustin-
ēret\textsuperscript{v} hostium impētum, misit. Ipse interīrim, in colle medio,\textsuperscript{w}
triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quatuor veteranarum, ita, ut supra se in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Galliâ citeriòre proximè conscripsèrat, et omnia auxilia collocàret; ac totum montem hominibus\(^a\) complèri,\(^b\) et interea sacrinas in unum locum conferri,\(^b\) et \(^3\) eum ab his, qui in superiòre acie constitèrant, muniri\(^b\) jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulèrunt: ipsi,\(^4\) certissimà acie,\(^c\) rejecto\(^d\) nostro equitatu, phalange factà,\(^d\) sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

25. Cæsar, primum\(^6\) suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remôtis\(^d\) equis, ut, æquato omnium\(^7\) pericûlo, spen fugæ tollère, cohortàtus suos, prælium commìsit. Milites, e loco superiòre pilis missis,\(^d\) facìlè hostium phalangem perfregèrunt. Ëa disjectà,\(^e\) gladiis\(^f\) destriètis in eos impètum fecòrunt. Gallis\(^g\) magno ad pugnam érat\(^h\) impedimento,\(^g\) quòd, plurìbus eórum\(^8\) scutis\(^e\) uno ictu pilórum transfixis et colligátis, cùm ferrum se in flexississet,\(^i\) neque evellère, neque, sinistrà impedità,\(^e\) satis\(^9\) commòdè pugnàre potèrant; multi ut, diu jactàto brachio, praèoptàrent\(^k\) scutum manu\(^l\) emittère, et\(^10\) nudo corpòre\(^f\) pugnàre. Tandem vulneribus defessi, et\(^11\) pedem referre, et quòd mons subèrat circiter mille passuum, cò se recipère cæpèrunt. Capto monte,\(^e\) et succedentibus nostris,\(^e\) Boìi et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus\(^f\) circiter quindéccim\(^12\) agmen hostium claudèbant, et no- vissimis\(^s\) præsidio erant, ex itinère nostros latère\(^m\) aperto aggressi, circumvenère: et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese recepèrunt, rursus instàre et prælium redintegràre cæpèrunt. Români conversa signa\(^13\) bipartitò intulèrunt: prima, ac secunda acies, ut victis ac summòtis resis- òret;\(^n\) tertia, ut venientes excipèret.\(^n\)

---

\(^a\) § 126, R. V.  
\(^b\) § 129, R.  
\(^c\) § 129, R.  
\(^d\) 104. 1.  
\(^e\) § 140, Obs. 4.  
\(^f\) § 140, 1, 1st. (ita.)  
\(^g\) § 140, 1, 2d.  
\(^h\) § 136, R. LII.  
\(^i\) § 136, Obs. 5, (ab)  
\(^j\) § 136, Obs. 5, (ab)  
\(^k\) § 136, Obs. 5, (ab)  
\(^l\) § 136, Obs. 5, (ab)  
\(^m\) § 136, Obs. 5, (ab)  
\(^n\) § 136, Obs. 5, (ab)
DE BELLO GALlico.

26. Ita \^ancipiti prælio\^ diu atque acriter pugnātum est.\^ Diutius cùm nostrorum impētus sustinēre non possent,\^ al-tēri\^ se, ut cœpērunt, in montem receptur̄; altēri\^ ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulērunt. Nam hoc toto prælio,\^ cùm ab 3 horā septimā ad vespĕrum pugnātum sit,\^ aversum hostem vidēre nemo potuit.\^ Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros 5 veni-eutes tela conjiciēbant,\^ et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque,\^ matāras ac tragūlas subjiciēbant\^ nostrosque vulnerābant.\^ Diu cùm esset pugnātum, impedimentis\^ castrisque nostri potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis filia, atque unus e filiis\^ captus est. Ex eo prælio circiter millia homīnum centum et triginta superfuērunt, eāque totā nocte\^ continentēr iērunt: nullam partem\^ noctis itinēre intermisso, in fines Lingōnum die quarto\^ pervenerunt, cùm, et 1 propter vulnera militum, et propter sepultūram occīsōrum,\^ nostri, triduum\^ morāti, eos sequi non potuissent.\^ Ĉæsar ad Lingōnas lītēras nunciosque misit, ne eos frumento, neve alia re juvarent: 7 qui si juvissent,\^ seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locūtī flentes pacem petissent, atque eos\^ in eo loco, quo tum es-sent,\^ suum adventum expectāre\^ jussisset, paruērunt. Eō postquam Ĉæsar pervēnit, obsīdes, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent,\^ poposcit. Dum ea conquiritur, et conferum-

---

\^ § 129, R.  
\^ § 65, 5.  
\^ § 140, Obs. 3.  
\^ § 27, Obs. 10.  
\^ § 131, R. XLI. & \^ Exp.  
\* 19, (mīliēs.)  
\- § 140, II, 2.  
\- § 141, Obs. 3.  
\- § 121, R. XXVI.  
\- § 107, Obs. 8.  
\- § 131, R. XL.  
\- 124, 1.  
\- § 140, 1, 3d.  
\- § 140, 2.  
\- 39, 5.  
\- § 145, R. LVIII.  
\- § 141, Obs. 8.  
\- 94, 3. or 90, 4.  
\- § 141, R. I.  
\- Obs. 10.
tur, nocte intermissâ, circîter homînum millia sex ejus pagi qui Verbigènus a appellâtur, sive timôre perterritî, ne, armis tradîtis, supplicîo afficerentur, b sive spe salûtis inducti, quôd, in tantâ multitudîne deditiîorum, suam fugam c aut 1 occultâri, d aut 2 omnîno ignorâri posse existimârent, e 3 primâ nocte ex castris Helvetîorùm egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanôrum contendêrunt.

28. Quod s ubi Cæsar resciit, 4 quorum per fines iérant, his, h uti conquirerent' et reducêrent, si sibi purgâti d esse vellent, k imperàvit: reductos l in hostium numero 6 habuit: reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in dedi- tionem accêpit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti m jussit; et quôd, omnîbus fructibus amissis, domi n nihil erat, quo famem tolerârent, o Allobrogius h imperàvit, ut iis p frumenti copiam facêrent: i 6 ipsos c oppîda vicosque, quos incendêrunt, restituère jussit. Id eâ maxîmè ratione 4 fecit, quôd noluit, eum locum, c unde Helvetii discesserant, 7 vacâre; m ne propter bonitàtem agró- rum Germâni, qui trans Rhenum incölunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiârum fines transirent, b et fìnitimi a Galliâe provinciâ r Allobrogiâbusque essent. 6 Boios, petentibus Æduis, h quôd egregià virtûte 8 erant cogniûti, ut in finibus suis collocârent, i concessit: quibus h illi agros dedêrunt, quoque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem, atque t ipsi erant, re- cepèrunt.

29. In castris Helvetiârum 9 tabûlæ repertæ sunt, 10 literís Græcis confectæ et ad Cæsàrem relâtæ, quibus a in tabûlis nominâtim 11 ratio confecta erat, qui numéruos domo exisset;
eōrum, qui arma ferre possent: a et item separatim puēri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum b omnium rerum summa erat, capitum Helvetiorum millia c ducenta et sexaginta tria, Tulingorum millia triginta sex, Latobrigorum quatuordecim, Rauracorum viginti tria, Boiorum triginta duo: ex his, qui arma ferre possent, a ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium d fuērant ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eōrum, qui domum rediērunt, 2 censu e habito, ut Cæsar imperavērat, repertus est numerus millium centum et decem.

30. Bello e Helvetiorum conquesto, totius fere Galliæ legati, principes civitatum, ad Cæsarem gratulātum convenērunt: "intelligēre sese, g tametsi, 4 pro veteribus Helvetiorum injuriis Populi Romāni, ab ipsis pænas bello repetisset, h tamen eam rem g non minus ex usu terræ Galliæ, quàm Populi Romāni accidisse: propterea quod eo consilio, florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliæ bellum inferrent, k imperiōque potirentur, k locumque domicilio l ex magnā copiā deligērent, k quem ex omni Galliā opportunitissimum ac fructuosissimum judicāssent, n reliquaque civitātes stipendiarias habērent." Petiērunt, "ut sibi m concilium totius Galliæ in diem certam indicēre, idque Cæsāris voluntāte facēre, licēret: n sese g habere quasdam res, quas ex commūni consensu ab eo petēre vellent." Eā re permissā, diem concilio l constituerunt, et jurejurando, 5 ne p quis enunciaret, nis quibus q commūni consilio mandātum esset, inter se sanxērunt.

31. Eo concilio dimisso, iīdem principes civitātum, qui antē fuērant ad Cæsārem, revertērunt, petieruntque, uti sibi secretō de suā r omniumque salute cum eo agēre licēret. n

---

a § 141, Obs. 3.  
b 38.  
c § 24, 5.  
d 19.  
e 109, 2.  
f 114,  
§ 145, R. LVIII.  
b § 140, 3.  
c § 123, R.  
d § 140, 1. 2d.  
e § 114, R. & 
f Obs. 4, (sibi.)  
m § 113, R.  
§ 140, 1, 3d.  
§ 141, Obs. 8.  
P 121.  
§ 126, R. III.  
r 29, 1.
Ea re impetrātā, a sese b omnes flentes Cæsāri c ad pedes pro-
jectāruit: 1 non minūs se d id contendēre et laborāre, ne ea, 
quaē dixisset, e enunciarentur, f quàm uti ea, quaē vellent, 
impetrārent, f propterea quōd, si enunciātum esset, g summum 
in cruciātum se ventūros vidērent. h Locūtus est pro his 
Divitiācus Aeduus: 1 "Galliāe totius factiōnes d esse duas: 
harum alterius principātum tenēre Aeduos, d alterius Arver-
nos. 3 Hi cūm tantōpēre de potentātu inter se multos annos 
contendērent, k factum esse l uti ab Arvernis Sequaniique 
Germani mercēde acresserunt." m 4 Horum primō circiter 
millia d quindēcim Rhenum e transisse: posteaquam agros, 
et cūtum, et 5 copias Gallōrum homīnes feri ac barbāri ad-
amāssent, h trans ductos plures: d nunc esse in Galliā ad cen-
tum et vigintī millium numèrum: cum his Aeduos 4 eorum-
que clientes semel atque itērum armis contendisse; 6 mag-
nam calamitātem pulsos accepisse, 7 omnem nobilitātem, om-
nem senātum, omnem equitātum amisisse. 8 Quibus p pro-
liis calamitatibusque fractōs, qui et suā virtūte, et Populi 
Romāni hospitio atque amicitia, plurimum antē in Galliā 
potuissent, 9 coactus esse Sequānis obsīdes dare, nobilissīmos 
civitātis, 4 et jurejurando civitātem obstringēre, sese neque 
obsīdes repetīturos, 6 neque auxilium a Popūlo Romāno im-
ploraturos, f 6 neque recusaturos, 5 quo minūs perpetuō sub 
illōrum ditiōne atque imperio esset. 7 Unum se esse ex 
omni civitāte Aeduōrum, qui addūci 1 non potuēris, h ut jurā-
ret, u aut libēros suos obsīdes daret. 9 Ob eam rem se d ex 
civitāte profugisse, i et Romam 7 ad senātum venisse, aux-
ilium postulatūm, quōd solus neque jurejurando x neque
obsidibus\textsuperscript{a} teneretur.\textsuperscript{b} Sed pejus victoribus Sequānīs,\textsuperscript{c} quām Aeduīs\textsuperscript{d} victis, accidisse:\textsuperscript{e} propter eam quōd Ariovistus, rex Germanōrum, in eōrum finibus consedisset,\textsuperscript{b} tertiamque partem agri Sequāni, qui esset\textsuperscript{e} optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset;\textsuperscript{f} et nunc de altera parte tertīa Sequānos decedēre jubēret;\textsuperscript{b} propter eam quōd, paucis mensibus\textsuperscript{f} ante, Harūdum millia homīnum viginti quatuor ad eum venissent;\textsuperscript{b} quibus\textsuperscript{g} locus ac sedes pararentur.\textsuperscript{e} Futūrum\textsuperscript{h} esse paucis annīs\textsuperscript{f} uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur,\textsuperscript{i} atque omnes GermānīRhenum transīrent:\textsuperscript{f} neque enim conferendum\textsuperscript{k} esse Galliēnum cum Germanōrum agro, neque hanc consuetūdīnem victūs cum illā comparandam.\textsuperscript{b} Ariovistum autem,\textsuperscript{4} ut semel Gallōrum copias prālie vicērit,\textsuperscript{e} quod prēlium\textsuperscript{l} factum sit\textsuperscript{b} ad Magetobriam, superbē et crudeliter imperāre, obsīdes nobilissimī cujusque libĕros poscere,\textsuperscript{5} et in eos omnīs exempla cruciatusque edēre, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntātem ejus facta sit:\textsuperscript{m} homīnem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperia\textsuperscript{n} diutius sustinēri.\textsuperscript{6} Nisi si quid in Cæsāre Popŭloque Romāno sit auxiliī,\textsuperscript{p} omnībus Gallis\textsuperscript{p} idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetīi secērint,\textsuperscript{e} ut domo emigrent,\textsuperscript{i} aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remōtas a Germānīs, petant,\textsuperscript{l} fortunamque, quaeumque accīdat,\textsuperscript{e} experiantur.\textsuperscript{r} Hæc si enunciāta Ariovisto sint,\textsuperscript{m} non dubitāre, quin de omnībus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint,\textsuperscript{e} gravissīnum supplicium sumat.\textsuperscript{a} Cæsārem vel auctoritāte\textsuperscript{a} suā\textsuperscript{f} atque exercītūs, vel recenti victoriā, vel nomīne Popŭli Romānī deterrēre posse, ne major multitūdo Germanōrum Rhenum transducētur,\textsuperscript{g} Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuriā posse defendēre.”

\textsuperscript{a} § 129, R.  
\textsuperscript{b} § 140, 6. & 74.  
\textsuperscript{c} § 113, R. &  
\textsuperscript{d} 98, 2.  
\textsuperscript{e} § 114, Obs. 7.  
\textsuperscript{f} § 131, R. XI.  
\textsuperscript{g} § 126, R. III.  
\textsuperscript{h} § 145, R. LVIII.  
\textsuperscript{i} § 140, 1, 4th.  
\textsuperscript{j} § 106, R. VIII.  
\textsuperscript{k} 108.  
\textsuperscript{l} § 147, R. LXI.  
\textsuperscript{m} § 140, 2, & 74, 1st.  
\textsuperscript{n} § 140, 1.  
\textsuperscript{o} § 106, R. VIII.  
\textsuperscript{p} § 140, 3.  
\textsuperscript{q} 29, 1.
32. Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita, omnes, qui adérant, magno fletu auxilium a Cæsäre petère cepérunt. Animadvertit Cæsar, unos ex omnibus Sequanōs nihil eārum rerum facère, quas ceteri facerent; sed tristes, capi tē dismisso, terram intüēri. Ejus rei causa quae esset, mirātus, ex ipsīs quāsvit. Nihil Sequāni respondēre, sed in eādem tristitiā tacitī permanēre. Cūm ab iis sæpius quaerēret, neque ullam omnīnū vocem 2 exprīnēre posset, idem Divitiacu̇s Edūus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorēm gravioremque fortūnam Sequanōrum, præ reliquōrum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri, neque auxilium implorare adērent, absentisque Ariovisti crudelitātem, velut si cora tram desset horrērent: propterea quod reliquis tamen fugāe faciutas darētur; Sequānis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestāte ejus essent, omnes cruciātus essent perferendi.

33. His rebus cognītīs, Cæsar Gallōrum anīmos verbiē confirmāvit, pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem curā futūram: magnam se habère spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritāte adductum Ariovistum finem injuriīs factūrum. Hac oratiōne habitā, concilium dimīsit; et secundum ea multās reum hortabantur, quāre sibi eam rem cogitandum et suspiciendam putāre; in primis quōd Edūos, fratres consanguineosque sæpersonem ab Senātu appellatos, in servītūte atque in ditione videbat Germanōrum tenēri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanōs intelligēbat: quod in tanto imperio Populi Romāni turpissimum sibi

34. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mittet, qui ab eo postularent, ut ilium locum medium utriusque colloquio dicéret: valle sese de reipublicâ et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesare esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisset; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Præterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesare possiderebat; neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque emolimento in unum locum contrahere posse: sibi autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari, aut omnino Populo Romano negotii esset.

35. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis, itur ad eum Caesarem cum his mandatis mittit: "Quoniam tanto suo Populique Romani beneficio affectus (cum in consilatu suo rex atque amicus a Senatu appellatus esset), hanc sibi

---

\[a\] 31, Note.  \[b\] 100, 1.  \[c\] § 140, Obs. 4.  \[d\] § 141, Obs. 8.  \[e\] § 140, 3.  \[f\] § 140, Obs. 3.  
\[g\] 38.  \[h\] § 117, & 113, (sibi)  \[i\] § 134, Obs. 6. 3d.  
\[k\] § 140, 1, 1st. 70.  \[l\] § 140, 1, 4th.  \[m\] § 141, R. II. Obs. 2, 4th.  \[n\] § 140, 1, 3d.  \[o\] 63.  \[p\] § 111.  \[q\] § 118, Obs. 1.  
\[r\] § 136, Obs. 5. (a.)  \[s\] § 113, Exc. III.  \[t\] § 140, 6.  \[u\] 70, & Obs.  
\[v\] § 141, Obs. 7.  \[w\] § 112, R. II.  \[x\] § 107, R. VIII.  \[y\] 29, 1.  
\[z\] § 112, R. IV.
Populóque Románo gratiam referret, a ut in colloquium venire invitátus gravarétur, b 2 neque c de commúni re dicendum sibi a et cognoscendum putáret; b hæc e esse, quæ ab eo postuláret: f primus, ne 4 quarum homínium multitúdinem amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam transducéret; g deinde obsides, quos habéret f ab Æduis, reddéret, g Sequanisque permittérét, g ut, quos illi habérent, f voluntáte ejus reddére illis licéret; g neve Æduos g injuriá lacesséret, g neve hís sociísve eórum bellum inferret; g si id ita fecisset, h sibi h Populóque Románo perpetúam gratiam e atque amicitiam cum eo futúram: k si non impetráret, h sese e (quoniam Marco Messálâ, Marco Pisóné Consulibus, Senátus censuisset, a uti quicumque Galliam provinciam l obtinéret, m 6 quod commódo n reipublícæ factt're posset, Æduos ceterosque amicos Populi Románi defendéret), g sese Æduórum injurias non neglectúrum. k

36. Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit: "Jus esse belli, ut, qui o vicissent, m iis, p quos vicissent, f quemadmodum vellent, g imperárent: g 7 item Popúlum Románum e victis p non ad al terius præscriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperáre consúesse. f Si ipse Popúlo Románo non præscribérét, h quemadmodum suo a jure uterétur; a non 8 oportère sese a Popúlo Románo in suo jure impediiri. Æduos c sibi, f quoniam belli fortúnam tentassent a et armis congressi ac superátì essent, a stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Cæsárem e injuriam facérre, qui suo adventu vectigalía sibi deteriora factét. Æduis v se obsides redditúrum non esse, neque iis, v neque eórum sociís v injuria bellum illútrum, si in eo manérent, h quod convenisset, f stipendiumque quotannis pendérent: si

a § 140, 6. b § 140, 1. c § 93, 1. d § 147, & 113, 5. e § 145, R. LVIII. f § 141, R. VI. g § 140, 1, 3d. h § 140, 2. i § 112, R. II. k 100, 2. l § 112, R. V. m § 141, R. I. n § 129, R. o 37, 3. p § 112, R. V. q § 140, 5. r 98, 6. s 31, Note. t § 111, R. u § 111, R. III v § 123, R.
id non fecissent, longè iis Ætni absutûrum. 2 Quod sibi Cæsar denunciaret, se Ætnorum injurias non neglectûrum; neminem secum sine sua d pernicie contendisse. Cùm vellet, congregeretur; intellectûrum, quid invicti Germâni, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos quatuordécim tectum non subissent, virûte possent.

37. Hæc eodem tempore Cæsâri mandâta referebantur, et legati ab Æduis et a Trevîris venièbant: Ædui quod Harûdes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur, sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimère potuisse: Treviri autem, pagos centum Suevôrum ad ripas Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; iis præesse Nasam et Cîmberium fratres: Quibus rebus Cæsar vehementer complìtus, matratandum sibi existimavit, ne si nova manus Suevôrum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minûs facilè resisti posset. Itaque re frumentarià, quàm celerrimì potuit, comparatâ, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cùm tridui viam processisset, nuncìatum est ei, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vèsontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanôrum, contendere, triduèque viam a suis finibus processisse. Id ne accideret, magno opère sibi præcavendum Cæsar existimabant: nâmque omnium rerum, quæ ad bellum usui erant, summâ erat in eo oppido facultas; idque natural loci sic muniebatur, ut magnà 12 ad ducendum bellum dare fac-

---

*a* § 112, R. I.  
*b* 38, Note. 11.  
*c* § 145, R. LVIII.  
*d* 31, Note.  
*e* 98, 2.  
*f* § 140, Obs. 4.  
*g* § 140, 6.  
*h* § 141, Obs. 7.  
*i* § 140, 5.  
*k* § 126, R. III.  
*l* § 101, Obs. 4.  
*m* § 118, 1.  
*n* 38.  
*o* 113.  
*p* § 140, 2.  
*q* § 140, 1, 2d.  
*r* § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.  
*s* § 104, 1.  
*t* 112, 7.  
*u* 96, 2.  
*v* § 132, R. XLII.  
*w* § 114, R. & Obs. 4.  
*x* § 140, 1, 1st.
ultatem, propriae quod flumen Dubis 1 ut circino circum-
ductum, pane totum oppidum cingit: reliquum spatium, quod est 2 non amplius pedum a sexcentorum, quâ flumen intermittit, mens 3 continet magnâ altitudine, b ita ut radices ejus montis ex utrâque parte ripæ fluminis contingat. c

Hunc d murus circumdâtus arcem d efficit et cum oppido conjungit. Huc Cæsar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itinerâ-
bus contendit; e occupatâque oppido, ibi præsidium collâcat. e

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem, rei frumentariae commeatûsque causâ, morâtur, 5 ex percunctatîône nostrî-
rum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti mag-
nitudine b corpôrum Germânos, incredibili virtûte b atque
exercitâtione in armis esse praedicâbant, f sêpenuméro sese, g
cum eis congressos, ne 6 vultum quidem atque aciem ocu-
lôrum ferre potuisse, h tantus subîtò timor ommem exercitûm
occupâvit, ut non mediocrîter omnium mentes animosque
perturbaeret. e Hic i primum ortus est a Tribûnis militum,
praefectis reliquisque, qui, ex urbe amicitia causâ Cæsarem
secûtì, non magnum in re militàri usum habébant: quorum 5
alius, 1 alià m causa illátà, quam sibi n ad profisciscendum
necessâriam esse dicèrent, p petébant, ut ejus voluntâte dis-
cedère liceret: nonnulli, pudore adducti, ut timóris suspi-
ciônom vitarent, 9 remanébant. 

Hi neque 9 vultum fingère, neque interdum lacrymás tenère potérand: abdîti in tabernâculis, aut suum r fatum querebantur, f aut cum familiaribus suis r commune pericûlum miserabautur. Vulgò totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. f Horum vocibus ac timóre paulâtîm etiam ii, s qui magnum in castris usum habébant, milites s centurionesque, quique equitâtû præérant, pertur-

---

a § 106, R. VI. Obs. 3. (spatio.)
b § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1.
c § 140, 1, Ist.
d § 116, Obs. 1.
• § 44, I, 3.
1 § 44, II. 1.
6 § 111, R.
i § 145, R. LVIII.
h 98, 2.
i 19, (timor.)
k § 107, R. X.
l § 102, Obs. 5.
m 25, 1, and
n § 98, Obs. 11.
babautur. 1 Qui se ex his minùs timidos existimãri volè-bant, non se hostem verèri, c sed angustias itinéris et mag-nitudinem silvârum, que intercedérent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commôdè sup-portâri posset, timère dicèbant. Nonnulli etiam Cæsâri renunciábant, cùm castra movèri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites, nec propter timôrem signa latûros.

40. Hæc cùm animadvertisset, 3 convocâtò consilio, omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibítis centurionibus, vehémenter eos incusávit; “primûm, quod, aut quam in partem, aut quo consilio ducérent, h quæréndum aut cogitandum putárent. d Ariovistum, se k consûle, cupidis-simè Popûli Români amicitiam appetisse; l cur hunc tam temère quisquam ab officio discessûrum judicaret? d Sibi m quidem persuadèri, cognitis suis postulâtis atque aequitâté conditionûm perspectá, eum neque suam, neque Popûli Români gratiam repudiatûrum. Quòd si, surâre atque amen-tià impulsus, bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? d aut cur de suâ virtûte, aut de ipsius diligentiâ, desperárent? d Factum ejus hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cùm, Cimbris et Teutônis a Caio Mario pulsis, non minórem laudem exercitus, quàm ipse imperatór, méritus videbátur; f factum etiam nuper in Italìa servìli tumultu, quos a tamen aliquid c usus ac disciplina, quam a nobis acceptissent, subleváre. d Ex quò judicâri posset, d quantum habèret h in se boni constantia; propterque quòd, quos a alíquamdiu inermos sine causâ timuissent, hos postea armátos

a 37, (ii.)
b 94, 3.
c 96, 1.
d § 140, 6.
e § 140, Obs. 6.
f 80, 1.
g 104, 1.
h § 140, 5.
i 113.
j 110, 2.
k 98, 2.
l § 126, R. III.
m § 140, Obs. 6.

n 29, 1.
o § 140, 2.
p § 141, Obs. 5. 1st
q § 99, Obs. 2.
r § 116, Obs. 3.
s 43.
ac victòres superàssent. Denique hos\(^{a}\) esse eosdem, quibus-
cum saepenuméro Helvetii congressi, non solùm in\(^{1}\) suis, sed
etam in illùrum finibus, plerumque superàrint,\(^{b}\) qui tamen
pares esse nostro exercitu\(^{c}\) non pòtuèrunt. Si\(^2\) quos adver-
sum prælium et fuga Gallorum commòvèret,\(^{d}\) hos, si quae-
rèrent,\(^{d}\) reperìre posse, diuturnitàte belli defatigātis Gallis,\(^{e}\)
Ariovistum,\(^{a}\) cùm multòs mènes\(^{f}\) castris se ac paludibus
tenuisset, \(^3\) neque sui poteståtem facesset, desperantes jam
de pugnà et dispersos subitò adortum, magis\(^{4}\) ratione\(^{g}\) et
consilio, quàm virtùte,\(^{g}\) vicisse. Cui\(^{h}\) rationi\(^1\) contra hom-
ìnæ barbāros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hâc, ne ipsum\(^a\)
quidem sperårè, nostros exercitùs\(^a\) capi posse. \(^5\) Que\(^{k}\) suum\(^1\)
timòrem in rei frumentariae simulatióne angùstiasque itin-
èrum conferre,\(^{b}\) facère arroganter, cùm aut de officio im-
peratòris desperàre, aut præscribere viderentur.\(^m\) Hæc sibi\(^o\)
esse curæ;\(^n\) frumentum Sequānos,\(^{a}\) Leucos, Lingōnas sub-
ministrāre;\(^o\) jamque esse in agris frumenta matùra: de
itinère ipsos\(^{a}\) brevi tempore judicatūros.\(^p\) \(^6\) Quod\(^{q}\) non
fore dicto audientes milites, neque\(^{r}\) signa latūri dicantur,\(^b\)
nihil\(^{t}\) se eā re commòvēri: \(^7\) scire enim, quibuscumque ex-
ercitus dicto audïens non fuèrit,\(^{b}\) aut, malè re\(^e\) gestā, forti-
num desfuïse; aut, alīquo faciōnō\(^{e}\) comperto, avarītam
esse conjunctam. Suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felici-
tātem Helvetiòrum bello, esse perspectam.\(^{s}\) \(^8\) Itaque se,\(^a\)
quod in longōrem diem collatūrus esset,\(^1\) repræsentatûrum,\(^p\)
et proxīmā nocte de quartâ vigiliā castra motūrum, ut quàm
primùm intelligēre posset,\(^u\) utrùm\(^{v}\) apud eos pudor atque
officium, an timor valēret.\(^w\) Quod si præterea nemo sequātur,\(^x\)

\(^{a}\) § 145, R. LVIII.  \(^{i}\) § 110, R. XV.  \(^{r}\) § 116, Obs. 3.
\(^{b}\) § 140, 6.  \(^{k}\) 37, \((eòs.)\)  \(^{s}\) 98, 6.
\(^{c}\) § 111, R.  \(^{l}\) 30, 2.  \(^{t}\) § 79, 8.
\(^{d}\) § 140, 2.  \(^{m}\) § 140, Obs. 4.  \(^{u}\) § 140, 1, 2d.
\(^{e}\) 109, 2.  \(^{n}\) § 114, R.  \(^{v}\) 124, 14.
\(^{f}\) § 131, R. XLI.  \(^{o}\) 94,3, & 96, Exc. II. \(^{w}\) § 140, 5.
\(^{g}\) § 129, R.  \(^{p}\) 100, 2.  \(^{x}\) § 140, 2, \& 77 5.
\(^{h}\) 38.  \(^{q}\) 38, Note. 11.  \(^{y}\) § 93, 1.
tamen se cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum, de quā non
dubitāret; a sibique eam 1 prætoriam cohortem b futūram. c
Huic legiōni c Cæsar et indulṣērat præcipū, et propter vir-
tùtem c se consolidēbat maximē.

41. Hāc oratīōne habitā, mirum in modum conversae d
sunt omnium mentes, summāque alacritās et cupidītās belli
gerendī c innāta d est, e princepsque f decimā legio, per tri-
būnos e militūm, ei gratīas egit, quōd de se optīumum judi-
cium fecisset; f seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissi-
mam confirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnes, per tribūnos g
militūm et primōrum ordinum centūriōnes, d egerunt, ut Cæsāri h satisfacērent: i se neque unquam dubitāsse, k neque
timuisse, neque de summā belli suum l judicium, sed impe-
ratōris m esse, existimāvisse. k Eōrum s satisfactiōne acceptā,
et itinēre e exquisīto per Divitiācum, s quōd ex aliis ei n
maximam fidem habēbat, ut millium ampliās quinquagīntā
circūitu locīs apertis exercitum ducēret, i de quartā vigiliā,
t ut dixērat, profectus est. Septīmo die, cūm iter non inter-
mittēret, o ab exploratoribus e certior factus est, Ariovisti co-
pias a nostris p millibus q passuum quatuor et vigintī abesse.

42. Cognōto Cæsāris adventu, Ariovistus legātos ad eum
mittit: r quod t anteā de colloquio postulāsset, t id per se sēri
licēre, quoniam proprius accessisset: s seque id sine pericūlo
faēre posse existimāre. Non respuit conditionem Cæsār: jamque eum ad sanitātem revertī arbitrabātur, cūm id, quod
antea petenti denegāsset, l ulter pollicerēt: r; o magnāmque
in spem veniēbat, pro sui t tantis Populiqve Rōmāni in eum
beneficiis, cognōtis suis s postulātis, s fore, u uti pertinacīa de-

---

a § 141, Obs. 7.  
b § 114, Obs. 2.  
c § 112, R. V.  
d § 44, III, Note  
e 112, 5.  
fi § 98, Obs. 10.  
e § 126, Obs. 2.  

h § 112, R. III.  
i § 140, 1, 2d.  
k 98, 2.  
l 29, 1.  
m § 108, R. XII.  
b § 123, R.  
0 § 140, Obs. 4.  
p 19, (copiis.)  
q § 132, R. XLII.  
r 43.  
s § 140, 6.  
t § 141, Obs. 8.  
u § 145, Obs. 6, & 100, 14.
sistēret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die quintus. In-terim, cūm sāpe ultrō citrōque legātī inter eos mitterentur, a Ariovistus postulāvit, b ne quem pedītem ad colloquium Cæ-sar adducēret: c verēri, ne d per insidias ab eo circumveni-tetur: uterque cum equitātū veniret: e aliā ratiōne se non esse ventūrum. Cæsar, quōd neque colloquium e interposītā causā f tollī volēbat, neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equi-tatui g committēre audēbat, g commodissīmum h esse statuit, 4 omnibus equīs i Gallis equītūs k detractis, eō legionarios milītes legiōnis decīmae, cui quām maximē confidēbat, imponēre, l ut præsidium quām amicissīmum, 5 si quid opus facto esset, habēret. m Quod n cūm fiēret, o non irridicūlē quidam ex militibus o decīmā legiōnis dixit: “plus, quām pollicitus esset,” Cæsarem ei facēre; pollicitūm, se in co-hortis prātoriā loco decīnam legiōnem habitūrum, 6 nunc ad equum rescribere.”

43. Planīties erat magna, et in ē tumūlūs terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus āquo serē spatio q ab castrīs utrisque abērat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venērunt. Le-giōnem Cæsar, quam equīs r devexērat, passibus q ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equītes Ariovisti pari inter-vallo q constitērunt. Ariovistus, r ex equīs ut colloqueren-tur h et, præter se, denos r ut ad colloquium adducērent, p postulāvit. 8 Ubi ēo ventum est, t Cæsar, initio oratīōnis, sua Senatūsque in eum beneficiā commemorāvit, “quōd rex ap-pellātus esset a Senātu, quōd munēra amplissimā missa: quam n rem et paucīs u contigisse,” et pro magnīs homīnum officiis consuēsse tribui” docēbat: “illum, cūm neque adītum,

---

a § 140, Obs. 4.  
b § 140, 1, 3d.  
c § 94, 4.  
d § 140, Obs. 6, & 121, 6.  
e § 145, R. LVIII.  
f 96, Exc. II. 11.  
g § 123, R.  
h § 98, Obs. 6.  
i 109.  
j § 126, R. III.  
k § 144.R.LVII.Note.  
l § 140, 1, 2d.  
m § 141, Obs. 8.  
n 38.  
o § 107, Obs. 8.  
p § 132, R. XLII.  
q § 129, R.  
r § 24, 11, & 26, I.  
t 67, Note. 5.  
u 19, & § 112, R. IV  
v 98, 2.
neque causam postulandi justam habēret, beneficio ac liberalitāte suā ac Senātūs ea præmia consecūtum." Docēbat etiam, "quām vetēres, quāmque justae cause 1 necessitūdīnis ipsīs 2 cum Aedūis intercedērent, 3 quāe Senātūs consultā, quoties, quāmque honorīscā in eos facta essent: 4 ut omni tempōre totius Galliāe principātum Aedui tenuissent, 5 priūs etiam quām nostram amicitiam appetissent: 6 Popūli Romāni hanc 7 esse consuetūdīnem, ut socios atque amīcos non modō 8 sui nihil deperdere, 9 sed gratiā, dignitāte, honōre 10 auctōres velit 11 esse: quod vero ad amicitiam Popūli Romāni attulissent, id iis 12 erīpi, quis pati posset?" 13 Postulāvit deinde eādem, quae legātis in mandātis dederat, "ne aut Aeduis, aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret: 14 obsīdes redde: si nullam partem Germanōrum domum 15 remittēre posset, 16 at ne 17 quos amplius Rhenum transīre paterētur." 18

44. Ariovistus ad postulātā Cāsāris paucā respondit: de suis virtūtibus multa prædicāvit: "Transīsse 1 Rhenum 2 sese, non suā sponte, sed 3 rogātum 4 et arcessitum 5 a Gallis; non sine magnā spe, magnisque præmiis, domum pro-pinquosque reliquisse; 6 sedes habēre 7 in Galliā, ab ipsis concessas; 8 obsīdes ipsōrum voluntāte datos; stipendium capēre 9 jure belli, quod victōres victis 10 imponēre consuērīnt; non sese 11 Gallis, sed Gallos 12 sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliāe civitātes ad se oppugnandum venisse, 13 ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copiās a se uno prālio fūsas ac superātas esse; si itērum experīri veliūt, 14 itērum parātum sese decertāre; si pace 15 uti velint, iniquum esse, de stipendio recusāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pepediaint.

---

a § 112, R. IV.  e § 140, 6.  m § 136, R. LII.
b § 140, 5.  h § 126, R. III.  n 101, 4.  c § 140, 1, 3d.  i § 130, 4.  o 96, 2.  d § 140, 4.  k § 140, 2.  p § 123, R. & 19.  e § 145, R. LVIII.  l 93, 2.  q § 121, R. XXVI.

e § 140, 6.  m § 136, R. LII.


Amicitiam Populi Români sibi a ornamento a et præsidio, non detrimento, esse oportère, idque se cæ spe petisse. Si per Popûlum Românûm stipendium remittâtur, b et deditiûi subtrahantur, non minûs libenter sese recusatûrum Popûli Români amicitiam, quàm appetiûrit. c Quôd multitudinem Germaûorum in Galliâm transdücat, d id se sui muniendi, e non Galliâe impugnandae e causâ facère; ejus rei testimonium f esse, g quôd, nisi rogâtus, non venérît, e et quôd bellum non intulérît, c 2 sed defendérît. c Se priûs in Galliâm venisse, quàm Popûlum Românûm. h Nunciam ante hoc tempor exerçitûm Popûli Români Galliâe provinciâ fines e egressum. 3 Quid sibi vellet? c Cur in sua possessione veniret? c Provinciâm suam 4 hanc esse Galliâm, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi 1 concédi non oportère, si in nostros fines impètum facère, b sic item nos esse iniquos, 5 qui in suo jure se interpellarémus. k Quôd 1 fratres f a Senâtû æduos appelâtos dicère, c non se tam barbârum, m neque tam imperitum m esse rerum, n ut non sciret, o neque bello Allobriôgym proximo æduos Românis  b auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos in his contentiûibus, quas ædui securn et cum Sequânis habuisse, q auxilio 9 Popûli Români usos esse. Debère se suspicâri, simulâta Casârem amiciûìa, quôd exerçitûm in Galliâ habeat, c sui opprimendi  c causâ habère. Qui e nisi decedat b atque exerçitûm deducat b ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amîco, sed pro hoste habitûrum: quôd si eum interfeçerit, b multis 7 sese nobilibus 1 principibusque Popûli Români gratum esse factûrum; id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios connectum  u habère, quorum omnium gràtim atque ami-
citiam ejus morte redime åre posset. Quôd si recessisset, ac liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum præmio remuneratûrum, et, quæcumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo ejus labôre et periculo confectûrum."

45. Multa ab Cæsâre in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset, neque suam, neque Popûli Românî consuctudînem pati, uti optimum meritos socios desereret: neque se judicare, Galliam potiûs esse Arioüisti, quàm Popûli Românî. Bello superâtos esse Arvernos et Rutênos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus Popûlus Românus ignoviis, neque in provinciam redigisset; neque stipendium imposuisset. Quòd si antiquissimum quoque tempus spectari oportet, Popûli Românî justissînum esse in Galliâ imperium: si judicium Senátus observâri oportet, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluissest.

46. Dum hæc in colloquio geruntur, Cæsâri nunciåtum est, equites Arioüisti propriis tumulûm accedère, et ad nostrôs adequantâre, lapîdes telâque in nostros conjicère. Caesar loquendi finem facit seque ad suos recipit, suisque imperâvit, ne quod omnîno telum in hostes rejicerent. Nam, etsi sine ullo periculo legiônis delectâ cum equitatu prælium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut, pulsiis hostibus, dici posset, ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantiâ in colloquio Arioüistus usus omni Galliâ Românis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent căque res colloquium ut diremisset: multo major alactitas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitu injectum est.

---

a § 140, 2.  b § 123, R.  c § 99, Obs. 7.  d § 140, 6.  e § 140, 5.  f 29, 1.  g § 145, R. LVIII.  h § 140, 1, 3d.  i § 108, R. XII.  k § 112, R. V.  l § 141, Obs. 7.  m § 103, Obs. 2.  n § 121, R. XXVI.  o § 126, R. III.  p 96, 2.  q § 44, I. 3.  r 113, and e.  s § 140, 1, Ist.
47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit, velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi captæ, neque perfectæ essent, agere cum eo: uti aut itérum colloquio diem constituēret, aut, si id minimus vellet, ex suis aliquem ad se mittēret. Colloquendi Caesāri causa visa non est; et eo magis, quod pridie ejus diēs Germāni retinēri non potērant, quin in nostros tela concīcerent. Legātum ex suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missūrum, et hominibus feris objectūrum, existimābat. Commodissīmum visum est, Caian Valerium Procillum, Caui Valerii Cabūri filium, summā virtute et humanitāte adolescentem (cujus pater a Caio Valerio Flacco civitāte donātus erat), et propter fidem et propter lingūx Gallicās scientiam, quā multā jam Ariovistus longinquā consuetūdīne uteātur, et quod in eo peccandi Germānīs causa non esset, ad eum mittēre, et Marcus Mettium, qui hospitio Ariovísti usus erat. His mandāvit, ut, quae dicēret Ariovistus, cognoscēret et ad se referrent. Quos cūm apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercītus suo præsentē, conclamāvit: "Quid ad se venīrent? An speculandi causā?" Conante dies prohibuit et in catēnas conjecit.

48. Eōdem die castra prōmōvi, et millibus passuum sex a Caesāris castris sub monte consēdit. Postridie ejus diēs prāter castra Caesāris suas copias transduxit, et millibus passuum duōbus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio, uti frumentum comμeantūque, qui ex Sequānis et Ėduis supportaretur, Caesārem interclaudēret. Ex eo die dies continuos

---

\[\text{a} \quad 94, 1, 21, \& 4.\]
\[\text{b} \quad 96, 2.\]
\[\text{c} \quad \S 140, 6.\]
\[\text{d} \quad \S 140, 1, 34.\]
\[\text{e} \quad \S 140, 2.\]
\[\text{f} \quad 70.\]
\[\text{g} \quad \S 135, R. XLVI.\]
\[\text{h} \quad \S 140, 3, \& 78, 7, \text{Note.}\]
\[\text{i} \quad 19.\]
\[\text{j} \quad \S 106, R. VII.\]
\[\text{k} \quad \S 97, R.\]
\[\text{l} \quad \S 126, R. V.\]
\[\text{m} \quad \S 129, R.\]
\[\text{n} \quad \S 112, R. II.\]
\[\text{o} \quad \S 141, Obs. 7.\]
\[\text{p} \quad \S 123, R.\]
\[\text{q} \quad \S 141, Obs. 8.\]
\[\text{r} \quad 38.\]
\[\text{s} \quad \S 140, Obs. 4.\]
\[\text{t} \quad 56, 34.\]
\[\text{u} \quad \S 142, R. XLII.\]
quince Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit, et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet\textsuperscript{a} Ariovistus praelio contendere ei\textsuperscript{b} potestas non decesset.\textsuperscript{c} Ariovistus his omnibus diebus\textsuperscript{d} exercitum castris continuuit; equestri praelio quotidie contentit. Genus hoc\textsuperscript{e} erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercu\ae\textsuperscript{i}rant. Equitum millia erant sex: totidem numero\textsuperscript{f} pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi;\textsuperscript{g} quos ex omni copiae singuli singulis,\textsuperscript{h} suae salute causi, deleg\ae\textsuperscript{i}rant. Cum his in praeliis versabantur, ad hos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius,\textsuperscript{b} concurr\ae\textsuperscript{i}bant: si qui,\textsuperscript{i} graviore vulnere accepto, equo decid\ae\textsuperscript{i}rat, circum\ae\textsuperscript{i}stebant: si quod erat longius prodeundum,\textsuperscript{k} aut celeri\ae\textsuperscript{i}us recipiendum,\textsuperscript{k} tanta erat horum exercitazione celeritas, ut, jubis\textsuperscript{l} equorum sublevati,\textsuperscript{4} cursum adaequ\ae\textsuperscript{m}rant.

49. Ubi cum\textsuperscript{n} castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur,\textsuperscript{c} ultra eum locum,\textsuperscript{5} quo in loco\textsuperscript{o} Germani consederrant, circiter passus\textsuperscript{p} sexcentos ab eis, castris\textsuperscript{q} idoneum locum deligit, acie\ae\textsuperscript{i}que tripl\ae\textsuperscript{i} instructa, ad cum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse,\textsuperscript{r} tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus\textsuperscript{p} sexcentos, uti dictum est, ab\ae\textsuperscript{r}rat. Eo circiter hominum numero sexd\ae\textsuperscript{c}cim millia expedita cum omni equitatum Ariovistus misit,\textsuperscript{6} quae\textsuperscript{e} copiae nostros perterruerent\textsuperscript{1} et muniti\ae\textsuperscript{e} probi\ae\textsuperscript{r}rent. Nihilo seci\ae\textsuperscript{d} Caesar, ut ante consti\ae\textsuperscript{e}uat, duas acies hostem propulsare,\textsuperscript{r} tertiam opus perficere jussit. Muniti castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxili\ae\textsuperscript{o}rum: quatuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.
50. Proximo die, \( { }^{a} \) instituto \( { }^{b} \) suo, Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit; paulumque \( { }^{c} \) a majoribus progressus, aciem instruxit, hostibusque \( { }^{d} \) pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quodem eos prodire \( { }^{e} \) interlegit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus parte suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, \( { }^{f} \) misit: acriter utrinque usque ad vespèrum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus, \( { }^{f} \) in castra reduxit. Cùm ex captivis quaereret \( { }^{g} \) Caesar, quem ob rem Ariovistus praelio non deceret, \( { }^{h} \) hanc reperiēbat causam, quodd apud Germānos ea consuetudine esse, \( { }^{i} \) ut matres familiae eorum \( { }^{j} \) sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, \( { }^{k} \) utrum praelium committere \( { }^{l} \) ex usu esse, \( { }^{m} \) nec esset eis ita dieēre, \( { }^{n} \) "Non esse fas, Germānos superāre, si ante novam lunam praelio contendissent."m

51. Postridie ejus diei Caesar præsidio \( { }^{n} \) utrisque castris, quod \( { }^{o} \) satis esse visum est, reliquit; \( { }^{p} \) omnes alarīs in conspectu hostium \( { }^{q} \) pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minūs multitudine milītium legionariōrum prom hostium numèro valēbat, ut \( { }^{r} \) ad speciem alarīs uterētur.\( { }^{s} \) Ipse, tripliicis instructā acie, usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessariō Germāni suas copias castris eduxerunt, \( { }^{t} \) generatimque constituerunt paribusque intervallis Harūdes, Marcomānos, Triboccos, Vangiones, Nēmēties, Sedusios, Suēvos, omnemque aciem suam \( { }^{u} \) rhēdis \( { }^{v} \) et carris circumdērunt, ne qua spes in fugā relinquērunt. \( { }^{w} \) Eō multis imposuerunt, quae in praelium proficiscentes militēs passim crīnibus flentes implorābant, ne se in servitūtem Romānis tradērent.\( { }^{x} \)

---

\( { }^{a} \) § 131, R. XL.  \( { }^{b} \) § 129, R.  \( { }^{c} \) § 123, R. & 63, 5.  \( { }^{d} \) 96, 2.  \( { }^{e} \) § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.  \( { }^{f} \) 109, 2  

---

\( { }^{a} \) § 140, Obs. 4.  \( { }^{b} \) § 140, 5.  \( { }^{c} \) § 141, Obs. 7.  \( { }^{d} \) § 140, 1, 1st.  \( { }^{e} \) § 140, 2.  

---

\( { }^{a} \) § 114, R.  \( { }^{b} \) 37, 2 (id.).  \( { }^{c} \) § 140, 1, 2d.  \( { }^{d} \) 30, 2.  \( { }^{e} \) § 140, 1, 3d, & 121, 2.
52. Cæsar singulìs\(^a\) legionibus\(^b\) singúlos legátos et quæstórum præfécit, uti eos testes suæ quisque virtútis habérét.\(^c\) Ipse a dextro cornu, quòd eam partem 2 mínim\(^d\) firmam hostium esse animum adventérat, prælium commísit. Ita nostri acrítet in hostes, signo dato, impétum fecérunt, itàque hostes repéntè celeriterque procurrent, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi\(^e\) non daretur.\(^f\) Rejectis pilis,\(^g\) comínus gladiis pugnátum est: at Germáni, celeriter ex consuetudíne suá phalangê\(^h\) facta, impétus gladiórum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complúres\(^i\) nostri milítes, qui in phalanges insíliérent,\(^j\) et scuta maníbus revellérent,\(^k\) et desúper vulnerárent.\(^l\) Cùm hostiúm acies a sinistro cornu puísa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitúdine\(^m\) suórum nostram aciem prombant. Id cùm animadvertisset\(^n\) Publius Crassus adolescens, qui, quod expeditior erat, quam qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciém laborantibus nostris\(^o\) subsidio\(^p\) misit.

53. Ita prælium resüruitum est, atque omnes hostes terga vertérunt,\(^q\) neque priús fugère desitírunt, quám ad flumínem Rhenum milliá\(^r\) passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenerint.\(^s\) Ibi perpauci aut, viúibus\(^t\) consísi, transnátære contendérunt, aut, lintríbus inventís, sibi\(^u\) salútem reperérunt.\(^v\) In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, navícúm deligátam ad ripam nactus,\(^w\) eá profúgit: reliquos omnes consecúti equités nostri interfecérunt. Duæ fuérunt Ariovistì uxòres, una\(^x\) Sueva natióne, quam ab domo seóum eduxérat; altéra Norícia, regis Vociónis soror,\(^y\) quam in Galliâ duxérat, a fratre missam: utræque in eá fugá periérunt.\(^z\) Duæ filiæ\(^a\) harum, altéra occísa, altéra\(^b\) capta est. Caius Valerius Procíllus,
cum a custodibus in fugà trinis catēnīs a vincūs trahe·rētur, b
i in ipsum Cæsārem, hostes equitātūs a persequentem, incīdi
. Quæ c quidem res Cæsāri d non minōrem, quām ipsa victo
ria, e voluptātem attulit; quōd homīnem honestissīmum pro
vinciāe Galliāe, suum familiārem f et hospītem, erupturn e
manībus hostium, sibi g restītūtan vidēbat, neque ejus cal
amitāte a de tantā voluptāte et gratulātionē quīquām fort
ūna demīnu·ērat. Is, se præsente, h de se ter sorībus a con
sultum i dicēbat, utrum k ignī statim necātūr, l an in aliud
tempus reservātūr: sortium 2 beneficīo a se esse m incolū
mem. Item Marcus Mettius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hoc prōlio trans Rhenum nunciāto, Suevi, qui ad ri
pas Rheni venērant, domum n reverti cēpērunt: quos Ubii,
qui 3 proxīmi o Rhenum incōlunt, perterrītos inseccūti, mag
num ex his numerum occidērunt. Cæsar, una aestāte b duō
bus maxīmis bellīs confectīs, maturīus paulo, quām tempus
anni postulābat, in hiberna in Sequānos exercītum deduxit:
hibernis d Labiēnum prāapositus: ipse 4 in citeriōrem Galliām
ad conventus agentōs q prefectus est.

a § 129, R.  e § 126, R. III.  m 96, 2.
b § 140, Obs. 4.  h 110, 5.  n § 130, 4.
c 38, 2.  i § 47, 6, & 98, 2.  o § 136, Obs. 5. (ad.)
d § 123, R.  k § 124, 14.  p § 131, R. XLI.
e § 120, Obs. 1.  l § 140, 5.  q 112, 7.
BOOK II.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Confederacy of the Belgæ. Cæsar's war with them—Chap. 1-14. II. War with the Nervii—Chap. 15-28. III. War with the Aduatici—Chap. 29-33. IV. Expedition of Publius Crassus into Armórica—Chap. 34. V. Transactions subsequent to the reduction of the Belgæ—Chap. 35.

1. 1 Cúm esset Cæsar in citeriore Galliâ in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, 2 crebri ad eum rumores afferbantur, literisque item Labieni certior sicbat, omnes Belgas,quam tertiam esse Galliæ partem dixeramus, contra Populum Românum conjurare, b obsidesque inter se dare: b conjurandi has esse causas: primùm, quod vererentur, d ne, omni pacata Gallia, ad eos exercitus noster adducere turb: deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis solicitarentur, 5 partim qui, ut Germânos diutius in Galliâ versari noluerant, ita Populi Români exercitum hiemare atque invertereque in Galliâ molestè ferèbant; 6 partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studebant: 8 ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Galliâ a potentioribus atque his qui ad conducendo homines facultates habèbant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile 10 eam rem in imperio nostro consequi poterant.

2. Ís nuntiiis literisque commütus, Cæsar duas legiones in citeriore Galliâ novas conscripsit, et, 11 iníitâ aëstâte, in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret, 1 Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primùm pabuli copia esse incipèret, ad exercitum venit: 12 dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quæ apud eos gerantur, d 13 cognoscant, 1 seque de his rebus certiorum faciunt. 1

---

a § 99, Obs. 4.  b § 141, Obs. 8.  c § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.  d § 140, Obs. 6.  e § 140, Obs. 7.  f § 112, R. V.  g § 19, (hominibus.)  h § 111, R.  i § 141, Obs. 1, 3d.  j § 140, 1, 3d.  k § 142, 1, 3d.
Hi constanter omnes nunciavérént, manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum condúcì. Tum verò dubitandum non existimavít, quin ad eos proficiscerétur.° Re frumentariá provisá, castra movet, diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgárum pervénit.

3. Eò cùm de improviso celeríusque omnium opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliæ ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legátos, Iccium et Antebrogium, prímos civitátis, misérunt, qui dicérent, suáque omnia in fidem atque in potestátem Popúlì Romání permittere: neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse, neque contra Popúlum Románum omnino conjurasse: paratosque esse et obsídès dare, et imperáta facère, et oppídís recipère, et frumento ceterisque rebus juváre: reliquis omnès Belgas in armis esse: Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incólunt, sese cum his conjunxisse; tantumque esse eórum omnium furórem, ut ne Suessiones quidem, frátres consanguineosque suos, qui eódem jure et eisdem legíbus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsís habeant, deterrére potuérint, quin cum his consentíre.

4. Cùm ab his quaeréret, quæ civitátes, quantæque in armís essent, et quid in bello possent, sic reperiébat: plerōrosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germánis: Rhenumque antiquités transit, propter locí fertilitátem ibi consedisse, Gallosque, qui ea loca incolérent, expulisse; solosque esse, qui, patrum nostrórum memoria, omni Galliá vexátæ, Teutóanos Cimbrosque intra fines ingredi prohibuérint. Quá ex re fieri, ut eàrum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritátem, magnosque spiritus in re militari sumérent. De numero eórum omnia se habère explorátæ Remi dicebánt;

5. Cæsar, Remos cohortātus 5 liberaliterque oratione prosecūtus, omnem senātum h ad se convenire, principumque libēros obsidēs 1 ad se addūci jussit. Quæ k omnia ab his 1 diligenter 6 ad diem facta sunt. Ipse, Divitiacum Æduum 7 magnō opère cohortātus, docet, quanto opère rei publicae communisque salūtis intersit, 8 manus hostium distinēri, n ne 8 cum tantâ multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit. 9 Id fieri posse, si suas copias Ædii in fines Bellovacōrum intro-

19, (militēs.) 38.
3 126, Obs. 2.
90, 4.
§ 97, R.
§ 120, 1, 2d
duxerint, et eorum agros populāri cæpērunt. His mandātis, eum ab se dimittit. Postquām omnes Belgārum copias, in unum locum coactus, ad se veniē vidit, neque jam longē abesse ab his, quos misērat, exploratorībus, et ab Remis cognōvit, flumen Axōnum, quod est in extrēmis Remōrum finibus, exercētis transduērē maturāvit, atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrōrum ripis fluminis muniēbat, et post eum quae essent, tuta ab hostibus reddēbat, et, commeātus ab Remis reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculo ad eum portāri posset, efficiēbat. In eo flūmine pons erat. Ibi præsidium ponit, et in alterā parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legātum cum sex cohortībus reliquit: castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo, fossāque duodeviginti pedum, munire jubet.

6. Ab his castris oppīdum Remōrum, nomine Bibrax, abērat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinēre magnō impētu Belgæ oppugnāre cæpērunt. ΑΕGR: eo die sustentātūm est. Gallōrum cādem atque Belgārum oppugnatio est hāc. Ubi, circumiectā multitudīne homīnum totis mēnibus undique lapides in murum jaciēbat suumque subruunt. Quod tum faciliē fīebat. Nam, cūm tanta multitudō lapides ac tela conjicerent, in muro consīstendi potestas erat nullī. Cūm finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Icicius, Remus, summā nobilitāte et gratiā inter suos, qui tum oppido praērat, unus ex his qui legāti de pace ad Cæsarem venērant, nuncios ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sese diutius sustinēre non posse.

7. Eō de mediā nocte Cæsar, iisdem duēibus usus qui nuncii ab Icicio venērant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios, et
funditores Baleares, subsidio a oppidânis mittit: quorum adventu et Remis, b cum spe defensiónis, studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causâ spes potiundi d oppidi discissit. Itaque, paulisper apud oppidum morâti, e agróisque Remorum depopulâtis, omnibus vicis ædificiisque, quos adire poterant, incensis, ad castra Cæsáris omnibus copiis contendêrunt, et ab s millibus b passuum minus duobus castra posuérunt; quæ castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabantur, amplius millibus b passuum octo in latitudinem patêbant.

8. Cæsar primò, et propter multitudinem hostium, et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis, prælio supersedere statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus præcis, quid hostis virtùte posset, et quid nostri auderent, solicitationibus periclitébat. Ubi nostros non esse inferiôres intellexit, loco pro castris, ad aciem instruendam naturâ opportûno atque idoneo (quòd is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paulûlum ex planitie editus, tantum adversus in latitudinem patêbat, quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utráque parte latéris dejectus habêbat, et, frontem leúter fastigátus, paulatim ad planitiem redíbat), ab utrâque latère ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadríngentorûm; et ad extremas fossas castella constituit, ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnanteseus circumvenire possent. Hoc facto, duábus legionibus, quas proxímâ conscripsérat, in castris relietis, ut, si quâ opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruerant.

---

a § 114, R. & Obs. 1. b § 112, R. IV. c § 136, R. LII. d § 132, Obs. 5. e § 120, R. & 6, 3. f § 99, Obs. 6, & g § 135 Obs. 5, (in) h § 136, R. VIII. i § 106, R. VII. j § 106, R. LII. k § 128, Exc. l § 106, R. VII. m § 106, R. VII. n § 106, R. VII. o 17, 2. p 101, 1. q § 140, 1, 2d. r 109, 2.
9. 1 Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes 2 expectabant nostri autem, si ab illis initium transseundi fieret, ut impeditos 3 aggerederent, 4 parati in armis erant. Interm praelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. 5 Ubi neutri transseundi initium faciunt, 6 secundiore equitum praelio nostris, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes proinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contendebant, quod esse post nostra castra demonstrated est. Ibi vadis 1 repertis, partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, 5 castellum, cui 8 præerat Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque intersciendærent; 9 si minus potuissent, 8 agros Remorum popularentur, 1 qui magno nobis  k usui ad bellum gerendum erant, comoatique nostros prohibèrent.

10. Caesar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum, et levis armaturæ 1 Numidas, funditores  m sagittariosque, pontem transducit, atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. 4 Hostes 6 impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpóra reliquos, audacissimè transire conantes, multitudo telorum repulèrent; primos, qui transierant, equitatum circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando n oppido, et de flumine transseundo,  n spem se fessisse intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum iniquitatem progrèdi pugnandi causâ vidierunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficiere corpit, concilio convocat 1 constituerunt, optimum esse, domum suam quemque reverti, ut, 7 quorum in fines primum Romanîi exercitum introduxissent,  p ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, 9 et potius in suis, quàm in aliēnis finibus, certarent, 10 et domesticís copiis  rei frumentariae uterentur. 12
Ad eam sententiam, cum reliquis causis, hoc quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Aeduos finibus Bellova-
corum appropinquare cognovérant. His persuáderi, ut diutius morarentur, neque suis auxilium ferent, non potérat.

11. Eā re constitútā, secundá vigiliá magnó cum strepitu tumultu castris egressi, nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cùm sibi quisque primum itinériis locum petēret, et domum pervenire properāret, fecerunt, ut consimilis fugae prosectio viderétur. Hāc re statim, Cæsar, per speculatóres cognítā, insidias veritās, quod, qua de causa discedérent, nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Primá luce, confirmātā re ab exploratóribus, omnem equitātum, qui novissīmum agmen moraretur, præmísit. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cot-tam legātos præfécit. Titum Labiēnum legātum cum legionibus subsecuasti. Hi, novissimos adorti, et multa millia passum prosecūti, magnum multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt, cùm ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consistērent, fortiterque impētum nostrōrum militum sustinērent; prioresque (quod abesse a pericūlo viderentur, neque ullā necessitāte neque imperio continerentur), exaudito clamōre, perturbātis ordinibus, omnes in fugā sibi præsidium ponērunt. Ita sine ullo pericūlo, tantam eōrum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diei spatium: sub occasumque solis destiterunt, seques in castra, ut erat imperātum, recepérunt.

12. Postridie ejus diē Cæsar, priusquam se hostes exter-rōre ac fugā recipiērent, in fines Suessionum, qui proxīmi Remis erant, exercitum duxit, et, magnō itinère confecto, ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppug-

---

*a § 96, 2.*
*b § 126, R. III.*
*c § 140, 1, 3d.*
*d § 131, R. XL.*
*e § 136, Obs. 5.*
*f § 123, R.*
*§ 130, 4.*
*109.*
*§ 140, 5.*
*§ 141, Obs. 2, 4th.*
*§ 132, R. XLII.*
*§ 99, Exc. 1.*
*b § 126, R. III.*
*o § 140, Obs. 4.*
*p § 141, Obs. 7.*
*44, 3.*
*r § 140, 4.*
*67, 5, Note.*
*§ 136, Obs. 5.*
*3d.*
*§ 140, 5.*
*§ 141, Obs. 7.*
*4th.*
*§ 132, R. XLII.*
*§ 99, Exc. 1.*
nāre conātus, quōd 1 vacuum ab defensoribus esse audīebat, propter latitudinem fossae muriōque altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnāre non potuit. Castris munītīs, 2 vineae agēre, quaeque ad oppugnandum usui a erant, comparāre cæpit. Intērīm omnis ex fugā Suessiōnium multūtūdo in oppidum proxīmā nocte convēnit. Celerīter vineis b ad oppidum actis, 3 aggre jacto, 4 turribusque constitūtīs, magnitudine c opērum, quae neque vidērant antē Galli neque audīrānt, et celeritate Romanōrum permōti, legātos ad Ĉasārem de deditiōne mittunt, et, 5 petentībus Remis b ut conservarentur, d e āmpērānt.

13. Ĉæsar, obsidībus b acceptis, primis c civitātīs atque ipsis f Galbæ regis duōbus filiis, armisque b omnībus ex oppidō tradītis, in deditiōnem Suessiōnes accēpit, exercitumque in Bellovācos duxit. Quī g cūm se suāque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, b atque ab eo oppidō Ĉæsar cum exercitu circitēr millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes 7 majores natu, ex oppidō egressi, manus ad Ĉasārem tendēre, et voce significāre cæpērunt, sese in ejus fidem ac potestātem venire, i neque contra Popūlum Romānum armis contendēre. Item, cūm ad oppidum accessisset, b castāque ibi ponēret, puēri mulieresque ex muro 8 passis manibus, b suo more, c pacem ab Romanīs k petērunt.

14. Pro his Divitiācus (nam post discessum Belgārum, dimissis Ĉeduōrum copiis, b ad eum revertērat) 9 facit verba: Bellovācos 1 omni tempōre in 10 sīde atque amicitiā civitātīs Ĉeduāe fuisse: m impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicērent, Ĉ eduos, a Ĉasāre in servitūtem redactos, omnes indignātes contumeliasque perferre, i et ab Ĉeduīs defecisse, m et Popūlo Romāno bellum intulisse. m Qui o hujus consilii

---

a § 114, Obs. 4, (ei.)  132.
b 109, 2.  39, 6.
c § 129, R.  b § 140, Obs. 4. &
d § 140, 1, 3d.  74, 8.
o § 97, R. & 19.  96, 2.

k § 124, Obs. 2.
i § 145, R. LVIII.
m 98, 2.
b § 140, 6.
o 37, 1st. (eos.)
principes fuissent, quòd intelligérent quantum calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petère non solum Bellovácos, sed etiam pro his Æduos, ut suà clementià ac mansuetudine in eos utatür. Quod e si fecerit, Æduorum auctoritàtem apud omnes Belgas amplificatórum ; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidèrint, sustentàre consuèrint.

15. Cæsar, honòris Divitiaci atque Æduorum causâ, sese eos in fidem receptórum, et conservatórum, dixit: sed, quòd erat civitas magnâ inter Belgas auctorítate, atque homínem multitúdine præstábat, sexcentos obsídes poposcit. His tradítis, omnibusque armís ex oppído collátis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianórum pervénit, qui se suàque omnia sine morá dedidèrunt. Eórum fines Nervii attingébant: quorum de naturá moribusque Cæsarcum quereret, sic repercébat:

16. Cùm per eórum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniébat ex captívis, Sabim flumen ab castris suis non ampliús millia passuum décem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisset, adventunque ibi Romanórum expectáre, unà cum Atrebátibus et Veromanduis, fìnítimis suis (nam his utrisque persuasérint, uti eadem belli fortúnam expe- rirentur): expectári etiam ab his Aduatucórum copias, at-
que esse in itinere: 1 milières, quique a per ætatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, b in eum locum conjecisse, quò prop- ter paludes exercitu c aditus non esset.

17. His rebus cognitis, exploratores centurionesque pra- mittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. d Cùmque ex de- dictitiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complùres, Cæsarem secùti, una iter facerent; e quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cog- nitiùm est, 2 eòrum dièrum f consuetudine g itinèris h nostri exercitus perspectà, nocte ad Nervios pervenìrunt, atque ics h demonstràrunt, inter singulas i legiones impedimentorum magnùm numèrum intercedère, 3 neque esse quicquam ne- gotii, k cum prima legio in castra venisset, l reliqueque legiö- nes magnum spatium m abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoríri: a 4 quà pulsà, f impedimentisque direptis, f futùrum, ut reliqua contrà consistère non audérunt. o Adjuvabat p etiam eòrum consilium qui rem deferèbant, quòd Nervii antiquitùs, cùm equitatu q nihil r possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus s ei rei student, sed, quicquid t possunt, pedestrìbus ù valent copiis), quò faciliùs finitimòrum equitùm, si prædandi causà ad eos venisset, t impedirent, u teneris arboribus f 7 incìsis atque inflexís, 8 crebris in latitudinem ramìs t et rubìs sentìbusque interjectís effecerant, ut instar ù muri hæ sepès munimenta præbèrent; quò non modò w intrári, sed ne perspíci quidem posset. His rebus cùm iter agminis nostri impediriètur, non omittendum sibi consiliùm Nervii æstimavérunt.

18. 9 Loci natura erat hæc, quem x locum nostri castris de- legérant. Collis, ab summo æqualiter declaris, ad flumen Sabi- min, quod suprà nominavimus, vergèbat. Ab eo flumìne pari

---

a 37, 1st.
b § 141, Obs. 7.c § 112, R. II.d § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.e § 44, II. and 74, 3.f 109, 2.
g § 106, Obs. 2.h 63.i 26, 5.k § 106, R. VIII.l § 80, 3.m § 132, R. XLII.n § 144, R. LVII.o § 140, 1, 4th.p 51.q § 129, R.r § 116, Obs. 3.s 37, 8, Note. 2. & r.t § 140, 2.u § 140, 1.v § 136, Obs. 5. (ad)w § 134, Obs. 5.x 37, 6, Note. 1
acclivitāte collis nascebātur, adversus huic a et contrarius, passus b circīter ducentos 1 infīmā apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut non facilē introrsus perspīci posset. c Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto d sese continēbant: in aperto loco, 2 secundum flumen, paucā stationes equītum videbantur. Flumīnis erat altitūdo pedum circiter trium. e

19. Cæsar, equitātu præmisso, subsequebātur omnībus copiis: f sed ratio ordoque agmīnīs 3 alīter se habēbat, ac g Belgae ad Nervios detulērunt. Nam, quōd ad hostes appropinquābat, consuetudine suā Cæsar sex legiōnes 4 expeditas ducēbat: post eas totius exercitūs impedimenta collocārunt: inde duae legiōnes, quae proximē conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudēbant, præsidiōque h impedimentis erant. Equītes nostri, cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi, cum hostium equitātu præium commiserunt. Cūm se illī 5 idēntidem in silvas ad suos rēcipērent, 1 ac rursus ex silvā in nostros impētum facērent, 1 neque k nostri longiūs, quām 6 quem ad finem perrecta ac loca aperta pertinēbant, cedentes insēqui audērent: 1 interim legiōnes sex, quae primae m venērant, opēre dimenso, castra munīre cæpērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitūs ab his, qui in silvis abdīti latēbant, visa sunt (7 quod tempus inter eos committendi praelii convenerat), ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant, atque ipsi sese confirmāvērunt, subītō omnībus copiis f provolavērunt impetumque in nostros equītes fecērunt. His facilē pulsīs ac proturbātis, incredibilī celeritāte ad flumen decucurrērunt, ut pāne uno tempōrē et ad silvas, et in flūmine, et jam 8 in manībus nostris hostes viderentur. e Eādem autem celeritāte g adverso colle ad nostra castra, atque eos, n qui in opēre occupāti erant, contendērunt.

---

a § 111, R.  b § 132, R. XLII.  c § 140, 1, Ist, (īta.)  d § 90, 6.  e § 132, Obs. 3.  f § 132, Obs. 5, (cum)  g § 149, Obs. 6  h § 114, R.  i § 140, Obs. 4, &  j § 93, 1, (and not.)  k § 149, R. & Exp.  l 37, 2d, 5, Note. 1.  m 98, Obs. 10.
20. Cæsari a omnia uno tempore erant agenda: b 1 vexillum proponendum, b quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurri oportet: signum tuba dandum: b ab opere revocandi b milites: 2 qui paulo longius c aggeris petendi causa processerant, arcessendi: b acies instruenda, b milites cohortandi, b signum dandum: b quorum d rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas, et 3 successus et incursus hostium impediēbat. His difficultibus e duae res 4 erant subsidio, f scientia atque usus militum, quod, superioribus praeliis exercitati, quid fieri oportet, g non minus commodè ipsi sibi h præscribere, quam ab aliis doceri poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos 1 legatos Cæsar discendere, nisi munitis castris, vestuērat. Hi, propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium, s nihil jam Cæsaris imperium spectabant, sed 7 per se, quae 8 videbantur, administrabant.

21. Cæsar, necessariis rebus imperātis, ad cohortandos milites, 9 quam k in partem foris obtulit, decurrat, et ad legiōnem deciīnam devēnit. Milites non longiore oratioene 1 cohortātus, quām uti sua pristīna virtūtis memoriam retinērent, m neu n 10 perturbarentur m animo, hostiumque impētum fortūter sustinērent; m quod non longius hostes abērant, quām quō telum adjici posset, o praelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in altēra partem ēm cohortandi causa profectus, pugnantibus p occurrit. Tempōris tanta fuit 11 exiguitas, hostiumque tam parātus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, g sed etiam ad galeas induerdas 9 scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus deuērit. 5 Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devēnit, quāque prima signa conspexit, ad hæc constitit, ne, in quærendo suos, pugnandi tempus dimittēret. 5

---

a § 126, Obs 3. b § 140, 5. c § 93, 1, (and not.) b 108, 2. d 63. 4 § 140, 5. c § 120, Obs. 5. e 26, 5. r § 112, R. IV. & 19 k 37, 2d, 5. Note. 1. d 38. q 112, 7. e § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) f § 129, R. e § 114, Obs. 4. nostris. g § 140, 1, 3d. f § 140, 1, 2d.
22. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natura, dejectusque collis, et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis locis legiones, aliae alia in parte, hostibus resistèrent, sepibusque densissimis, ut antè demonstravimus, interjectis prospectus impediretur: neque certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque, in tantâ rerum iniquitâtê, fortunâ quâque eventus vari vari sequebantur.

23. Legiônès nonæ, et decimæ mîlitès, ut in sinistra parte acie constitérant, pilis emissis, cursu ac lassitudine examitatos, vulneribusque confectos, Atrebâtes (nam his ea pars obvenérat), celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen culpârunt; et, transire conantès insecuti gladiis, vulneribusque confectos, Atrebates (nam his ea pars obvenérat), celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen culpârunt. Item alia in parte diversæ dux legiones, unde cis et octava, profligatis Veromanduis, quibussem erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proelia bantur. At tum, totis fere a fronte, et ab sinistra parte, nudâs castris, cûm in dextro cornu legio duodecima, et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii certissimò agmine, duce Boduognâto, qui summam imperii tenèbat, ad eum locum contendérunt: quorum pars aperto latère legiones circumvenie, pars summum castrorùm locum petère, cæpit.

24. Eodem tempore equîtes nostri, levisque armatûræ pedites, qui cum iis unà fuérant, quos primo hostium impêtu pulsos dixéram, cûm se in castra recipérent, d adver-
sis hostibus occurrēbant, ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petēbant: et 1 calōnes, qui ab 2 decumānā portā, ac summo jugo collis, nostros a victōres flumen transisse b conspexērunt, prēendantī causā egressi, cūm respexitīs et hostes in nostros castris 3 versāri c vidīssent, 4 præcipītes d fugā sese mandābant. Simul eōrum, qui cūm impedimentis veniēbant, clamor fremitusque oriēbatur, aliīque aliām e in partem perterriti ferebant. f Quibus g omnibus rebus permōtī equītes Trevīri, quorum inter Gallos virtūtis opinio est singularīs, qui auxillii causā ab civitāte missi ad Cæsārem venērunt, cūm multitudīne b hostium castra a nostra complērī, c legiōnes a premī c et pene circumventas tenērī, calōnes, a equītes, fundītōres, Numīdas, 5 diversōs dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugēre vidīssent, i desperātīs nostros rebus, domum contendērunt: Romānos a pulsos b superatosque, castris k impedimentisque eōrum hostes potītos, b civitāti renunciāvērunt.

25. Cæsar, ab decimāe legiōnis cohortatōne ad dextrum cornu prefectus, ubi suos 6 urgērī, c signīisque in unum locum collātīs duodecimāe legiōnis confertos milītes a sibi m ipsos 1 ad pugnam esse impedimento; m quartāe cohortis omnibus centurionibus occīsis, signiferōque interfecto, signo amissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus fērè centurionibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsis, in his 7 primopīlo, Publio Sextio Bacūlo, n fortissīmo viro, a multis gravibusque vulneribus 8 confecto, ut jam se sustinēre non posset; o reliquis a esse tardīōres, et nonnullos ab novissimis desertos p prēlio q excedēre ac tela vitāre; hostes a neque 9 a fronte ex inferiōre loco 10 subeuntes intermittēre, et ab utrōque latēre instāre; et rem a esse in angusto vidīt, neque ullum esse subsidium, quod submitti posset; s seuto ab novissimis uni militī r de-
tracto (quod ipse eò sine scuto venèrat), in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominàtim appellàtis, reliquos cohortàtus mìlitès, signa inferre et manipùlos laxàre jussit, quò faciliùs gladiùs uti possent. 2 Cujus adventu spe illàtù militiaibus, ac redintegràto anìmo, cúm pro se quìisque, in conspectu imperatòris, et jam in extrèmis suis rebus, opèram navàre cupèrent, paulùm hostium impètus tardàtus est.

26. Càesar cúm septìmam legìönum, quae juxta constìrat, item urgeri ab hoste vidìset, tribùnos militùm monuit, ut paulàtim sèse legiones conjungèrent, et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cúm aliùs alii subsidìum ferrent, neque timèrent neversi ab hoste circumvenëntur, audaciùs resistère ac fortiùs pugnàre cèpèrent.

Intèrim militès legìönum duàrùm, quae in novìsimo agmine pròprio fuerant, prosiò nunciato, cursù inicitato, in summo collo ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Et Titùs Labiènus, castris hostium potitus, et ex locò superìore, quae res in nostris castris gerèrentur, conspicàtus, deciìmam legìönum subsidìo nostris misìt. Qui, cúm ex equìtum et calònùm fugà, quo in locò res esset, quantòque in perìculo et castra, et legìönes, et imperàtor versoìt, cognovìssent nihil ad celeritàtém sibi reliqui fecérunt.

27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent, scutiis innixi, prèlium redintegràrent; tum calônes, pertérritos hostes conspicàti, etiam inermès armàtìs ocurrèrent; equìtes vero, ut turpitudinem fugàe virtùte delèrent, omnìbus in locìs pugnàe se legionariïs militìibus præferrent. At hostes, etiam in extrêmà spe salútis, tantàm virtùtem præstit-
erunt, ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insistèrent, atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent: his dejectis, et coacervatis cadaveribus, 1 qui superessent, 2 ut ex tumulo, tela in nostros conjecerent, et pila intercepta remittèrent: 3 ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines judicari debéret, 4 proximi jacentibus insisterent, atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent: his dejectis, et coacervatis cadaveribus, 5 qui superessent, 6 ut ex tumulo, tela in nostros conjicerent, 7 et pilae interceptae remitterent: 8 ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse 9 transire latissimum flumen, 9 ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: 8 quæ facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

28. Hoc prælio facto, 10 et 11 prope ad internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto, 11 maiores natu, quos unà cum puérís mulieribusque in 6 astuaria ac paludes collectos 1 dixeramus, hac pugnâ nunciátâ, 12 cum victoribus 6 nihil 1 k impeditum, 1 victis nihil 1 k tutum 1 arbitrarentur, omnia, qui supererant, consensu legatos ad Cæsarem misérent seque ei dediderunt; et, in commemorandâ 12 civitatis calamitâte, ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentes, qui arma ferre possent, 13 sese redactos esse 14 dixérunt. 15 Quos Cæsar, ut in miséros ac supplices usus 16 misericordiâ videretur, 17 diligentissímé conservavit, suisque fuimus etque oppidibus uti jussit, et finitimos 18 imperavit, ut ab injuriâ et maleficio se suosque prohiberent. 19

29. Aduatúci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio 20 Nervis venirent, hac pugnâ 21 nunciáta, ex itinere domum revertérunt; cunctis oppidibus castellisque desertis, sua omnia in unum oppidum, egregiè naturâ munitionem, contulérunt. Quod 22 cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus 23 altissimæ rupes despectusque habéret, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus, in latitudinem 9 non amplius ducentorūm pedum, relinquebátur: quem locum duplici altissimo muro muniérent; tum magni ponderis 24 saxa et praecutæs trabes

---

1, 2, 140, 1, 1st. 3, 106, R. VII. 4, 140, 1, 2d. 5, 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d. 6, 112, 8. 7, 136, R. LII. 8, 109, 2. 9, 145, Obs. 7. 10, 145, Obs. 3. 11, 145, R. LIII. (esse) 12, 140, 1, 3d. 13, 103, Obs. 2. 14, 114, R. 15, 38, 1, (oppidum.)
in muro collocārunt. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prog
nāti; qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam fa-
cerent, 1 iis impedimentis, a quae secum agère ac portāre non
poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositīs custodiās ex suis
ac præsidio sex milliā homīnum reliquērunt. Hi, post eō-
rum obītum, multis annos b a finituīmis exagitāti, 2 cūm aliās
bellum inferrent, aliās illātum defendērent, consensu eōrum
omnium pace factā, hunc sibi a domicilio locum delegē-
runt.

30. Ac primo adventu c exercītūs nostri crebras ex oppīdo
excursiōnes faciēbant, parvulīisque prēliis d cum nostris con-
tendēbant: postea, vallo 3 pedum e duōdēcim, in circūtu
quindēcim milliūm, e crebrisque castellīs d circūmμūniti, op-
pīdo 4 sese continēbant. Ubi, 4 vineis actīs, g aggēre exstructo,
turriam b procul constitui vidērunt, primūm irrīdēre 1 ex muro,
ate increpītāre 1 vocībus, d 5 quō tanta machinatio ab k tanto
spatio instituerēt 1 ? quibusnam manībus, 4 aut quibus virī-
bus, prāsentim homīnes tantūlāe statūrāe e (nam plerunque
hominībus Gallis, a 6 prā magnitudīne corpōrum suōrum, bre-
vītas nostra contentūi est), tantī onēris e turriam b in munus
sese collocāre confidērent? 1

31. Ubi vero 7 movēri, et appropinquāre mānībus m vidē-
runt, novā atque inusitātā speciē d commōtī, legātōs ad Car-
sēren de pace misērunt, qui, 8 ad hunc modum locūtī: “Non
se existimāre” Romānos sine ope divīnā bellum gerēre, n qui
9 tantā altitudīnis e machinatiōnes tantā celeritātē promoti-
vēre, 10 et ex propinquitāte pugnāre, possent: se o suāque
omni eōrum potestāti permittēre,” dixērunt. 11 “Unum
petēre a ac deprecāri: si fortē, pro suā clementiā ac mansue-
tudīne, quam ipsi ab aliīs audirent,” statuissent, Aduatūcos

---

a § 114, R.  
1 § 136, Obs. 5.  
1 § 140, 5.

b § 131, R. XLI.  
9 109, 2.  
3 § 112, R. IV.

c § 131, R. XL.  
3 § 15, 3.  
8 96, 2.

d § 129, R.  
i § 144, Obs. 6.  
e 31.

§ 106, R. VII.  
k § 132, Obs. 5.  
7 § 141, Obs. 7.
esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: a sibi omnes ferè finitimos b esse inimicos, c ac suæ virtúti d invidère; a quibus se defendère, traditis armis, e non possent. f Sibi d præstáre, si in eum casum deducerentur, g quamvis fortùnam a Popúlo Románo pati, quàm ab his ē per cruciátum interfici, inter quos dominári consuéssent."r

32. Ad hæc Caesar respondit: "Se magis consuetudine suâ, quàm merito eorum, civitatem conservaturum, k si 2 priús, quàm murum aries attigisset, l se dedisset: l sed deditiónis nullam esse conditionem, b nisi armis traditis: se b id, quod in Nerviis fecisset, m factúrum, k finitimísque imperatúrum, k ne quam dedititiis n Populi Románi injuriam inírerent."a Re nunciátà ad suos, "quæ imperarentur, facère 90 dixérunt. Armorum magna multitúdo e de muro in fossam, quæ erat ante oppidum, jactá, sic ut propè summam 4 muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adæquarent; et tamen circiter parte e tertiá, ut postea perspectum est, celatá atque in oppido retentá, portís patefactis, eo die pace p sunt usi.

33. 5 Sub vespérum Cæsar portas claudi q militésque ex oppído exíre t jussit, ne quam noctu oppidiâni ab militibus injuriam accipère. Illi, antè iníto, ut intellectum est, consilio, 6 quod, deditióné factá, nostros præsidia deductúros, k aut denique indígentiús servatúros, k credidérant, partim cum his, quæ retinuérant et celavérand, armis, partim scutiès ex cortice factis aut viníniús intextis, quæ subito (ut tempóris exiguítas postulabat), pellibus s induxérant, 6 tertiá vigiliá, t quà minímè arduus ad nostras munitíones ascensus videbátur, omníbus copiis u repèntè ex oppído eruptionem fecérunt. Celerité, ut antè Cæsar imperárat, 7ignibus 1

\[\text{\textsuperscript{a}}\ § 140, 1, 3d. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{b}}\ § 145, R. LVIII. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{c}}\ § 103, Obs. 2. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{d}}\ § 112, R. IV. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{e}}\ § 109, 2. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{f}}\ § 141, Obs. 7. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{g}}\ § 140, 2. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{h}}\ § 126, Obs. 2. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{i}}\ § 129, R. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{j}}\ § 100, 2. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{k}}\ § 80, 1, & 2. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{l}}\ § 140, 6. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{m}}\ § 123, R. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{n}}\ § 94, 3. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{p}}\ § 121, R. XXVI \quad \text{\textsuperscript{q}}\ § 120, 1, 2d, & \quad \text{\textsuperscript{r}}\ § 140, 1, 2d, \quad \text{\textsuperscript{s}}\ § 125, R. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{t}}\ § 131, R. XL. \quad \text{\textsuperscript{u}}\ § 136, Obs. 5, cum.\]
significatio facta, ex proximum castellis eorum concursum est, pugnantumque a ab hostibus b ita acriter, ut b a viris fortibus, in extremo spes salutis, inequo loco, contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacèrent, c pugnāri debuit, d cūm in una virtūte omnis spes salutis consistēret. e Occisis e ad hominum millibus f quatuor, reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus dies, refractis portis, f cūm jam defendēret g nemo, atque intronisēs miliēbus nostris, h sectionem ejus oppidi universam Cæsar vendidit. Ab his, qui emērant, h cāpitum numerōs ad eum relātus est millium quinquaginta trium.

34. Eōdem tempore i a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione unā misērat ad Venētos, Unēlos, Osismios, Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedōnes, quae sunt mariimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, j certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque Populi Romāni esse redactas. k

35. His rebus l gestis, omni Galliā m pacatā, tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlāta est, uti ab his nationibus, quae trans Rhenum incolērent, mitterentur n legāti ad Cæsarem, quae sē obsidēs datūras, o imperāta factūrās, pollicerentur: p quas n legationes Cæsar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, initā proximā aestāte o ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnūtes, Andes, Turonesque, quae p civitates propinquae his locis q crant, ubi bellum gessērat, legionibus f in hiberna deductis, in Italian profectus est, ob easque res, ex literis Cæsāris, r dies t quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli. s
BOOK III.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. War with the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni—Chap. 1-6
II. War with the Veneti—Chap. 7-16. III. War with the Unelli—Chap. 17-19. IV. Expedition of Crassus into Aquitania—Chap. 20-27. V. Expedition of Caesar against the Morini and Menapii—Chap. 28-29.


2. Cùm dies hibernôrum complûres transissent, frumentumque eò comportâri jussisset, subitò per exploratóres certior factus est, ex ca parte vici, quam Gallis concessèrat, omnes noctu discussisse, montesque, qui impendèrent, a

---

a 17, 2. b § 145, R. LVIII. c 94, 3. d 63. e § 140, 1, 3d. f 109, 2. g 32, 3, (constituit.) h § 103, R. i § 38, 2. k § 123, R. l 27, 10, Obs. m 93, 2.
maximá multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri.\(^a\) Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subitò Galli belli renovandi\(^b\) legionisque opprimendæ\(^c\) consilium caperent:\(^d\) primum, quòd legiònum,\(^e\) neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duabus, et compluribus\(^d\) singillàtim, qui commeâtûs petendi causà missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem desperiabant: tum etiam, quòd, propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem\(^3\) decurrerent,\(^e\) et tela conjicerent,\(^e\) ne primum quidem posse impetum sustinerë\(^f\) existimabant.\(^5\) Accedēbat, quòd suos ab se liberos\(^g\) abstractos\(^h\) obsidium nomine dolēbant: et Românos\(^g\) non solum itinèrum causa, sed etiam perpetuæ possessionis, culmina Alpium occupāre conāri, et ea loca finitīmæ provinciæ adjungēre,\(^o\) sibi\(^i\) persuadebant.

3. His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cùm neque opus hibernorum, munitionesque plenē essent perfectæ,\(^7\) neque de frumento reliquōque commeātû satis esset provīsum,\(^b\) quòd, de ditiōne factâ, obsidibusque acceptis,\(^8\) nihil de bello timendum existimāverat, consilio celeriter convocāto, sententias exquirĕre cæpit. Quo\(^1\) in consilio, cùm tantum repentīni periculi præter opinionem accidisset, ac jam omnia serē superiòra loca multitudine\(^m\) armatorum complēta conspicerentur,\(^9\) neque subsidio\(^o\) veniri, neque commeātus supportāri interclāsīs itinerībus\(^p\) possent, prope jam desperātā salūte,\(^p\) nonnullē hujusmōdi sententiae dicebantur, ut, impedimentis\(^p\) relictis, eruptione factâ, iisdem itineribus,\(^9\) quibus\(^q\) eò pervenissent, ad salutem contendērent.\(^a\) Majōri tamen partī placuit, hoc\(^p\) reservāto ad extrēmum\(^s\) consilio, interīm rei eventum experiri et\(^t\) castra defendēre.

---

\(^a\) 96, 2.  
\(^b\) 112, 5.  
\(^c\) § 140, 1, 4th.  
\(^d\) 19, (milittibus.)  
\(^e\) § 140, Obs. 3, &  
\(^f\) § 45, II. 1.  
\(^g\) § 145, R. LVIII.  
\(^h\) 98, 2.  
\(^i\) § 126, R. III.  
\(^k\) 65.  
\(^l\) 38.  
\(^m\) § 126, R. V.  
\(^n\) § 140, 1, 1st.  
\(^o\) § 136, Obs. 5. cum  
\(^p\) 109, 2.  
\(^q\) § 129, R.  
\(^r\) § 113, R  
\(^s\) 19, (casum.)  
\(^t\) § 149, R.
4. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut his rebus, quas constituissent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus datur, hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrère, lapides gessaque in vallum conjicère: nostri primo intégris viribus fortiter repugnâre, neque ulla frustra telum ex loco superiöre mittère: ut queque pars castrorum nuda defensoribus premi videbâtur, eò occurrère, et auxilium ferre: sed hóc superâri, quòd diuturnitâte pugnâ hostes defessi, alii intégris viribus succedebant: quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fiéri nihil poterat; ac non modò defesso ex pugnâ excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem ejus loci, ubi constitérat, relinquendi, ac sui recipiendi, facultas dabatur.

5. Cùm jam amplius horis sex continentur, ac non solûm vires, sed etiam tela, nostris deficiebant, atque hostes acrius instârent, languidioribusque nostri vallum scindere, et fossas complere, cæpissent, resque esset jam ad extrêmum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio quem Nervico prœlio compluribus consectum vulneribus dixímus, et item Caius Volusenus, iribusinus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salûtis docent, si eruptione factâ, extrêmum auxilium experientur. Itaque, convocâtis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiœres facit, paulisper intermitterent prœlium, ac tantummodo tela missa excepèrent, seque ex labore reficèrent; post, dato signo, ex castris erumpèrent, atque omnem spem salûtis in virtute ponèrent.

6. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac, subito omnibus portis eruptione factâ, neque cognoscendi, quid fiéret, neque sui
colligendi, hostibus a facultatatem relinquent. Ita commutata fortuna, eos, qui in spem potiusquam castrorum venient, undique circumventus interficiunt, et, ex hominum millibus amplius triginta, quem numquam barbarorum ad castra venisse constat, plus tertiâ parte interfecit, reliquos perterritos in fugam conjiciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic, omnibus hostium copiis, armaque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo praetorio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nollet, et alio sese in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, alius occurrisset rebus vidisset, maximum frumenti commetatusque inopiam permotus, postero die omnibus ejus vici adiciovis incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit; ac, nullo hoste prohibente, aut iter demorante, incoluseum legiōnem in Nantuates, ininde in Allobroges, perduxit, ibique hiemavit.


8. Hujus est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae regionum earum; quod et naves habent Ve-
neti plurímas, quibus in Britanniam navigáre consuérunt, et scientiá atque usu nautícarum rerum reliquos antecé-dunt, et, in magno impútu maris atque aperto, paucis portúbus interjectís, quos tenent ipsí, omnes férè, qui eo mari uti consuérunt, habent vectigáles. Ab íis fit initium retinendi Silii atque Velanií, quàd per eos suos se obsídes, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperátió pos existimábant. Horum auctóritáte finitiími adducti (ut sunt Gallórum subíta et repentina consilia), éadem de causá Trebíum Terrásidiumque retínt, et, céleriter missis legátis per suos principes inter se conjúránt, nihil nisi commúni consilio actúros, eodemque omnís fortúnæ exitúm esse latúros; reliquasque civitátes solícitánt, ut in eā libertáte, quam a majoribus acceptánt, permanére, quàm Romanórum servítútem perferre, mallent. Omni orá marítima céleriter ad suam sententíam perúctá, commúnem legationem ad Públium Cras-sum mittunt, "si velit suos recipére, obsídés sibi remittat."

9. Quibus de rebus Cæsar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse abérat longíus, naves interírum longas àdificári in flu-mine Ligéri, quod influit in Oceánum, remíges ex Provin-ciá instituí, nautas gubernatoresque comparári jubet. His rebus céleriter administrátis, ipse, cùm primúm peranní tempús potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venéti, reliquáque item civitátes, cognóto Cæsáris adventu, simul quod, quantum in se@ facínnus admíssent, intelligébant (legátos, quod nomen apud omnes natiónes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincüla conjectos), pro magnitudine pericúli bellum paráre, et máximè ea, quæ ad usum navíum pertínent, providére instituunt; hoc majóre spe, quod multíum naturá locí considébant. Pedestria


d @ § 128, R.  
⁢ e 109, 2.  
⁢ i § 103, Obs. 2

b § 116, Obs. 4.  
⁢ h § 149, Obs. 1.  
⁢ j § 140, 5.

c 32, 3.  
⁢ i § 140, 1, 3d, &  
⁢ k 30, 2.

d 112, 5.  
⁢ l 90, 4.  
 
⁢ e 37, 2d, 4, &  
⁢ m § 28, Foot note, ¶

⁢ f 100, 2.  
⁢ n § 140, 1.  
⁢ p § 121, Obs. 2.

1. Pedestria
esse itinera concisa a aestuariis, 1 navigationem d impeditam a propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portuum sciébant: 2 neque b nostros exercitus d propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morári posse, confidébant: ac jam, ut omnia contra 3 opiniónum accidérent, c tamen se 4 plurínum navibus posse: e Romános d neque ullam facultatem habère e navium, neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, f vada, portus, insulas novisse: g ac longè aliam esse i navigationem in concluso mari, atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo Océano, perspiciebant. His initis consiliis, oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Cæsarem primum bellum gesturum k constabat, quàm 1 plurímas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osimios, Lexovios, Nannêtes, Ambiliatos, Morinos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, accessunt.

10. 5 Erant hæ difficultatès belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus; sed multa m Cæsarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: 5 injuriae n retentorum o equitum Romanorum; 7 rebellio facta post deditiônem; defectio n datis obsidibus; tot civitatum conjuratio; n in primis, 8 ne, hac parte neglecta, reliquœ nationes 9 idem p sibi licère arbitrarentur. Itaque cùm intelligéret, omnes fere Gallos d 10 novis rebus q studère, i et, ad bellum mobiliterceleriterque excitári, omnes autem homines 11 natura libertati q studère, et 12 conditionem servitútes odisse; priusquam plures civitátes conspirárent, f partiendum d sibi q ac latius distribuendum exercitúm putávit.

11. Itaque Titum Labiênnum legátum in Treviros, qui proxímí Rheño flumíni sunt, cum equitátu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquisque Belgas adeat, atque in officio continet;

---

a 98, 2.  b § 93, 1 (and—not.)  c § 140, 3.  d § 145, R. LVIII.  e 96, 2.  f § 140, 5, & § 79. 8.  g § 84, 3.  h § 97, R.  i 96, Exc. 1. 9.  k 100, 2.  l § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.  m 19, (negotia.)  n § 113, Obs. 3. facère  o § 146, Obs. 2.  p § 140, 4.  q § 112, R. V.  r § 147, R. & 113. 5.
Germanosque, qui a Belgis arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire contenter, prohibeat. Publimum Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim, et magnō numero equitātūs, in Aquitaniam proficiiscii jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur, ac tantae nationes conjungantur. Quintum Titurium Sabīnum legātum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolītas, Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinendum curet. Decimum Brutum adolescentem classi, Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santōnis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jussērat, praeficit, et, cūm primum possit, in Venētos proficiiscii jubet. Ipsē eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

12. Erant ejusmōdī fere situs oppidōrum, ut, posīta in extremīs lingūlis promontoriisque, neque pedībus adītum habērent, cūm ex alto se āestus incitavisset, quod bis accidit semper horārum víginti quatuor spatio, neque navībus, quōd, rursus minuente āestu, naves in vadis afflictarent. Ita utrāque re oppidōrum oppugnatio impediebātur; ac, si quando magnitudine opēris fortē superātī, extra si mari aggère ac molibus, atque his ferme oppidi mānibus adæquātus, suis fortūnis desparēre cēpērant, magno numero navium apulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habēbant, sua deportābant omnia, seqve in proxīma oppida recipiēbant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitātibus loci defendēbant. Hac eo faciliūs magnam partem āestātis faciēbant, quōd nostrae naves tempestātibus detinebant; summāque erat vasto atque aperto mari, magnis āestibus, rarīs ac propīe nullīs portūbus, difficulas navigandi.

13. Namque ipsōrum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant. Carinās aliquanto planiōres, quàm nos-
trārum navium, quo faciliūs vada ac decessum āestus\textsuperscript{a} excipiere possent:\textsuperscript{a} proræ admōdumē erectē, atque item puppes, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodātē: naves totē factē ex robōrē,\textsuperscript{b} ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendām:\textsuperscript{c} transtra\textsuperscript{d} pedalibus in latitudinem trambrā clavis ferreis,\textsuperscript{e} digiti pollicis crassitudine: anchōrā, pro funībus, ferreis catēnis revinctā:\textsuperscript{f} pelles pro velis, alutāque tenuīter confectā, sive\textsuperscript{g} propter lini inopiam atque ejus usūs inscientiam, sive eo,\textsuperscript{h} quod est magis verismile, quōd tantās tempestātes\textsuperscript{i} Oceāni tantōsque impētus ventōrum sustinēri,\textsuperscript{j} ac tantā onerā\textsuperscript{k} navium\textsuperscript{l} regi\textsuperscript{m} velis non satis commōdē, arbitrabantur.\textsuperscript{n}

Cum his navibus nostrāe classi\textsuperscript{1} ejusmōdi congressus erat, ut unā celeritātē\textsuperscript{k} et pulsu remōrūm præstāret,\textsuperscript{n} relīqua, pro loci naturā, pro vi tempestātum, illis\textsuperscript{l} essent aptīrā et accommodatiōra: neque enim his\textsuperscript{m} nostrāe rostro\textsuperscript{n} nocēre potērant; tanta in eis erat firmītūdo: neque propter altitudinem faciliē telum adi-ciebātur; et eādem de causā minūs commōdē\textsuperscript{o} continebantur. Accedēbat, ut, cūm\textsuperscript{11} saevīre ventus cēpis-set et se vento dedissent, et\textsuperscript{p} tempestātem ferrent faciliūs, et\textsuperscript{p} in vadis consistērent\textsuperscript{p} tutiūs, et, ab āestu derelictā, nihil\textsuperscript{q} saxa et cautes timērent: quārum rerum omnium nostri na-vibus\textsuperscript{r} casus erant extimēsendi.

14. Complurībus expugnātīs oppīdis, Cæsar, ubi intellexit, frustra tantum labōrem\textsuperscript{s} sumi, neque hostium fugam\textsuperscript{s} captīs oppīdis reprīmi,\textsuperscript{t} neque his nocēri posse,\textsuperscript{s} statuit expec-tandum classem. Quā ubi convēnit, ac prīmūm ab hostībus visa est, circiter ducentā et viginti naves eōrum\textsuperscript{14} paratis-simāe, atque omni genere\textsuperscript{n} armōrum ornatisūsīmāe, prosecta ex portu, nostrīs\textsuperscript{t} adversē constitērunt: neque satis

---

\textsuperscript{a} § 140, 1.  \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{n} § 129, R.  
\textsuperscript{b} § 123, Obs. 2.  \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{o} § 124, 1.  
\textsuperscript{c} 112, 7.  \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{p} § 140, 1, 4th.  
\textsuperscript{d} § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1.  \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{q} § 122, Obs. 6.  
\textsuperscript{e} 124, 3.  \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{r} § 126, Obs. 3.  
\textsuperscript{f} § 129, R.  \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{s} § 113, R. & Obs. 1.
1 'Bruto, qui classi præerat, vel tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributa, constabat, quid agerent, aut quam rationem pugnae insisterebat. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus superabat; ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela adjici possent, et missa ab Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magno usu res praeparata ad nostris, falces præacutae, insertae affixeque longiis, non absimili muralium falcium. His cum funes, qui antennas ad malos destinabant, comprehensi adducti erant, navigio remis incitato prærumpebantur. Quibus abscissis, antennae necessario concidebant, ut, cùm omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis armamentisque consisterebat, his ereptis, omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. Reliqua erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, quod in prospectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latère posset: omnes enim colles ac loca superiöra, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

15. Dejectis, ut diximus, antennis, cum singulae binæ ac ternae naves circumstetérant, milites summâ vi transcendère in hostium naves contendebant. Quod postquam barbari sèri animadvertebant, expugnati compluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum reperirétur auxilium, fugà salûtem petère contendebant: ac, jam conversis in eam partem navibus, qui ventus ferébat, tanta subitó malacia ac tranquilitas extitit, ut se ex loco movère non possent. Quæ quidem res ad negotium consiciendum maxime fuit opportuna: nam singulae nostri consectati expugnavérunt, ut perpaucæ
ex omni numero, noctis interventu, ad terram pervenerint, cum a ab hora fere quartâ usque ad solis occasum pagnarêtur.

16. Quo b prælio bellum Venetorum totiusque oræ marmæ confectum est. Nam, cum omnis juventus, omnes etiam graviöris ætatis, c in quibus aliquid consilii d aut dignitatis fuit, eò convenérandat; tum, navium quod e ubique fuérat, unum in locum coëgérant: quibus f amissis, reliqui, neque quò se recipérrent neque quemadmodum oppida defendérent, g habébant. Itaqué se suáque omnia Cæsâri dediderunt. In quos eo graviüs Cæsar vindicandum h statuit, quo diligentiüs in reliquum tempus a barbaris jus legatôrum conservaret. Itaqué, omni senátu f necató, reliquos 3sub coronâ vendidit.

17. Dum hac in Venetis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis, quas a Cæsâre accepérat, in fines Unélorum pervénit. His præérat Viridovix, ac summam imperii tenébat eârum omnium cívitâtum, quæ defeccérant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coëgérat. Atque his paucis diébus k Aulerci Eburovices, Lexovïque, senátu f suo interfecto, quòd auctóres belli esse nolébant, portas clausérunt sequre cum Viridovice conjunxérunt; magnâque præterea multitudo undique ex Galliâ lperdítorüm hominum latronumque convenérandat, quos spes prædandi, studiumque bellandi, ab agricultûrá et quotidiâno labóre revocábat. Sabinus idoneo l omnibus rebus loco m castris sese tenébat, cûm Viridovix contra eum duorum millium spatio consedisset, quotidiœque productis copiis f pugnandi potestatéin faceret; a ut jam non solùm hostibus n in contentionem Sabinus veníret, o sed etiam nostrórum militum vocibus 6 nonnullít carperetur: tantamque opinionem timóris præbuit, ut jam ad vallum castrórum hostes accedère audérent. p Id eâ de causâ faciébat,

a § 140, Obs. 3. f 109, 2. i 16.
b 33, 9, & § 129, R. g § 140, 5 n § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)
c § 106, R. VII. h 113, 5. o § 110, Obs. 1, R
d § 106, R. VIII. i § 140, 1. o § 140, 1, 2d.
o § 106, Obs. 10. k § 131, R. XLI. p § 140, 1, 1st.
quōd cum tantā multitudīne hostium, prāsertim 1eo absente, qui summam imperii tenēret, b nisi æquō loco, aut opportunitāte alīquā datā, legāto c dimicandum non existimābat.

18. 2 Hāc confirmātā opinione timōris, idoneum quendam homīnem et callīdum delēgit, Gallum, ex his, quos auxiliī causā secum habēbat. Huic d magnīs præmiis poll LIC. III. CAP. XIX. 121 107x471 icatioibusque persuādet, uti ad hostes transeat; c et, quid fiēri velit, f edōcet. Qui, g ubi pro perfūgā ad eos venit, timōrem Romanōrum 3 propōnit: "quibus angustiis h ipse Cæsar a Venētis premātur," f docet: "neque longiūs abesse, quin proxīmā nocte Sabinus clam ex castrīs exercītum edūcat, i et ad Cōsārem auxiliī ferendi causā proficiscātur." i Quod k ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnes, occasiōnem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse, l ad castra ire oportère. Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctatio, m perfūgā confirmatio, inopia cibariōrum, cui rei n parum diligenter ab iis erat provisum, spes Venetīci belli, et quōd ferē libenter homīnes id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus h adducti, non priūs Viridovlēcem reliquoque ducēs ex concilio dimittunt, quām ab his sit o concessum, arma uti capiant p et ad castra contendant. Quā re concessā, lāti, ut explorātā victoriā, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, 7 quibus q fossas Romanōrum compleant, s ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum editus, et paulātīm ab imo acclīvis circīter passus r mille. Huc magno cursu contende- runt, ut s quām minimum spatii s ad se colligendo armandosque Romānīs darētur, 9 examinatīque pervenērunt. Sabinus, suos hortātus, cupientībus signum dat. Impēditīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onēra, subītō duābus portis erup-

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{a} & \quad 110. \\
\text{b} & \quad § 141, Obs. 8. \\
\text{c} & \quad § 147, R. & 113. \\
\text{d} & \quad § 123, R. & 63. \\
\text{e} & \quad § 140, 1, 3d. \\
\text{f} & \quad § 140, 5. \\
\text{r} & \quad 39, 5. \\
\text{s} & \quad § 113, R. \\
\text{i} & \quad § 129, R. \\
\text{k} & \quad § 140, 3. \\
\text{l} & \quad 33. \\
\text{m} & \quad 108, 4. \\
\text{n} & \quad 97, R. \\
\text{o} & \quad § 140, 4. \\
\text{p} & \quad § 140, 1, 4th. \\
\text{q} & \quad § 141, Obs. 2, 4th. \\
\text{r} & \quad § 132, R. XLII. \\
\text{s} & \quad § 106, R. VIII. \\
\end{align*}
\]
tōnem hēri jube9. Factum est opportūnitāte loci, hostium inscientiā ac defatigatiōne, virtūte militūm, superiōrum pugnārum exercitiatiōne, ut ne unum quidem nostrōrum impētum ferrent, a ac statim terga vertērent. Quos b impeditos ĭntegrīs virībus c militēs nostri consecūti, magnum numērum eōrum occidērunt; reliquos equītes consectātī, d paucos, qui ex fugā evasērunt, reliquērunt. Sic, uno tempore, et e de navāli pugnā 2 Sabinus, et de Sābīn victoriā Ĉasar zertior factus; civitātesque omnes se statim Titurio dediderunt. Nam, ut f ad bella suscipienda g Gallōrum alācer ac promtus est animus, sic mollis ac g minīmē resistens ad calamitātes perferendas g mens eōrum est.

20. Eōdem fērē tempōre, Publius Crassus, cūm in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quae pars, h ut antē dictum est, et regiōnum latitudīnē, i et multitudīnē homīnum, dē ex tertiā parte Galliāe est āstīnānda, cūm intelligēret in his locis sībi k bellum gerendum, ubi paucis antē annis Lucius Valerius Præconīnus, legātus, exercētū pulso, interfectus esset, l atque unde Lucius Manilius, praetūrus, impedimentīs amissīs profugisset, l b non mediōcrem sībi diligentiam m adhibēndam n intelligēbat. Itāque re frumentāriā provisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparāto, o multīs prēterea virīs fortībus Tolūsā, p Carcasōne, et Narbōne, quae sunt civitātes Galliāe Provinciāe, finītīmāhis regionibus, nominātīm evocātīs, in Sotiātum fines exercētūm introduxīt. Cujus adventu cognōto, Sotiātēs, magnīs copiīs coactīs, equitātūque, 1 quo plurīmūm valēbant, in itinēre agmen nostrum adorti, primum equestre prēlīum commiserunt: deinde, equitātū suo pulso, atque inequentiibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocavērant, ostendērunt. Hi, nostros disjectos adorti, prēlīum renovārunt.

---

a § 140, 1, 4th.  b § 38.  c § 129, R.  d § 123, R.  e 124, 20.  f § 141, Obs. 8.  g § 112, 7.  h § 145, R.  i 124, 20.  j 37, 2d, 4, Note. 1.  k § 147, R. LXI.  l § 141, Obs. 8.  m 108, 4.  n § 148, Obs. 4.  o § 98, Obs. 4.  p § 136, R. LII
21. Pugnātum est diu atque acriter, cùm Sotiātes, superiorebus victoriis a rei, in suā virtūte totius Aquitaniæ salūtem posītam putārent; nostri autem, quid sine imperatōre, et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentūlo duce, efficere posent, perspici cupērent. *Tandem, confecti vulneribus, hostes terga vertēre.* Quorum magno numerō interfecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātum oppugnāre cēpit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus, vineas turresque egit. Illi, aliās eruptionē tentātā, aliās cunicūlis ad aggreem vineasque acūs (cujus rei sunt longē perītissīni Aquitāni, propertea quōd multīs locīs apud eos āerariae sectūræ sunt), ubi dili- gentiā nostrōrum nihil īīs rebus profici posse intellēxerunt, legātos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quā re impetrātā, arma tradēre īussi, faciunt. Atque, in ēa re omnium nostrōrum intentis animis, aliā ex parte oppidī Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenēbat, cum sexcentīs devōtīs, quos īli soldūrios appellānt (quorum hāc est conditio, utī omnībus in vivā commōdis unā cum īīs fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid īis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum unā ferant, aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc homīnum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui, eo interfecτo, īc in armis, amicitiae devovisset, mortem recusāret), cum īīs Adcantuannus, eruptionem facēre conātus, clamōre ab ēa parte munitōnis sublāto, cūm ā arma militēs concurrissent, vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī ēadem deditiōnis conditōne uterētur, ab Crasso impetrāvit.

22. Atque, in eā re omnium nostrōrum intentis animis, aliā ex parte oppidī Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenēbat, cum sexcentīs devōtīs, quos īli soldūrios appellānt (quorum hāc est conditio, utī omnībus in vivā commōdis unā cum īīs fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid īis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum unā ferant, aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc homīnum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui, eo interfecτo, īc in armis, amicitiae devovisset, mortem recusāret), cum īīs Adcantuannus, eruptionem facēre conātus, clamōre ab ēa parte munitōnis sublāto, cūm ā arma militēs concurrissent, vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī ēadem deditiōnis conditōne uterētur, ab Crasso impetrāvit.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Voca- tium et Tarusatium prophetus est. Tum verò ā barbarī com- mōti, quōd oppidum, et natūrā locī et manūs munitum,
paucis diebus, a quibus a eō ventum erat, b expugnātum c cognōverant, legātos quoquo-versus dimittēre, conjurāre, obsides inter se dare, copiās parāre cōpērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitātes legāti, quae sunt 1 citeriōris Hispāniae, d finitiμae Aquitāniae: e inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum 1 adventu magna cum auctoritāte, et magna cum hominum multitūdine, bellum gerēre conantur. Duces verō ii deliguntur, qui unā cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos g fuērant, summanque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimabuntur. Hi consuetūdine Popūli Romānī 2 loca capēre, castra mu-nīre, comētibus interclūdēre instituunt. Quod f ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copiās propter exiguitātem non 3 faciē didūci, b hostem et vāgāri i et vias obsīdēre 1 et castris satis prāsidii relinquēre, l ob eam causam minūs com-mōdē frumentum comematumque sibi k supportāri; h 4 in dies hostium numērum augēri; non cunctandum existimāvit, quin pugnā decertāret. 5 Hāc re ad consilium delāta, ubi om-nes 6 idem sentiēr 1 intellexit, postērum diem pugnāe constituit.

24. Primā luce, productis omnibus copiis, 7 duplici acie institūtā, 8 auxiliis in mediam aciem conjectis, quid hostes consiliīm capērent n expectābat. Illī, etsi propter multitūdī-nem, et vetērem belli gloriām, paucitatemque nostrōrum, se tutō dimicatūros 9 existimābant, tamen tutius p esse arbitrabantur, obsessīs viis, commeātu interclūsō, sine ullo vulnēre victoriā potīri: et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romā-nī sese recipēre cōpissent, l impeditos in agmine et sub sar-cinīs, inferiōres anīmo, r adoriri cogitābant. Hoc consilio probāto ab ducibus, productis Romanōrum copiis, sese castrīs s tenēbant. Hāc re perspectā Crassus, 9 cūm suā cunctatione atque opinione timōris hostes nostros milites alacri-
ores ad pugnandum \(^{\text{a}}\) effecissent; \(^{\text{b}}\) atque omnium voces audirentur,\(^{\text{c}}\) expectari\(^{\text{c}}\) diutius non oportère, quin \(^{\text{d}}\) ad castra irètur; \(^{\text{e}}\) cohortátus suos, omnibus cupiēntibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cùm alii \(^{\text{e}}\) fossas complérent,\(^{\text{b}}\) alii \(^{\text{e}}\) multis telis conjectís, defensores vallo\(^{\text{f}}\) munitionibusque depellérent, auxilieresque, quibus\(^{\text{g}}\) ad pugnam non multùm Crassus confidèbat, lapídibus\(^{\text{h}}\) telisque subministrandis,\(^{\i}\) et ad aggèrem cespitibus comportandis, speciem atque opiniònum pungnantium\(^{\text{k}}\) præbèrent; \(^{\text{b}}\) cùm item ab hostibus \(^{\text{l}}\) constanter ac non timidè pugnarêtur,\(^{\text{b}}\) telâque ex loco superiòre missa non frustra accidèrent; \(^{\text{b}}\) equites, circumitiis hostium castris, Crasso renunckiavêrunt, non eàdem esse diligentìà ab \(^{\text{a}}\) decumânà portà castra\(^{\text{a}}\) munìta, facilemque aditum habère.

26. Crassus, equitum praefectos cohortátus, ut magnis præmis\(^{\text{h}}\) pollitionibusque suos excitàrent, quid fìéri velit ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperatùm, educitis quatuor cohortibus, quæ, præsidio\(^{\text{m}}\) castris\(^{\text{m}}\) relictæ,\(^{\text{n}}\) intritæ ab labore erant, et \(^{\text{l}}\) longiòre\(^{\text{n}}\) itinère\(^{\text{b}}\) circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici posset, \(^{\text{o}}\) omnium ocúsibus mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celerìter ad eas, quas diximus, munitiones pervenérunt, atque, his prorútis, priùs in hostium castris constitèrunt, quàm \(^{\text{s}}\) planè ab iis vidèri,\(^{\text{f}}\) aut, quid reì\(^{\text{p}}\) gererètur,\(^{\text{q}}\) cognosci\(^{\text{r}}\) posset. Tum vero, clamòre ab eà parte audito, nostri redintegrátis viribus,\(^{\text{b}}\) quod\(^{\text{e}}\) plerumque in spe victoriae accidère consuèvit, acrius impungnàre cæpérunt. Hostes undique circumventi, desperàtis omnibus rebus,\(^{\text{t}}\) se per munitiones dejeère et fugà\(^{\text{h}}\) salùtem petère\(^{\text{c}}\) intendèrunt. Quos\(^{\text{u}}\) equitátus apertissimis campis\(^{\text{s}}\) conectàtus,

\(^{\text{a}}\) § 147, Obs. 4. \(^{\text{b}}\) § 140, Obs. 4. \(^{\text{c}}\) 67, Note. \(^{\text{d}}\) § 140, 3. \(^{\text{e}}\) § 98, Obs. 12. \(^{\text{f}}\) § 136, R. LII. \(^{\text{g}}\) § 112, R. V. \(^{\text{h}}\) § 129, R. \(^{\text{i}}\) § 147, R. LXII. \(^{\text{k}}\) 19, (militum.) \(^{\text{l}}\) § 145, R. LVIII. \(^{\text{m}}\) § 114, R. \(^{\text{n}}\) § 120, Obs. 5. \(^{\text{o}}\) § 140. 1, 2d. \(^{\text{p}}\) § 106, R. VIII. \(^{\text{q}}\) § 140, 5. \(^{\text{r}}\) 87. \(^{\text{s}}\) 37, 9, Note. 3. \(^{\text{t}}\) 109, 2. \(^{\text{u}}\) 38. \(^{\text{v}}\) § 136, Obs. 5. (in.)
ex millium quinquaginta numero, quæ ex Aquitaniā Cantabrisque convenisse constābat, vix quartā parte relicta multā nocte se in castra recepit.


28. Eōdem ferē tempōre Caesar, etsi prope exacta jam aestas erat, tamen, quōd, omni Galliā pacatā, Morīni Menapique superērant, qui in armis essent, neque ad eum unquam legātos de pace misissent, id bellum celēriter confici posse, eō exercitum adduxit: qui longē alīa ratione, ac reliqui Galli, bellum agere instituērunt. Nam quōd intelligēbant, maxīmas nationes, quæ prælio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, continentesque silvas ac palūdes habēbant, eō se suāque omnia contulērunt. Ad quarum initium silvārum cūm Caesar pervenisset, castrāque munīre instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opēre nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvā evolāvērunt et in nostrōs impētum fecērunt. Nostri celēriter arma cepērunt, eosque in silvas repulērunt, et, compluribus interfectis, longius impeditioribus locis secūti, paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvas cēdere insti-tuit, et, ne, quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latēre impētus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quæ

---

\textsuperscript{a} § 145, R. & Obs. 2. \textsuperscript{b} § 121, Obs. 2. \textsuperscript{c} § 140, Obs. 4. \textsuperscript{d} 98, 2. \textsuperscript{e} 109, 2. \textsuperscript{f} 19, 2. \textsuperscript{g} 22, 3. \textsuperscript{h} 114, 1. \textsuperscript{i} 131, R. XL. \textsuperscript{j} 93, 1. \textsuperscript{k} § 141, R. IV, (soli.) \textsuperscript{l} § 126, R. III. \textsuperscript{m} § 141, Obs. 6. \textsuperscript{n} § 140, 1, 2d. \textsuperscript{o} § 149, Obs. 6. \textsuperscript{p} § 145, R.
erat caesa, conversam ad hostem colocabat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruebat. Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diēbus conducto, cum jam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ab nostris tenerent, ipsi densiores silvas petērent; eujusmodi sunt tempestātes consecutae, ut opus necessariō intermitterētur, et, continuatione imbrorum diutius sub pellibus militēs continēri non possent. Itaque vastātis omnībus eōrum agris, vicis adiificiisque incensis, Cæsar exercitum reduxit, et in Aulercis, Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, quae proximē bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocavit.

\[\text{§ 129, R.} \quad \text{d} \quad 17, 2. \quad \text{e} \quad \text{§ 140, 1, 1st.} \]

\[\text{b} \quad 109, 2. \quad \text{e} \quad \text{§ 140, Obs. 4.} \quad \text{h} \quad 87, 6. \]

\[\text{c} \quad \text{§ 131, R. XLI.} \quad \text{f} \quad 32, 3. \]
BOOK IV.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. War with the Usipetes and Tenchtheri—Chap. 1-15. II. Caesar's bridge over the Rhine, and his crossing into Germany—Chap. 16-19. III. Caesar passes into Britain.—A battle—surrender of the Britains, and subsequent revolt.—Chap. 20-36. IV. War with the Morini and Menapii—Chap. 37-38.

1. 

1 Ea, quae secuta est, hiâme,a qui fuit annus b Cneio Pompeio,b Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germâni, et item Tenchthêri, magna cum multitudine homínium, flumen Rhe-num transiérunt, non longè a mari, c quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quòd, ab Suévis complôres annos c exagitâti, bello premebantur et agricultûrâ d prohibebantur. Suevôrum gens est longè maxûna et bellicosissima Germa-nôrum e omnium. Hi centum pagos habère dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singûla f millia armatórum bellandi causâ ex finibus edûcunt. Reliqui, g qui domi mansêrint, se at-que illos alunt. Hí rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remânent. Sic neque agricultûra, g nec ratio atque usus belli, intermittit. Sed privati ac separâti agri apud eos nihil est; neque longiûs anno b remanêre uno in loco in-colendi causâ licet. Neque multitûm frumento, i sed 6 maxîmam partem k lacte atque pecôre l vivunt, multûmque sunt in venationûbus; quaœ res et cibi genère, l et quotidiânâ exerći-tatione, et libertâte vitæ (quòd, a puérîs m nullo officio n aut discipînâ assuefacti, nihil omnîno contra voluntâtëm faci-ant), m et vires alit, et immâni corpôrûm magnitudîne n hom-mes efficiit. Atque in eam o se consuetudînem adduxûrunt,
ut locis frigidissimis, neque vestitūs, praetern pelles, habeant quicquam (quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corpūris pars aperta), et laventur in fluminibus.

2. Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello cepērunt, quibus vendant, habeant, quām quō ullam rem ad se importārī desiderērent: quinetiam jumentis, quibus maxīmē Gallia delectātūr, quāque impenso parant pretio, Germānī importātīs non utuntur: sed quae sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, hasc quotidiana exercitātione, summi ut sint labōris, efficiunt. Equestribus propōsitis saepe ex equis desiliunt, ac pedibus praeliuntur; equosque eodem remanēre vestigio assuefaciunt; ad quos se celerītēr, cūm usus est, recipiunt: neque eōrum moribus turpius aut inertius habētur, quàm ephippiis uti.

3. Publicē maxīmam putant esse laudem, quàm latissimē a suis finibus vacāre agros: hac re signīficārī, magnum numērum civitātium suam vim sustinēre non posse. Itaque, unā ex parte, a Suēvis, circīter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacāre dicuntur. Ad altēram partem succēdunt Ubīi (quorum fuit civitās ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanōrum), et paulo quàm sunt ejusdem genēris cetēri humanōres; propterēa quōd Rhenum attingunt, multūmque ad eos mercatores ventītānt, et ipsis propter propinquitātēm Gallicis sunt moribus assequātī. Hos cūm Suēvi, multis sēpe bellis expertī, propter amplitūdīnem gravitatemque civitātis, finibus expellēre non potuissent, tamen vectigāles sibi fecērunt, ac multō humilīores insirmioresque redēgérunt.

---

a § 106, R. VIII.; b § 140, 1, Ist.; c § 112, R. II.; d § 141, Obs. 3.; e § 141, R. I. & Obs. 1.; f § 106, R. VII.; g § 140, 1; h § 121, R. XXVI.; i § 133, R.; j § 140, 1, 3d.; k § 136, Obs. 5, (in.); l § 115, R.; m § 136, Obs. 5; n § 136, R. LII.; o § 136, R. II.; p § 132, R. XLIII.
4. 1 In eàdem causâ fuérunt Usipètes et Tenchthéri, quos suprà diximus, qui complùres annos 2 Suevorum vim sustinuérunt; ad extrêmum 3 tamen, agris 4 expulsi, et multis Germaniæ locis 5 triennium 6 vagati, ad Rhenum pervenérunt: 2 quas 8 regiones Menapii incolébant, et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, ædificia, vicosque habébant; sed tantâ multitudinis aditu 9 perterríti, ex his ædificiis, quæ trans flumen habuérand, demigravérunt, et, cis Rhenum dispositis præsidii, 6 Germânos transire prohibébant. Illi, omnia experti, cùm neque vi 10 contendère propter inopiam navium, neque a clám transire propter custodias Menapiôrum, possent, 11 reverti sì in suas sedes regionesque simulaveìrunt; et, 4 tridui viam progressi, rursus revertérunt, atque, omni hoc itinère unâ nocte equitatu 12 coniecto, incios inopinantesque Menapios oppressérunt, qui, de Germanorum discessu per exploratóres certiòres facti, siné metu trans Rhenum in suos vicòs remigravérunt. His 8 interfecîtis, navibúsque eòrum occupâtis, 13 priusquam ea pars Menapiôrum, quæ citra Rhenum quiëta in suis sedibus erat, certior írèret, 14 flumen transiérant, atque, omníbus eòrum ædificiis 8 occupâtis, 5 reliquam partem 8 hiëmis se eòrum copiis aluérunt.

5. His de rebus Cæsar certior factus, et 6 infirmitâtem Gallórum veritâs, 1 quod sunt in consiliis capiendiis mobiles, et novis plerumque rebus 16 student, 7 nihil his 16 committen-dum existimavit. 8 Est autem hoc Galliæ consuetudinis, 8 uti et viatòres, etiam invítos, consistère cogant, 17 et, quod quise eòrum de quaeque re audiërit 17 aut cognovérît, qua-rant; et mercatóres in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, 18 quibusque ex regionibus veniant, 8 quasque ibi res cognovérint, pronunçiâre cogant. 19 His rumoribus atque auditionibus per-
môti, de 1 summis sæpe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum 2 e vestigio pœnitère necesse est, 3 cum incertis rumoribus 4 serviant, 5 et plerique ad voluntatem eorum facta respondeant. 6

6. Quæ consuetudine cognitâ, Cæsar, 4 ne 4 graviôri bello 6 occurreret, maturius quam consuerat ad exercitum proficisciur. Eò cùm venisset, ea, quæ fore suspicatus erat, 5 facta 7 cognoviit; missas 9 legationes a nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos, invitatosque 7 eos, uti ab Rheno discederent; 8 omnùaque quæ postulassent, 9 ab se fore paràta. Quà 5 spe adducti Germani latiûs jam vagabantur, et in fines Eburônun et Condusórum, qui sunt Trevirórum clientés, pervenérant. Principibus Galliæ evocátis, Cæsar ea quæ cognovérat 6 dissimulanda 10 sibi 11 existimavit, eorumque animis pernulsiis et confirmatiis, equitâtûque imperàto, bellum cum Germanis gerërè constituit.

7. Re 13 frumentariâ comparâtâ, equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facére cœpit, quibus 12 in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus cùm paucórum diērum iter 13 abesset, legâti ab his venérint, quorum hæc fuit oratio: "Germanos 14 neque priôres 15 Popîlo Românò bellum inferre, neque tamen recusâre, 16 si laccéssantur, quin armis contendânt; 17 quód Germanórum consuetúdo hæc sit 18 a majoribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferánt, 19 resistére, neque deprecâri: hæc tamen dicére, venisse 17 invitós, 19 ejectós domo." Si 8 suam gratiam Români velint, posse eis utiles esse amicos: vel sibi agros attribuánt, vel patiantur 9 eos tenère quos armis posse dérint. 20 Sese unis Suevis 10 concedère, quibus ne Dii quidem immortâles pares esse possint: reliquam quidem 11 in terris esse neminem, quem non superáre possint."
8. Ad hæc Cæsar, quæ visum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis: "Sibi nullam cum his amiciùam esse posse, si in Galliā remanērent: neque verum esse, quibus fines tuēri non potuērint, aliēnos occupāre: neque ullos in Galliā vacāre agros qui dari, tantae præsertim multiudīni, sine injuriā possint." Sed licēre, si veliunt, in Ubiōrum finibus considēre, quorum sint legāti apud se, et de Suevōrum injuriis querantur, et a se auxilium petant: hoc se ab iis impetrāturum."

9. Legāti hæc se ad suos relatūros dixerunt, et, re deliberātā, post diem tertium ad Cæsārem reversūros: interea ne propriūs se castra movēret, petiērunt. Ne id quidem Cæsar ab se impetrāri posse dixit: cognovērat enim, magnam partem equitātūs ab iis aliquot diēbus ante prædandī frumentandi causa ad Ambivārētos trans Mosam missam. Hos expectāri equītes, atque ejus rei causa moram interpōni, arbitrabātur.

10. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosēgo, qui est in finibus Lingōnum, et, parte quādam ex Rheno receptā, quae appellātur Vahālis, insulam efficit Batavōrum, neque longiūs ab eo millibus passuum octoginta in Oceanūm transit. Rheinus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incōlunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiōrum, Sequanōrum, Mediomatricōrum, Tribocōrum, Trevirōrum cītātūs fertur; et, ubi Oceāno appropinquat, in plurēs diffudit partes, multis ingentiūsque insulīs effectis, quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur (ex quibus sunt, qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivēre existimantur), multisque capitūbus in Oceanum influit.

a § 112, R. II. b § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.) p § 132, R. XLII.
§ 37, (cos.) i § 140, 1, 3d. q § 98, Obs. 10.
c § 141, Obs. 3. k 121, Note. 2. r 116, 3.
d § 126, R. III. l § 131, R. XLI. s § 112, R. IV.
e § 141, R. I. & Obs. 1. m § 145, R. t § 102, R. II.
f § 141, Obs. 7. n § 103, R. u § 121, Obs. 2.
g 100, 2. o § 120, R. XXIV.
11. Cæsar cūm ab hoste non amplius passuum duodecim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur: qui, in itinere congressi, magnopere, ne longius propter eōrum, orābant. Cūm id non impetrassent, petabant, ut ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, præmissēret; eosque pugnā prohibēret; sibique uti potestātem facēret, in Ubios legatos mittendī: quorum si Prīncipes ac Senātus sibi jurejurando fidem fecissent, ea conditionē, quae a Cæsāre ferrētur, se usūros ostendēbant: ad has res consciendiōnas sibi tridui spatium daret. Hec omnia Cæsar eodem illo pertinērē arbūrābat, ut, tridui morā interpositā, eōnes eōrum, qui abessent, reverenterunt: tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quatuor aequatioṇis causa processūrum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissīmi convenirent, ut de eōrum postulatīs cognoscerent. In tērim ad praeceptos, qui cum omni equitāte antecesserant, mittit, qui nunciarent, ne hostes prcellio lacesserent, et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

12. At hostes, ubi primūm nostros eōnes conspexērunt, quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cūm ipsi non amplius octingentos eōnes habērent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causā iērant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod legāti eōrum paulo ante a Cæsāre discesserant, atque is dies inducius erat ab eis petitūs, impētu facto, celebiter nostros perturbāverunt. Rursus resistentibus nostrīs, consuetūdīne suā ad pedes desiluerunt, subfossisque equis, compluribusque nostrīs dejectīs, reliquis in fugam conjecerunt, atque ita perterrītos egērunt, ut non prīus fugāt desistērent, quàm in conspectu agminis nostri venissent.

---

a 39, 5.  
b § 140, 1, 31.  
c § 140, Obs. 4.  
d § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)  
* 39.  
f § 129, R  
§ 121, R. XXVI.  
§ 140, 4.  
§ 120, Obs. 3  
§ 109, 1.  
§ 141, Obs. 3.  
§ 140, 1, 24.  
§ 131, R. XL.  
§ 141, Obs. 2, 4th.  
§ 110, 1, Ist.
In eo prælio ex equitibus nostri interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso, Aquitanus, amplissimo genōre natus, cujus aves in civitāte suā regnum obtinuērat, amicus ab Senātu nostro appellātus. Hic cum fratri ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex pericūlo eripuit: ipse, equo vulnerato dejectus, quaod potuit, fortissimum restitit. Cūm circumventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, procul animadvertisset, incitato equō se hostibus obtulīt atque interfecit.

13. Hoc facto prælio, Cæsar neque jam sibi legatos neque conditiones accipienda arbitrabātur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petitā pace, ultro bellum intrānerant: expectāre vero, dum hostium copiās augerentur, equitatusque reverterērunt, summāe dementiāe esse judicābat; et, cognītā Gallōrum infirmitāte, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno prælio auctoritātis essent consecūti, sentiēbat: quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimābat. His constitūtis rebus, et consilio cum legātis et quæstōre communicāto, ne quem diem pugnā praetermitteret, opportunīssima res accidit, quod postridie ejus dici mane, eādem et perfidiā et simulātōne usi Germanī, frequentes omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibītis, ad eum in castra venērunt; simul, ut dicebātur, sui purgandi causā, quod contra atque esset dictum, et ipsi petissent, praelium pridie commiissent; simul ut, si quid posissent, de induciis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Cæsar oblātos gavisus, illīcī retinērī jussit; ipse omnes copias castrīs eduxit, equitatumque, quod recenti prælio perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsēqui jussit.
14. Acie tripli ci institutâ, et celerîter octo millium in tîn-ère confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervînit, quàm, quid ageretur, Germâni sentiōre possent. Qui omnibus rebus subîto perterriti, et celeritâtê adventûs nostri, et discessu su-ôrum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educêre, an castra defendêre, an fugâ salûtem petêre, præstâret. Quorum timor cûm fremìtû et concursu significêtur, militès nostri, pristîni diêi perfidiâ incitâtì, in castra irrupêrunt. Quorum qui celerîter arma capère potuerunt, paulisper nostris restîtêrunt, atque inter carros impedimentâque prælium commisérunt: at reliqua multitúdo puerôrum mulie- rumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transiērant), passim fugêre coepit; ad quos consortâdos Cæsar equitâtûm misit.


16. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Cæsar statuit, sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quorum illa fuit justissîma, quòd, cûm vidêret, Germânos tam facîlè impelli,
ut in Galliam venirent,\(^a\) \(\text{1}\) suis quoque rebus\(^b\) eos timere voluit, cum intelligerent, \(\text{2}\) et posse et audere Populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. \(\text{3}\) Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tenchtherorum, quam supra commemoravi, prædandii\(^c\) frumentandique causâ Mosam transisse, neque prælio\(^d\) interfuisset, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrorum receperat seque cum iis conjunxerat. Ad quos\(^e\) cûm Cæsar nuncios misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi\(^f\) dederent,\(^b\) respondērunt: "Populi Romani imperium Rhenum\(^i\) finire: si, se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non æquum existimarent, \(\text{4}\) cur sui\(^k\) quicquam\(^l\) esse imperii\(^m\) aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularent?" \(\text{m}\) Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenânis ad Cæsarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, "ut sibi\(^g\) auxilium ferret,\(^h\) quod graviter ab Suevis premerunt;\(^n\) vel, si id facere\(^o\) occupationibus reipublicæ prohiberet, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret;\(^b\) id\(^d\) sibi\(^d\) ad auxilium spemque reliquae tempôris satis futûrum: tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus, Ariovisto pulso, et hoc novissimo prælio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione\(^o\) et amiciâ Populi Romani tuti\(^p\) esse possint.\(^a\)" Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

17. Cæsar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire, neque satis tum esse\(^q\) arbitrabatur, \(\text{6}\) neque sua\(^r\) neque Populi Romani dignitatis\(^k\) esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficulas faciendi pontis\(^i\) proponebatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id\(^i\) sibi\(^s\) contendendum, aut

\(^a\) § 140, 1, 1st.  \(^b\) § 112 R. XVII.  \(^c\) 112, 1.  \(^d\) § 112, R. I.  \(^e\) 39, 9.  \(^f\) § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.  \(^g\) § 123, R.  \(^h\) § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.  \(^i\) § 145, R.  \(^j\) § 108, R. XII.  \(^k\) § 106, R. VIII.  \(^l\) § 140, 6.  \(^m\) § 141, Obs. 7.  \(^n\) § 129, R.  \(^o\) § 103, Obs. 6.  \(^p\) 51, 5.  \(^q\) 29, 1.  \(^r\) 113, & § 147
PLAN OF THE BRIDGE MADE OVER THE RHINE BY CAESAR, IN TEN DAYS.

A. *Tigna bina sesquipedalia*: Two piles each a foot and a half thick, joined together at the distance of two feet. B. One of the piles detached. C. Form of the two piles braced together. D. Two opposite piles similarly joined together, and at the distance of forty feet down the river from the other. E. *Trabs bipedalis*: Large beam two feet square, extending from the upper to the lower piles. F. The same beam detached. G. *Fibulae binae*: Two braces fastening each pair of piles together, as seen at L, one on each side (utrinque) — the one below, supporting the beam, (trabes) the other above it. H. Form of the brace detached. I. *Materias*: Timbers laid from beam to beam, (directa) lengthwise of the bridge. J. *Longitii*: Spars laid across the timbers. K. *Crales*: Hurdles laid over the spars. L. *Sublicia*: Stakes sunk in the river as buttresses, and fastened (conuncta) to each lower pair of piles. M. *Alia sublicia*: Other stakes driven in above the bridge, and separate from it, as a fence against trunks of trees &c. sent down the river.
aliter non transducendum exercitum, existimabat. 1 Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. 2 Tigna bina a sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo præcūta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo b pedum duōrum inter se jungēbat. 3 Hae cūm c machinationibus d immissa in flumen defixerat, sistucisque d adegerat, 4 non sublīcæ modo d directa e ad perpendicūlum, sed prona e ac fastigata, ut secundum natūram fluminis procumbērent; f 5 iis e item contraria bina, a ad eundem modum junc-ta, intervallo b pedum quadrāgēnum, ab inferiōre parte, contra vim atque impētum fluminis conversa statuēbat. 6 Hae utrāque insūper bipedalibus trabibus d immissis quantum eōrum tignōrum junctūra distābat, binis utrimque fibūlis k ab extrēmā parte, distinebantur: 7 quibus f disclūsis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat opēris firmūtō, atque 8 ea m rerum natūra, ut, 9 quo n major vis aquae incitatissimae hoc n arctius illigāta tenerentur. 9 10 Hae directā materiæ injectā contexebantur, et longūriis d cratibusque con-sternebantur: 12 ac nihilō secius sublīcæ et ad inferiōrem partem fluminis oblīque agebantur, quæ, 13 pro pariēte subjectæ, et cum omni opère conjunctæ, vim fluminis excipērent: 14 et aliae item supra pontem mediocris spatio, ut, si arbōrum trunci, sive naves 15 dejiciendi opēris essent a barbarīs missae, his de-fensoribus d eōrum rerum vis minucerētur, 'neu ponti' nocērent.

18. Diēbus v decem, 16 quibus materia cœpta erat compor-tāri, omni opère effecto, exercitūs transducitur. Cæsar, 17 ad utramque partem pontis firma præsidio h relictō, in fines Si-gambrōrum contendit. Intērim a complūribus civitāribus ad eum legātī veniunt, w quibus x pacem atque amicitiam pe-
tentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adduci jubet, At Sigambri, ex eo tempore quo pons instituti capta est, fugà comparatâ, hortantibus iis quos ex Tenchthêris atque Usi petitus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserunt, suaque omnia exportaverant, sequae in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

19. Cæsar, paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis ædificiisque incensis, frumentisque succisis, Caesar, paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis ædificiisque incensis, frumentisque succisis, se in fines Ubiôrum recepit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suevis premerentur, hanc ab iis cognovit: Suëvos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito, nuncios in omnes partes dimissis, ut de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores, suaque omnia in silvas deponerent, atque omnes qui arma ferre possent unum in locum convenirent; hunc esse delectum medium ferè regionum earum quas Suevi obtinèrent: hic Romanorum adventum expectare atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quorum rerum causa transducere exercitum constituérat, ut Germanis metum injiceret, ut Sigambros ulcisceretur, ut Upios ob-sidiâne liberaret, diēbus omnino decem et octo trans Rhe-num consumtis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitrâtur, se in Galliam recepit, pontemque rescidit.

20. Exigua parte æstatis reliquâ, Cæsar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, matûræ sunt hîèmes, tamen in Britanniam proficiisci contendit, quod, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intelligebat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficieret, tamen magno sibi usu fore arbitrabatur, si modò insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca,
portus, aditus cognovisset: quæ omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim 1 temere præter mercatores illó adit quisquam, 2 neque iis ipsis quicquam, præter oram maritimam atque eas regiones quæ sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset 6 insulæ magnitúdo, neque quæ aut quantœ incognitæ incolerent, 7 neque 3 quem usum belli habèrent, aut quibus institūitis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majórum navium multitudinem idonei 4 portus, reiperire poterat.  

21. Ad hæc cognoscenda, príusquam periculum facerét, idoneum esse arbitrátus 5 Caium Volusénum, cum navi longā praemittit. Huic mandat, uti, explorátis omnibus rebus, ad se quamprimum revertātur; ipsé cum omnibus copiis in Mo-rīnos profierit, quod inde erat brevissimum in Britanniam transjectus. Huc naves undique ex finitīmis regionibus et, quam superiōræ æstāte ad Veneticum bellum fecerat, classem jubet convenire. 6 Intemō, consilio ejus cogniito et per mercatores perlató ad Britannos, a compluribus ejus insulæ civitātibus ad eum legāti veniunt, qui policeantur 7 obsides dare, atque imperio 1 Populi Romāni obtemerāre. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortaturque ut Populi Romāni fidem sequantur; 8 seque celeriter eo ventūrum nunciet. 9 Volusēnus, perspectis regionibus, quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, 10 qui navi egrēdi ac se barbarīs committēre non audēret, 6 quintō die ad Caesarum revertitur; quæque ibi perspexisset renunciat.

---

a § 126, R XXXIII.  f 63, & § 123, Obs.2. 1 § 112, R. V.  
b § 140, 5.  r § 140, 1, 3d.  m 38, & 109, 2.  
c 48, & § 34, Obs. 1.  h 43.  n § 130, 4.  
d § 103, Obs. 2.  i 90, 4.  o § 126, R. II.  
e 106, 1.  k § 111, Obs. 2, 4th.  p § 141, R. III.
22. Dum in his locis Cæsar navium parandarum a causâ morâtur, ex magnâ parte Morinorum ad eum legati venérunt, qui b se 1 de superiöris tempôris consilio excusârent, b quôd homînes barbarî, et nostræ consuetudînîs c imperîti, bellum Popülo Româno fecîssent, d seque ea, quae imperâsset, e factûros pollicercerunt. b Hoc sibi f satis opportûnè Cæsar acci-disse arbitrâtus, quôd neque post tergum hostem relinquère volêbat, neque belli gerendi, a propter anni tempus, facultatem habêbat, neque 2 has tantûlarum rerum occupatîonês sibi h Britanniae t anteponendas judicabat, magnum his k obsîdum numérûm impérât. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepît. 3 Navibus circîter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quotl satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid præterea navium 1 longârum habêbat, quæstôri, legâtis, præfectisque distribuit. Huc accedèbant octodécim onerariae naves, quæ ex eo loco ab 1 millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum pervenire possent. o Has equitibus distribuit; reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottæ, legátis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venérant, deducendum p dedit. Publíum Sulpitium Rufum, legátum, cum eo præsidio quod satis esse arbitrabâtur, portum tenère jussit.

23. His constitûtis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum a tempestâtem, 4 tertiâ fere vigiliâ 5 solvit, equitesque in ulteriörem portum prôrêdi, 6 et naves conscendêre, 7 et se sequi 7 jussit: a quibus 5 cum id paulo tardius esset administrâtum, ipse 7 horæ diéi circîter quartâ cum primis navibus Britanniam attigît, atque ibi in omnibus collibus 6 exposîtas hostium...
copias armātas conscipit. Cujus loci hæc erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in littus telum adjici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequāquam idoneum arbitrātus locum, dum reliquae naves eō convenirent, ad horam nōnam in anchōris expectāvit. Intērim legātis tribunisque militum convocātis, et quae ex Volusēno cognōsset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque (ut rei militāris ratio, maximē ut mariitūm res postularent, ut quae celērem atque instabilem motum habērent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus seōcundum, dato signo, et sublatis anchoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano littōrēs naves constituìt.


25. Quod ubi Cæsar animum advertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbarīs inusitātor, et motus ad usum expeditiōnem, paulum removēri ab onerāriis navibus, et
DE BELLO GALLICO.

remis incitāri, a et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, a at- que inde fundis, sagittis, b tormentis, hostes propelli c ac sub-
movēri jussit : d quae res magno usu b nostris fuit. Nam, et
navium sigurā, et remōrum motu, et inusitato genere tormen-
tōrum permōtī, barbāri constitērunt, d ac paulum modō pe-
dem retulērunt. Atque, nostris militibus c cunctanībus, máximē propter altitudīnem maris, d qui d decīmē legiōnis
aquīlam serēbat, contestātus e Deos, ut f ea res legiōnī f felici
cēr evenīret: "Desilite," inquit, "commilitōnes, nisi vultis
aquīlam hostībus prodēre : ego certe meum reipublīcē atque
imperatōri officium prēstātīro."

Hoc cūm 7 magnā voce dixisset, 8 ex navi se projecit, atque in hostes aquīlam ferre cēpit. Tum nostri, cohortātī inter se, 6 ne h tantum dedēcās
admitterētur, universi ex navi desiluerunt : hos ītem ex prox-
imis navībus cūm conspexissent, subsecūtī hostībus 4 approp-
quinārunt.

26. Pugnātum est a utrisque acītēr ; nostri tamen, quōd neque ordīnes servāre, k neque firmīter insistēre, k ne-
que signa subēsequī k potērant, atque alius aliā 1 ex navi, qui-
buscumque m signis occurrērat, se aggregābāt, magno opēre
perturbabantur. Hostes vero, notīs omnībus vādis, ubi ex lit-
tōre aliōquos 9 singularēs ex navi egredientēs conspexerat,
incitātīs equis impeditōs adorīebantur : plurēs paucōs 10 circum-
sistēbant : aliī ab latēre aperto in universos tela con-
jiciēbant. 10 Quod 11 cūm animum advertisset Cæsar, 11 sca-
phas longārum navium, ītem 12 speculatoria navigia militībus
complēri a jussit, et, quos 9 laborantes conspexerat, iīs sub-
sidia submittēbant. Nostri, simul 10 in arīdo constitērunt, suis
omnībus consecūtīs, in hostes impētum fecērunt, atque eos in fugam dedērunt, neque longiūs prosequī k potūrunt, quōd

---

a 90, 4.  
b § 114, R.  
c 109, 1.  
d 37, 3.  
e 105, 2.  
f § 112, R. XVII  
g § 28, Obs. 5.  
h § 140, 1, 3d, & 121.  
i § 112, R. IV  
j 87, 7.  
k § 136, R. LII.  
l § 38, 7.  
m 37, 7, Ncte. 2, &  
§ 99, Obs. 7.  
§ 121, 18, (Sup. ac.)
equites 1 cursum tenère atque insulam capère non potuérant. 

Hoc unum ad pristīnam fortūnam Cæsāri defuit.

27. Hostes prēlio superātī, simul 2 atque se ex fugā rece-

pārunt, statim ad Cæsārem legātos de pace misērunt: ob-

sides datūros, quāque imperāsset 3 sese factūros, pollicīti sunt. Una cum his legātis Commius Aτrēbas venit, quem c

suprà demonstrāverām a Cæsāre in Britanniam præmissum. 4

Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos 3 oratōris modo im-

peratōris mandāta perferret, comprehendērant, atque in vin-

cūlā conjecērant: tum, prēlio facto, remisērunt et in peten-

dā 6 pace ejus rei 4 culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et

propter imprudentiam ut ignoscerētur, petivērunt. Cæsar

questus, quōd, cum ultro 5 in continentem legātis missis pa-

cem ab se petissent, f bellum sine causa intulisset, 6 ignos-

cĕre 6 imprudentiā 9 dixit, obsidesque imperāvit: quorum

illī partem statim dedērunt, partem, ex longinquentibus locis

arcessītam, paucis diēbus i sese datūros dīxerunt. Interea

suos remigrāre in agros jussērunt, principesque undique

convenīre, et se civitatesque suas Cæsāri commendāre cæ-

pērunt.

28. His rebuspace confirmātā, 8 post diem quartum, quàm

est in Britanniam ventum, 9 naves octodećim, de quibus 9 su-

prā demonstrātum est, quae equites sustulērunt, ex superiōre

portu leni vento solvērunt. 10 Quæ 1 cūm appropriērant

Britannis, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subītō

cortā est, ut nulla eārum m cursum tenēre posset, 9 sed aliā

eōdem, unde erant prosectae, referrentur; aliā ad inferiōrem

partem insulā, 11 quae est propriā solis occasum, 9 magno su-

cum periculō dejicerentur: 12 quae p tamen, anchōris jaecis,

cūm fluctibus completerunt, f 13 necessariō adversā nocte in

altum proyectae, continentem petiērunt.

---

* 124, 18.  
b 80, 1.  
c § 145, R. & 91, 4.  
j 98, 2.  
* § 147, R. LXII.  
 i § 140, Obs. 4.  
 s § 141, Obs. 7.  
h § 112, R. V.  
i § 131, R. XLI.  
k 67, 5, Note.  
 e § 140, 1, 1st.  
m § 107, R. X.  
a § 140, 1, 1st.  
o § 136, Obs. 5, (aa.).  
p § 38.  
13
29. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset a luna plena, 1 qui b dies maritimós æstus maximos in Oceâno efficère consuevit; 2 nostrisque c id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus d Cæsar exercitum transportandum curavérat, quasque ad aridum' subduxerat, æstus complèbat; et oneráias, 3 quae ad anchóras erant deligatæ, tempestas 4 afflictábat; neque ullà nostris facultas aut administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabatur. Compluribus navibus 5 fractis, reliquæ cùm essent, funibus, 5 anchóris, reliquisque armamentis amissis, ad navigandum inuïles, magna, id quod 5 necesse erat accidere, totius exercitús perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant alia, quibus reportári possent; 1 et omnia deérant, quæ ad reficiendas eas usui k sunt, et, 5 quod omnibus 1 constábat hiemâri in Galliâ oportère, frumentum 6 his in locis in hiëmem provísium non erat.

30. Quibus m rebus s cognítis, principes Britanniae, qui post præliquium factum ad ea, quae jussèrat Cæsar, facienda convenérant, inter se collocutí, cùm eúquès  n et naves et frumentum Românis  deesse intelligérunt, et paucitatem militum ex castrórum exiguitáte cognoscérent, quæ hoc erant etiam angustiòra, quód sine impedimentis Cæsar legiônés transportavérat, optimum factum p esse duxérunt, rebellione q factâ, frumento q commutáque nostros prohibère, et rem in hiemem producère, quod, iis superátis, aut redítu r interclúsis, neminem postea belli inferendi causâ in Britanniam transitúrum confidébant. Itáque, rursus conjuratione  s factâ, paulátim ex castris discedére, ac suos clam ex agris deducéré cæpérunt.

31. At Cæsar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognovérat, tamen et 8 ex eventu navium suârum, 9 et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermisérant, fore t id, 5 quod accidit, suspicábátur.
Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat, et, quae gravissimè afflictæ erant naves, eàrum materià atque ëre ad reliquas reficiendas utebátur, et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continentìi comportàri jubèbat. Itaque, cùm id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodécim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigári commòdè posset, effécit.

32. *Dum ea geruntur, legiòne ex consuetudine unà frumentatùm missâ, quae appel labatur septima, neque ullà ad id tempus belli suspicione interposìtâ, cùm pars hominum in agris remanêret, pars etiam in castra ventitäre, ii, qui pro portis castrórùm in statióne erant, Cæsàri renunciàrunt, pulvèrem majorem, quàm consuetùdo ferret, in eà parte vidéri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Cæsar id, quod erat, suspicáta, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consiliì, cohortes, quæ in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem profìcisci, duas ex reliquis in stationëm succédère, reliquas armári et confessiùm sese subséquì jussit. Cùm paulò longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque agrè sustinìre, et, consérta legiòne, ex omnibus partibus tela conjici, animum adver tit. Nam quòd, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspiciati hostes, huc nostros esse ventúros, noctu in silvis delitüerant: tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupátis, subitò ador ti, paucis interfectis, reliquis incerti ordinibus perturbavérunt: simul equitátu atque essèdis circumdérent.

33. *Genus hoc est ex essèdis pugnæ: primò per omnes partes pereöit, et tela conjiciunt, atque ipso terróre equórum, et strepitu rotárum, ordinés plerumque perturbant;

---

* § 44, II. 2.  
* § 129, R.  
* § 129, R.  
* 98, 2.  
* 90, 4.  
* 96, 6.  
* 32, 5.  
* § 145, R.  
* § 148, R. LXIII.  
* § 147, Obs. 5.  
* § 147, Obs. 5.  
* § 141, Obs. 7.  
* 37, 6, Note. 1.  
* 37, 6, Note. 1.  
* § 114, Obs. 4.  
* 37, 6, Note. 1.  
* 37, 6, Note. 1.  
* 37, 6, Note. 1.  
* 37, 6, Note. 1.  
* 37, 6, Note. 1.
et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverint, ex essedis desiliunt, et pedibus praeliantur. 

Aurigae intem paulatim ex praelio excedunt, atque ita curru se collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. 

Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum, in praelii præstant: ac tantum usu quotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti, in declivi ac precipiti loco, incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temōnem percurriēre, et in jugo insistere, et inde se in currus citissimē recipere consuerint.

34. Quibus rebus, perturbatis nostris novitāte pugnā, tempore opportunissimo Cæsar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu hostes constitērun, nostri se ex timōre receperunt. Quo facto, ad laccusundum et ad committendum praelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suo se loco continuat, et, brevi tempore intermisso, in castra legiones rediēt. Dum hæ geruntur, nostris omnibus occupātis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discesserunt. Secūtāe sunt continuos complures dies tempestātes, quae et nostros in castris continērent, et hostem a pugnā prohibērunt. Intērim barbarī nuncios in omnes partes dimiserunt, paucitatemque nostrōrum militum suis prāedicavērunt, et, quanta prāda faciendae, atque in perpetuum sui liberandi, facultas darētur, si Romanōs castris expulissent, demonstrāvērunt. His rebus celerīter magnā multitudine peditātūs equitātūsque coactā, ad castra venērunt.

35, Cæsar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus accidērat, fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritāte pericūlum esflēgerent; tamen nactus equites circiter triginta,
quos Commius Atrébas, de quo 1ante dictum est,² secum transportavērat, legiōnes in acie pro castris constituit. Commis-
so prēlio, diuitius nostrōrum militūm impētum hostes ferre non potuērant, ac terga vertērunt. Quos ²tanto spatio ³sec-
cūti, quantum ²curse ⁴et viribus efficēre potuērant, complū-
res ex iis occidērunt; deinde, ⁵omnibus ⁶longē latēque afflic-
tis incensīque, se in castra recepērunt.

36. Eōdem die legāti, ab hostibus missi ad Cāsārem de pace, venērunt. His ²Cāsār numērum obsidum, quem ant-
tea imperavērat, duplicāvit, eosque in continentem addūcī ²hjussit, quōd, propinquā ³die ⁴aquinoctii, infirmis navibus, ⁴hiēmi ⁵navigatioinem subjiciendam ³non existimābat. Ipse, idoneām tempestātem nactus, paulō post medium noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolūmes ad continentem pervē-
runt; sed ex his onerariāe duae ⁶eosdem, quos reliquae, ⁷port-
tus capēre non potuērant, et paulo infrā delātāe sunt.

37. ⁸Quibus ²ex navibus cum essent exposīti milītes circ-
cīter trecentī, atque in castra contendērent, Morīni, quos Cāsār, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacātos reliquērat, spe ⁹praedē adductī, primō ⁷non ita magno suōrum numēro circ-
sumstetērunt, ac, ⁸si sese interfīci nollent, ⁹arma ponēre jussērunt. Cūm illī, ⁹orbe factō, sese defendērunt, celerīter ad clamōrem homōnum circīter millia sex convenērunt. Quā ²re nunciātā, Cāsār omnem ex castris equitātum suis ⁰auxilio ⁰misit. Intērim nostri milītes impētum hostium sus-
tinuērunt, atque amplius horis ⁹quatuor fortissīmē pugna-
vērunt, et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complūres ex iis occi-
dērunt. Postea verō quàm equitātus nostēr in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armīs ¹⁰terga vertērunt, magnūsque eōrum numērus est occīsus.
38. Cæsar postéro die Titum Labiēnum legātum, cum iis legionībus, quas ex Britanniā reduxērat, in Morīnos, qui re-
belliōnem fecérant, misit. Quī, a cūm propter siccītātes pa-
lūdum, quō se recipērent, b non habērent c (quo perfugio d
superiōre anno fuērant usi), omnes ferè in potestātem Labi-
ēni venērunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legāti,
qui in Menapiōrum fines legiōnes duxērant, omnībus eōrum
agris vastātis, frumentis succīsīs, ædificiīs incensis, quōd
Menapii se omnes 1 in densissīmas silvas abdiderant, se ad
Cæsārem recepērunt. Cæsar in Belgis omnium legiōnum
hiberna constituit. Eō duae omnīno civitātes ex Britanniā
obsīdes misērant; reliquae neglexērant. His rebus gestīs,
ex līterīs Cæsāris dīerum e vigintī supplicatio a Senātu de-
crēta est.

*a 39, 5.  
b § 140, 5.  
c § 140, Obs. 4.  
*d § 121, R. XXVI.  
*e § 106, R. VII.  

BOOK V.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I Cæsar’s second expedition into Britain—Chap. 1-23. II. War with Ambiorix—Chap. 24-54 III. Insurrection among the Tre-viri repressed—Chap. 55-58.

1. ¹ Luciō Domitio, Appio Claudio, consulibus, discēdens ab hibernis Cæsar in Italiam, ut quotannis facēre consuērat, legātīs impērat, quos legionibus præsecērat, uti, ² quarumplurī-ìnas ³ possent, hiēme ⁴ naves ædificandas ⁵ veteresque refici-ìendas curārent. Eārum modum formamque demonstrat. ⁶

² Ad celeritātem onerandī subductionesque paulō facīt humili-ōres, quām quibus ⁷ in ⁸ nostro mari uti consuevīmus; atque id eo ⁹ magis, quōd propter crebras commutationēnēm aëstuum minūs magnōs ibi fluctus fiēri cognovērat: ad onēra et ad multitudīnēm jumentōrum transportāndam paulō latiōres, quām quibus ¹⁰ in relīquis utīmūr marībus. Has omnes ¹¹ acturias impērat fiēri, quām ad rem multōn humilītās ¹² adjūvat. Ea, quae sunt usiī ⁴ ad armandas naves, ex His-paniā apportārī jubet. Ipse, conventībus Galliae citerīoris peractis, in Illyricum profiscicētur, quōd a Pirustīs finītumam partem Provinciā incursionibus vastari audiēbat. ¹³ Eō cūm venisset, civitātibus ¹⁴ milītes impērat, certumque in locum convenīre jubet. Quā ¹⁵ re nunciātā, Pirustīs legātos ad eum mittunt, qui ¹⁶ doceant, nihil ēārum rerum publicō factum consilio, sēsequre parātos esse demonstrant, ¹⁷ omnībus rati-o-ñibus ¹⁸ de injuriis satisfacēre. Acceptā oratīōne eōrum Cæsar obsīdes impērat, eosque ad certam diem addūci jubet: nisi ita secērint, sese bello civitātem persecutūrum de-

¹ § 134, Obs. 6, 3d. ² 37. ³ ³7. ⁴ § 138, 5. ⁵ § 131, R. XLI. ⁶ ⁶ § 132, Obs. 6. ⁷ ⁷ § 141, Obs. 2, 4th. ⁸ ¹08, 4. ⁹ § 125, R. & ⁵ 1. ¹ ¹ § 129, R.
DE BELLO GALlico.

monstrat. His ad diem adductis, ut imperavērat, arbitros inter civitātes dat, 1 qui litem aestimant a poenamque constituant. 2

2. His confectis rebus 2 conventibusque peractis, in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur, atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cūm venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis, singulari militum studio, in summa omnium rerum inopiā, circiter sexcentas ejus genēris, cujus 2 supra demonstrāvimus, naves et longas viginti octo invēnit 3 instructas, 4 neque multitūm abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus dedūci possent. 5 Collaudātīs militibus 4 atque iis 5 qui negotio praesuērant, quid sīri velit, ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium conveniēre ju bet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam 5 transmissum 6 esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum 7 triginta a continenti. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum, 8 reliquit: ipse cum legionibus 6 expeditis quatuor et equiti bus octingentis in fines Trevirorum profisciscitur, quōd hic neque ad concilia veniēbant, neque imperio 8 parēbant, Germanosque transrhenānos sollicitāre dicebantur.

3. Hæc civitas longē plurīmum totius Galliae equitiā valet, magnasque habet copias pedītum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstrāvimus, tangit. In ea civitāte duo 1 de principātu inter se contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cingetōrīx: ex quibus 7 alter, simul atque 8 de Cēsāris legionumque adventu cognītum est, ad eum venit: se suosque omnes in officio futūros, neque ab amicitia Populi Romāni defecturos confirmāvit; quāque in Trevīris gerentur, 1 ostendit. At Indutiomārus equitātum peditatūmque cogēre, 9 10 isque, 4 qui per aētatem in armis esse non potērant, in silvam Arduennam abdītis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevirorum a flumīne Rheno ad initium Remōrum pertīnet, bellum parāre 10 instituit. Sed postea quàm nonnullī principes ex

---

a § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.  
19, 1.  
b § 99, Exc. 2.  
124, 13.  
c § 140, 3.  
5 § 106, R. VII.  
§ 106.R.VIII.Obs.10.  
d 109, 2.  
h 112, R. V.  
m § 144, R. LVII
ea civitâte, et familiaritátē Cingetōrīgis adducti et adventu nostri exercítus perterríti, ad Cæsārem venérunt, et de suis privátiōnem rebus ab eopetēre cæpérunt, 1 quoniam civitāti consulère non possent: a Indutiōmārus, veritus b ne c ab omnibus desererētur, legātōs ad Cæsārem mittit; sese d idcirco ab suis discédère atque ad eum venire noluisse, quō facilius civitātem in officio continēret, ne omnis nobilitātis discēssu plebs propter imprudentiam e laberētur. Itaque esse civitātem in suā potestāte, seque, si Cæsar permittēret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suas civitāscique fortūnas ejus fidēi e permissūrum.

4. Cæsar, etsi intelligēbat, quā de causā ca dicerentur, e quāque eum res ab instituto consilio detrēret, e tenem, ne aestātem in Trevīris consumēre cogerētur, f omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparātīs, Indutiōmārum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venīre g jussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominātim evocavērat, consolātus h Indutiōmārum hortatusque est, uti in officio permanēret: nihilō tamen secius, principībus Trevirōrum ad se convocātis, hos singillātim Cingetōrigi conciliāvit: quod cum i merito ejus ab se fieri intelligēbat, tum j magni k interesse arbitrābatur, ejus auctoritātem inter suos quamplurīmūm valēre, cujus tam egregiam in se voluntātem perspexisset. l Id factum gravīter tullit Indutiōmārus, 4 suam gratiām inter suos minui; et, qui m jam antè inimīco in nos animo fussset, 5 multō graviūs hōc dolore exarsit.

5. His rebus constitūtīs, Cæsar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervēnit. Ibi cognoscit, quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte rejectas. 6 cursum tenēre non potuisse, atque eōdem, unde erant protectae, revertisse reliquas parātas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus in-

---

1 § 140, Obs. 2. 2 § 140, 5. 4 124, 8.
3 § 140, 1, 2d. 5 § 122, R. XXVIII.
6 § 140, Obs. 6, & 121. 7 90, 4. 1 § 141, Obs. 7.
8 94, 4, & § 145, R. 9 115, 1. 2 § 141, R. III.
structas invēnit. Eōdem totius Galliāe equitātus convēnit, numēro a millium quatuor, principesque omnībus ex civitātibus: ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexērat, relinquēre in Galliā, reliquis obsīdum loco a secum ducēre, decrevērat; quōd, cūm ipse abesset, motum Galliāe verēbātur.

6. Erat unā cum ceterīs Dumnōrīx Ėduus, de quo ab nobis 1antea dictum est. Hunc secum habēre in primis constituerat, quōd eum 2cupidum rerum b novārum, cupidum imperii, magni anīmi, c magnae inter Gallos auctoritātis, c cognovērat. Accedēbat huc, quōd jam in concilio Ėduorum Dumnōrīx dixērat, sibi a Cæsāre regnum civitātis deferri: quod e dictum Ėdui gravīter ferēbant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causā legatos ad Cæsarem mittēre audēbant. 3Id factum ex suis hospitibus Ėcser cognovērat. Ille omnībus primō precībus 4petēre contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur; partim, quōd insuētus navigandi 5mare timēret; partim, quōd religionībus sese dicēret impediri. Posteaquam id obstinātē sibi d negāri vidit, omni spe impetrandi ademtā, principes Galliāe solicitāre, sevocāre singūlos hor- tarīque cōpit, ut in continentī remanērent; 6metu territāre non sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitāte b spoliāretur: id esse consilium Cæsāris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliāe interfīcēre verērētur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necāret: 6 6fidem reliquis interponēre, jusjurandum poscēre, ut, 7quod 1esse ex usu Galliāe intellēxissent, commūni consilio administrārent. Hac a complurībus ad Cæsarem dēferēbantur.

7. Quā e re cognōtā, Cæsar, 8quōd tantum civitātī Ėduae dignitātis k tribuērat, coērcendum atque dēterendum, 1quiscumque rebus posset, Dumnōrigem statuēbat; quōd 9longiūs ejus amentiam progrēdi vidēbat, 10prospiciendum,
ne quid a sibi b ac rei publicae nocere posset. Itaque dies c circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod 2 Corus ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem c omninis tempōris in his locis flare consuevit, dabat opēram, ut in officio Dumnorīgem continēret, d nihilō tamen secius omnia ejus consilium e cognoscēret: d tandem, idoneam nactus tempestatem, milites equitesque conscendēre naves jubeat. At, 4 omnium impeditis animis, Dumnorīx cum equībus Æduorum a castris, insciente Ĉæsāre, domum e discedēre cœpit. Quā re nunciātā, Ĉæsar, intermissā profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitātūs ad eum insequendum mittit, retrahīque f impērat: si vīnum faciat neque g parent, interficī h jubet: nihil hunc h se absente pro sano factūrum arbitrātus, qui præsentis imperium neglexisset. i

6 Ille enim revocātus resistēre ac se manu defendēre suorumque fidem implorāre cœpit, sēpe clamītans, "libērum se liberamque civitātem" esse." Ilī, ut erat imperātūm, circum-sistunt atque homīnem interficiunt; at Ædui equītes ad Ĉæsāre omnes revertuntur.

8. His rebus gestis, Labiēno in continente cum tribus legiōnibus et equībus millibus duōbus relictō, ut portus tuerētur d et rem frumentarium providēret, d quaeque in Galliā gererentur f cognoscēret, d 7 consiliumque pro tempōre et pro re capēret, d ipse cum quinque legiōnibus et 8 pari numĕro equīum quem in continenti relinquēbat, solis occasu m na-ves solvit, et, leni Afrīco provectus, mediā circiter nocte m vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit, et, 9 longiūs delātus estu, ortā luce, sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum cursus, āestus commutationēm 10 secūtus, remis contendit, ut eam partem insulā capēret, d quā optimum esse egressum superiore aestāte cognovērat. Quā in re admōdum fuit

---

a § 116, Obs. 3. 
b § 112, R. V. 
c § 131, R. XLI. 
d § 140, 1. 2d. 
e § 130, 4. 
f 90, 4. 
g § 93, 1, (and not.) 
h § 145, R. 
i § 141, R. III. 
j § 108, R. XII. 
k § 131, R. XL. 
m § 131, R. XL.
militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoris gravibusque navibus, non intermisso remigandi labore, longarum navium cursorum adaquarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore: neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed, ut postea Caesare ex captivis comperit, cum magnae manus eorum convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae (qua cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentis uno erant visae tempore), a littore discesserant ac se in superiore loca abdidierant.

9. Caesare, exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad locum contendit, eo minus veritus navibus quam in littore molli atque aperto delicatas ad anchoram relinquebat; et praesidio navibus Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse, noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim, hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi, equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et praelium committere cæperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu, se in silvas abdidierunt, locum nacti, egregie et natura et opere munitorum, quem domestici bellii, ut videbat, causâ jam antè præparavērunt: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praecūsi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant, nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibēbant. At milites legiones septimae, testudine facta, et aggere ad munitiones adjecto, locum cepērunt eosque ex silvis expulérunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesare prosēqui vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diei consumtā, munitiōni castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

a § 67, 5, Note.  
§ 140, 5.  
§ 136, Obs. 5, (cum)  
b § 140, Obs. 3.  
§ 141, Obs. 2, 4th.  
k 109, 2.  
c § 106, Obs. 3, (causă)  
§ 114, R.  
§ 126, R. III.  
d § 111, R.  
§ 112, R. XVII.


---

rant: sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello* imperiōque præsecérant.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, 1 quos b natos in insulā ipsā, memoriā prodītum dicunt: marītīna pars ab iis, qui prædæ ac belli inferendi causā ex Belgis transī- rānt; qui omnes ferē iis nominibus civitātum appellantur, quibus c orti ex civitātibus eō pervenērunt, et bello illātō ibi remansērunt atque agros colērē sunt. Honōnīnum est infinita multitudō, 3 creberrīmaque ādīcīa, 4 ferē Galli- cīs d consimilia: pecōrum magnus numērus. Utuntur aut aere, c aut ātalēis ferreis, ad certum pondus examīnātis, pro nummō. Nascītur ibi 6 plūnum album in mediterraneīs regionībus, in marītīmis serrum; sed ejus exigua est 7 copia: aere e utuntur importāto. 8 Materia cujusque genēris, ut in Galliā, est, prāter fagum atque abītēm. Lepōrem et gallīnam et ānsērem gustāre, fās non putant; hēc tamen alunt 9 anīmi voluptatis causā. 10 Loca sunt temperātōra, quàm in Galliā, 11 remissiorībus frigoriībus.7

13. Insulā naturā 12 triquetrā, cujus unum latus est contra Galliām. Hujus latēris alter angūlus, qui est 13 ad Cantium, quo ferē omnes ex Galliā naves appel·luntur, ad orientem solem; inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet circūter millia passuum quingenta. Alērum vergit 14 ad Hispaniām atque occidentem solem, quà ex parte est Hibernia, 16 dimidio b minor, ut āstimātur, quàm Britannia; 16 sed pari spatio k transmissus, atque 1 ex Galliā, est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insulā, quàe appellātur 17 Mona; cómplures præterea minōres objectæ insulāe existimantur; de quibus c insulīs nonnullī scripserunt, 18 dies m continuos trīginta sub brumā, esse noctem, 9 Nos nihil de eo percontātionībus reperiebāmus, 19 nisi certis ex aquā mensūris breviō-
res esse, quàm in continente, noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitūdō latēris, ut fert illōrum opinio, septingentōrum millium. Tertium est contra septentriones, cui partī nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angulus latēris maxīmē ad Germaniam spectat: huic milliā passuum octingentā in longitudīnem esse existimatur. Ita omnīs insūla est in circuitu vicīs centum millium passuum.

14. Ex his omnībus longē sunt humanissīmi, qui Cantium incōlunt, quāe regio est marītīma omnis; neque multum a Gallicā diffīrunt consuetūdīne. Interiōres plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lactē et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes verò se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod cœruleum effīcit colōrem, atque hoc horridiōre sunt in pugnā aspectu; capillōque sunt promissō atque omni parte corpōris rasā, et præter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent denique inter se commūnes, et maxīmē fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum libēris; sed, si qui sunt ex his nati, eōrum habentur libēri, quo primūm virgo quaēque deducta est.

15. Equītes hostium essedariīque acrīter prælio cum equitātū nostro in itinēre conflīxerunt, tamen ut nostri omnībus partībus superiōres fuērint, atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint: sed complurībus interfsectis, cupidīās' insecūti, nonnullos ex suis amisērunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentībus nostriis atque occupātīs in munitiōne castrōrum, subītō se ex silvis ejecērunt, impetūque in eos facto, qui erant in statīōne pro castris collocāti, acrīter pugnavērunt: duabusque submissīs cohortībus a Cæsāre, atque his primīs legiōnum duārum, cūm hāc, perexiguō intermisso loci spatio inter se, constitissent, novo genēre pugnē perterrītis nostriis, per medios audacissīmē perrupērunt, sequre inde in-

a § 132, Obs. 3.  
b § 126, R. III.  
c § 112, R. II.  
d § 145, R.  
e 51.  
f § 121, Obs. 2.  
g § 126, R. V.  
h § 106, R. VII.  
i § 136, Obs. 5, (cum)  
k § 136, Obs. 5, (a.)  
l § 106, R. X  
m § 107, R. X
colūmes recepērunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tri-
būnus militum, interficītur. Illī, plurībus immissīs cohortī-
bus, repelluntur.

16. Toto hoc in genēre pugnā, 1 cūm sub oculus omnīum
ac pro castrīs dimicārētur, 2 intellectum est, 3 nostros 4 prop-
ter gravitātem armātūrāe, quōd neque insēqui 5 cedentes pos-
sent, neque ab signīs discedēre audērent, minus aptos esse
ad hujus genēris hostem; equītēs 6 autem magno cum peri-
cūlo dimicāre, 5 propērea quōd illī etiam consultō plerumque
4 cedērent, 6 et, cūm paulūm ab legiōnibus nostros removī-
sent, ex essēdis desilirent 5 et pedībus 7 dispāri prācio con-
tendērent. Equestrīs autem prāelii ratio et cedentībus 4 et
insequentībus par atque idem pericūlum inferēbat. Acce-
dēbat huc, ut, nunquam 6 converti, sed rari magnīisque inter-
valīs 6 præliarentur, 8 stationesque dispositas habērent, 9 at-
que 7 alīos alīi deinceps excipērent, integriāque et recentes
defatigātīs succedērent. 10

17. Postēro die procul a castrīs hostes in collībus constit-
ērunt, rarique se ostendēre et 6 leniūs, quàm pridie, nostros
equītēs prāelio lacessēre cæperunt. Sed meridie, cūm Cæ-
sar pabulandi causā tres legiōnes atque omnem equitātum
cum Caio Trebonio legāto misisset, repente ex omnībus par-
tībus ad pabulatōres advolvērunt, sic, 9 utī ab signīs legi-
ōnibusque non absistērent. Nostri, acīter in eos impētu
facto, repulērunt, neque finem sequendi fecērunt, quoad sub-
sidioi 1 confisi equītēs, cūm post se legiōnes vidērent, præcip-
itēs hostes egērunt: magnōque cōrum numéri interfecīto,
neque sui colligendi, neque consistendi, aut ex essēdis de-
siliendi facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā protinus, quae
undīque convenērunt, auxilia discessērunt: 10 neque post id
tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contendē-
runt.

---

1 51, 2. 4 140, 6. 7 132, R. XLII.
b § 145, R. 5 § 129, R. 8 § 140, 1, 4th.
c 96, 2. 6 19, & § 123, R. 9 § 112, R. V
18. Cæsar, cognito consilio eōrum, ad flumen Tamēsin in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod a flumen uno omnino loco b pedibus, atque hoc e agrē, transīri potest. Eō cūm venisset, animadvertit, ad alēram flumēnis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas: ripa autem erat 1 acūtis sudībus d præfīxis munīta; ejusdem generis sub aquā defīxe sudes flumīne d tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captīvis perfugisque, Cæsar, præmissō equitātu, confestim legiones subsēqui jussit. Sed ea e celeritāte atque eo e impētu mili- tes iérunt, 2 cūm capīte solo ex aquā exstarent, f ut hostes im- pētum legiōnum atque equītum sustinēre non possent, g ripas- que dimittērent ac se fugā mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, 3 ut suprā demonstrāvimus, omni de- posītā spe contentiōnis, 4 dimissīs amplioribus copiis, millī- bus circītēr quatuor essedariōrum relictis, itinēra nostra servābat, paululumque 5 ex viā exceedēbat, locisque b impeditis ac silvestribus sēse occultābat, atque iis regionibus, b quibus b nos iter factūros cognovērat, pecōra atque homīnes ex agrīs in silvas compellēbat: et, cūm equītātus noster, liberius h prædandi, vastandique causā, se in agros effundēret, omnī- bus viis 4 notis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittēbat, et magno cum pericūlo nostrōrum equītum cum iis configēbat, atque hoc metu latiūs h vagāri prohibēbat. 6 Relinquebātur, ut neque longiūs ab agmīne legiōnnum discēdī k Cæsar patē- rētur, et tantum 1 in agrīs vastandīs incendiīisque faciendīs Ăhostibus m nocerētur, k quantum labōre d atque itinēre legi- onariī milītes efficēre potērant.

20. Intērim Trinobantes, propē firmissīma eārum regiō- num civītās, ex quā Mandubratius adolescens, Cæsāris fidem secūtus, ad eum in continentem Galliām venērat (cujus pa- ter Imanuentius in ea civitāte regnum obtinuērat, interfec-

---

a 37, 6, Note. 1.  
b § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)  
c 28, 1.  
d § 129, R.  
e 19, loco, Sup. (in.)  
f § 140, Obs. 3.  
g 109, 2.  
h § 116, Obs. 3.  
i § 85, 3.  
j § 140, 1, 1st.  
k 66, 7.  
m 66, 7.
tusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fugā mortem vitavērat), legātos ad Cäsārem mittunt, pollicenturque, sese ei deditūros atque imperāta factūros: petunt, ut Mandubratium ab injuriā Cassivellauni defendat, a atque in civitātem mittat, qui præsit b imperiumque obtineat. b His c Cäsar impērat obsīdes quadraginta frumentumque exercitui, d Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperāta celerīter fecērunt, obsīdes e ad nunērum frumentāque misērunt.

21. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militūm injuriā f prohibītis, Cenimagni, Segontiāci, Ancalites, Bibrōci, Cassi, legationibus missis sese Cäsāri dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longē ex eo loco oppīdum Cassivellauni abesse, silvis e paludibusque munītum, quo f satīs magnus homīnum pectorisque numērus convenērit. (d Oppīdum autem Britannī vocant, cūm silvas impeditas vallo atque fossā muniērunt, g quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā convenire causānt.) Eō proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum repērit egregiē natūrā e atque opēre munītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partībus oppugnāre contendit. Hostes, paulisper morāti, militūm nostrōrum impētum non tulerunt, sesēque alīa ex parte oppīdī ejectārunt. Magnus ibi numērus pecōris repertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

22. Dum hae in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod h esse s ad mare supra demonstrāvimus, quibus f regionibus k quatuor reges prærant, Cingetōrix, Carvilius, Taximagūlus, Segōnax, nuncios mittit, atque his impērat, uti, coactus omnibus copiis, castra navalia de improvi-so l adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ilī cūm ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione factā, multīs eōrum m interfectis, capto etiam nobīli duce Lugotorīge, suos incolūmes reduxērunt. Cassivellaunus, hoc praelio nuniāto, tot detrimentis accep-

---

a § 140, 1, 3d.  b § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.  c § 129, R.  d § 110, R. XV.  e § 123, R. & 5, 1.  f § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)  g § 140, Obs. 3.  h § 145, R. & 91.  i § 90, 6.  k § 112, R. I.  l § 90, 6.  m § 107, R. X.  n § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.  o § 140, Obs. 3.  p § 145, R. & 91.  q § 112, R. I.  r § 90, 6.  s § 107, R. X.
tis, vastatis finibus, maxīmē etiam permōtus defectiōne civitatium, legātos per Atrebātem Commium de dediicione ad Cāsārem mittit. Cāsar, cūm statuisset a hiēmem in continent propter repentīnos Gallīae 1 motus agēre, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id faciliē extrāhi possē intelligēre, obsīdes impērat, at, quid in annos singūlos vectigālis b Popūlo Romāno Britannia pendēret, c constituit; interdīcit atque impērat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio, neu Trinobantībus bellum faciat. d

23. Obsidibus acceptīs, exercītum redūcit ad mare, naves invēnīt 2 refectas. Hīs deductīs, quōd et e 3 captivōrum magnum numĕrum habēbat, et nonnullā tempestāte deperīcērant naves, duobus 4 commeatibus exercītum reportāre instituit. Ac sic accidit, utī ex tanto navium numĕro, tot 5 navigatio-nibus, neque hoc, neque superiōre anno, f ulla omnīno navis, quāe milites portāret, g 6 desiderarēt: h at ex iis, quāe inānes ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, i et 7 priōris commetātūs expositīs milītibus, et quās postea Lābiēnus faciendas curā- vērat numĕro sexaginta, s perpaucē locum capērent; k reli-quāe fere omnes rejicerentur. k Quās1 cūm aliquamdiu Cēsar frustra expectasset, n anni tempōre a navigatio-ne excluderētur, quōd æquinoctium subērat, 9 necessariō angustiūs milītes collocāvit, ac, summā tranquilliūte consecūtā, secundā inītā cūm solvisset vigiliā, primā luce terram atti-git, omnesque incolūmes naves perduxit.

24. 10 Subductīs navībus, conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae m peractō, quōd eo anno 11 frumentum in Galliā propter siccitātes angustiūs provenērat, coactus est alīter, ac superiōritūs annis, f exercītum in hibernis collocāre, legionesque 12 in plures civitātes distribuēre: ex quibus unam in Morīnos ducendam Caio Fabio legāto dedit; altēram in Nervios

---

a § 140, Obs. 4.  e 124, 1.  i § 141, Obs. 3.
b § 106, R. VIII.  f § 131, R, XL.  k Sup. accidit ut.
c § 140, 5.  g § 141, R.I. & Obs.1.  l 38.
d § 140, 1, 3d.  h § 140, 1, 4th.  m § 130, R. XXXVI.
Quintio Cicerōni; tertiam in Essuos Lucio Roscio; quartam in Remis cum Tito Labiēno in confinio Trevirōrum hiemāre jussit; tres in Belgio collocāvit: his Marcus Crassum, quāestōrem, et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Caium Trebonium, legātos, praefecit. Unam legiōnem, quam proxīmē trans Padum conscripsērat, et cohortes quinque in Eburōnes, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorīgis et Cativolci erant, misit. His militibus Quintum Titurium Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cotam, legātos, praesse jussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōnibus, faciūlum inopiam frumentariō sese existimāvit: atque harum tamen omnium hibernā possit mederi posse. Atque hārum omnium hibernā (praeter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dedīrat), millibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiōnes collocāset munitāque hiberna cognovissent, in Galliā morāri constitūt.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, cujus majores in sua civitāte regnum obtinuerant. Huic Cāser, pro ejus virtūte atque in se benevolentia, quōd in omnibus bellis singularī ejus operā fuērat usus, majōrum locum restituērat. Tertium jam hunc annum regnantem inimi- ci palam, multis etiam ex civitāte auctoribus, interfecérunt. Defertur ea res ad Cāsarem. Ille verītus, quōd ad plures pertinēbat, ne civītās eōrum impulsu deficiēret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgio celerīter in Carnūtes proficiscī jubet, ibique hiemāre; quorumque operā cognoverit Tasgetium infectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittēre. Intērim ab omnibus legātis quāestoribusque, quibus legiōnes transdidērat, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munītum.

26. Diēbus circēter quindēcim, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentīni tumultūs ac defectionis ortum est ab

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a § 97, Obs. 2.</td>
<td>19, (legiōnum.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b § 112, R. I.</td>
<td>140, 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c § 112, R. V.</td>
<td>119, R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d § 131, R. XLI.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e § 140, Obs. 6&amp;121,6.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f 67, 5, Note.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ambiorīge et Cativolco: 1 qui 3 cūm ad fines regni sui Sabi-
no 4 Cottāque præstó fuissent, frumentumque in hiberna com-
portavissent, Indutionāri Trevīri nunciis impulsi, suos con-
citavērunt, subitōque oppressi signatoribus, magnā manu 
castra oppugnātum 5 venērunt. Cūm celeriter nostri arma 
cepissent valhumque ascendissent, atque, ùnā ex parte His-
pānis equītūs emissis, equestri prōelio 6 superiōres fuissent, 
desperatā re, hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt. Tum 
suo more conclamavērunt, uti alīquī ex nostrīs 7 ad collo-
quium prodīrent; habēre se, quæ 8 de re commūnī dicēre 
vellent, 9 quibus rebus controversiās 10 minūi posse sperārent. 11
27. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causā Caiūs Arpineius, 
eques Romānus, familiāris Quintī Titurīi et Quintus Ju-
nius ex Hispaniā quidam, qui jam antē 5 missu Caesaris ad 
Ambiōrigem ventitāre consuevērat: apud quos Ambiōrix 6 ad 
hunc modum locūtus est: 7 4 Sese pro Cæsāris in se benefi-
ciis 8 plurīmum ei confītēri debēre, quōd ejus operā stipen-
dio 6 liberātūs esset, 12 quod Aduatūcis finitiīmis suis pendère 
consuēsset: 13 quodque ei et filiūs et fratris filiūs ab Cæsāre 
remissi essent, quos Aduatūci, obsīdum numēro missos, 
apud se in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent: 14 neque id, quod 
fecērit 9 de oppugnatione castrōrum, aut judicio 15 aut volun-
tāte suā fecisse, 16 sed coactu 17 civitātis; 18 suāque esse ejus-
mōdi imperia, ut non minus habēret 18 juris in se multōtō, 
quām ipse in multitudīnem. Civitāti 1 porro hanc fuisse belli 
causam, quōd repentīnāe Gallōrum conjuratiōnī resistēre non 
potuōrit: id se facilē 11 ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quōd 
non adeo sit 18 imperītus rerum, ut suīs copiīs 19 Popūlum Ro-
mānum se superāre posse confidat: sed esse Galliō com-
mūne consiliō; omnībus hibernīs Cæsāris oppugnandīs 
hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio altērē legiōnīm subsidio
venire posset: a non facile Gallos Gallis b negare potuisse, præsertim cum de recuperandâ communi libertate consilium initum videretur. 1 Quibus c quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habère se nunc rationem officii pro beneficiis Cæsāris; monère, oreare Titurium d 2 pro hospitio, ut suæ ac militum salūti consulet: magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; e hanc f afflōre biduo. 3 Ipsōrum esse consilium, velintne g prius, quam finiti mi sentiant, h eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum deducere, quorum alter h millia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter i paulō amplius ab his absit. Illud se pollicēri et jure jurando confirmāre, tutum iter per fines suos datūrum; 4 quod k cūm faciat, et l civitāti sese consulēre, quod hibernis levētur, et l Cæsāri pro ejus meritis gratiam referre." Hác oratōne habitā, discēdit Ambiōrīx.

postrēmo, "quid esse 1 levius aut turbius, quâm, 2 auctōre hoste, 3 de summis rebus capōre consilium?"

29. Contra ea Titurius, "serō factūros," 4 clamītabat, "cum majōres hostium manus, adjunctis Germānīs, convenissent: aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proxīmis hibernis esset acceptum, brevem consulendi esse occasiōnem: 4 Cæsārem 5 arbitrāri prosectum 6 in Italiam: neque alīter Carnūtes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisset captūros, neque Eburōnes, sì ille addesset, tantā cum contentiōne nostrī ad castra ventūros esse: 4 non hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germānīs dolōri Ario-visti mortem 7 et superiōres nostrīs victorias: 6 ārdēre Galmiam, 8 tot contumeliis acceptīs sub Popūli Romānī imperium redactam, superiōre gloriā rei militāris extinctā." Postrēmo, "quis hoc sibi 9 persuadēret, 7 sine certā re Ambiorīgem ad ejusmodī consilium descendisse 9? Suam sententiām ad utramque partem esse tutam: 9 si nil sit durius, nullo periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūros; si Gallia omnis cum Germānīs consentiat, 9 unam esse in celeritāte posītam salūtem. Cotta quidem atque eōrum, qui dissentīrent, consilium quem habēret 9 exitum? In quo si non 10 prāses periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne 9 fames esset pertimescenda."

30. 11 Hāc in utramque partem disputationē habītā, cūm a Cotta 12 primisque ordinibus acīter resisterētur, 13 "Vincēte," inquit, "si ita vultis," Sabinus, 14 et id clariōre voce, 9 ut magna pars militūm exaudīret: "neque is sum," inquit, "qui 9 gravissīmē ex vobis mortis periculō terrear: 15 hi sapient, et si gravius quid accidērit, abs te rationēm reposcent: qui, 9 si per te liecat, perendīno die cum proxīmis hibernis conjuncti, commūnem cum reliquis bellī casum sustineant, 16 nec rejecti et relegāti longē ab ceterīs aut ferro aut fame intereant."
31. 1 Consurgit ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, "ne suā dissensióne et pertinaciam rem in sumnum periculum dedúcant: b facilem esse rem, seu maneant, c seu proficiscantur, d si modò unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contrà in dissensióne nullam se salútem perspicēre." 3 Res disputatione ad medium noctem perducitur. Tandem 4 dat Cotta permótus manus; supérat sententia Sabīni. 5 Pronunciátur, d primā luce itūros: consumítur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cùm sua quisque miles circumspiciēret, 6 quid secum portāre posset, 9 quid ex instrumento hibernōrum reliquēre cogerētur. 7 Omnia excogitāntur, quare nec sine pericūlo maneātur et languōre militum et 8 vigiliis periculum augeātur. Primā luce sic ex castris profīscuntur, 9 ut quibus 4 esset persuāsum, 8 non ab hoste, sed ab hominē amicissīmo Ambiorīgō consilium datum, 10 longissīmo agmīne 1 maxīmisque impedimentis.

32. At hostes, posteāquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisique de profectione eōrum sensērunt, collocātis insidiis bipartite in silvis opportūno atque occulto loco, a 11 millibus passuum circiter duōbus, Romanōrum adventum expectābant; et, cùm 12 se major pars agmīnis in magnam convallēm demisisset, ex utrāque parte ejus vallis subitō se ostendērunt, novissimosque premēre et primos prohibēre ascensu atque iniquissīmo nostrīs 1 loco prælium committēre cæperunt.

33. Tum demum Titurius, 13 ut quī nihil antē providisset, trepidāre, 14 concursāre, cohortesque disponēre; 12 hæc tamēn ipsa timidē atque ut 15 eum omnia defícere viderentur: quod 16 plerumque iis 17 accidēre consuevit, qui 18 in ipso negotio consilium capēre coguntur. At Cotta, qui 19 cogitāsset, hæc posse in itinēre accidēre, atque ob eam causam profectionis

---

a 67, 5. Note.  
b § 140, 1, 3d.  
c § 140, 6.  
d 51, 2.  
*§ 140, 5  

f § 126, R. III.  
g § 141, Obs. 4.  
h 98, 2.  
i § 129, R.  
jk § 132, Obs. 5.  

1 § 111, R.  
m § 144, Obs. 6.  
  
 o § 140, 1, 2d, (ila.)  
p § 112, R. IV.
auctor non fuisset, nullá in re commùni salútì deérat, et in appellandís cohortandísque militìbus, imperatóris; et in pugná, militís officia præstábát. Cúmque propter longitudiném agmínis 2 minimús facilè per se omnia obíre, et, quod quoque loco c faciendum esset, b providère possent, 3 jussérunt pronunciáre, ut impedimenta relínuérunt atque 4 in orbem consistérent. Quod 4 consilium etsi in ejusmódí caùs reprehendendum non est, tamen 5 incommódè accidit: nam et nostris militibus e spem minuit, et hostes ad pugnam alacritàres effécit, quod non sine summo timóre et desperatióne id factum videbátur. Præterea accidit, quod f fiéri necesse erat, ut 6 vulgò milités ab signis discédérent, 8 que quísque córum g carissìma habérét 1 ab impedimentis petère atque abripère properáret, 5 clamóre ac fletu omnia complebréntur. 8

34. At 6 barrāris 8 consilium non defuit: nam duces córum totá acie pronuntiáre jussérunt, "ne quis ab loco discédéret; 9 illírum 8 esse prædam, atque illis reservári, quæcumque Románi reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoria posita existimárent." 10 Erant et virtúte et numeró pugnando 1 pares nostri, tamen etsi ab duce et a fortúnâ deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salútis in virtúte ponébant, et, quótes quæque cohors procurréret, ab eá parte magnus hostium numerus cadébat. Quá 4 re animadversá, Ambiórix pronuntiári jubet, ut procúl tela conjiciant, neü propiús accédant, et, quam in partem Románi impétum fecérint, 11 cedant (levitáte armórum et quotidiano exercitatioño 12 nihil ıüs nocéri posse m): rursus se ad signa recipientes sequántur.

35. Quo 4 praècepto ab ıis diligentissímè observáto, cum quæpiam cohors ex orbe excessérat atque impétum fecérat, hostes velocissímè refugiébant. Intérim éam parént nudiári necessè erat et ab latère aperto tela récipi. Rursus, cúm

---

a § 112, R. I.  
b § 140, 5.  
c § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)  
d 38.  
e § 123, R.  
§ 141, Obs. 8.  
f 37, 9, Note. 3.  
g § 103, R. XII  
h § 107, R. X.  
i § 128, R.  
j 66, & 68, 2.  
k 66, & 68, 2.  
l 66, & 68, 2.  
m 66, & 68, 2.  

15
in eum locum, unde erant progressi, reverti coeperant, et ab ipsis, qui cesserant, et ab ipsis, qui proximi steterebant, circumveniebantur; sin autem 1 locum tenere vellent, nec vir
tuti 2 locus relinquebatur, neque ab tantâ multitudine conjecta tela conserti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommo
dis conflictati, multis vulneribus acceptis, resistebant et, magnâ parte diei consumtâ, cum a primâ lute 3 ad horam octâvam pugnar
tur, nihil, quod ipsis 4 esset indignum, committerant. Tum Tito Balventio, 4 qui superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, viro fortii et magnae auctoritatis, 3 utrumque femur tragulâ transije
tur. Quintus Lucanius, ejusdem ordinis, 4 fortissimè pugnans, dum circumvento filio 7 subvenit, interficitur: Lucius Cotta, legatus, omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans, 5 in adversum os fundâ vulneratur.

36. His rebus permotus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorígem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretèm suum, Cneium Pompeium, ad eum mittit, rogâtum, 6 ut sibi 7 militibusque parcat. Ille appellâtus respondit: "si velit secum colloqui, licère; sperâre, a multitudine impe tràri posse, quod 4 ad militum salutem pertineat; 1 6 ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se 1 suam fidem interpo
nenère." Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, "si videâtur, pugnâ ut excédant et cum Ambioríge una colloquantur: sperâre, ab eo de sua ac militum salute impe tràre posse." Cotta se ad armatum hostem itùrum negat 7 atque in eo constîtut.

37. Sabinus, quos 8 in praesentia tribunos militum circum se habèbat et primòrum ordinum centuriónes, se sequi jubet, et, cum proprius Ambiorígem 8 accessisset, jussus arma abjicere, imperátam facit, suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Intérim, dum de conditionibus inter se agunt, longiorque

---

1 § 93, Obs. 10.
2 § 126, R. III.
3 § 119, R.
4 § 110, Obs. 1.
5 § 106, R. VII.
6 § 112, Obs. 5, 2d.
7 § 143, 1.
8 § 140, 6.
9 66, 7.
10 § 145, R.
11 § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)
consultò ab Ambiorīge instituitur sermo, paulātim circumventus interficītur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt, impetūque in nostros facto, ordinēs perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficītur cum maximā parte mīlitum, reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi: ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquiler, cūm magnā multitudīne hostium premerētur, aquīlam intra vallum projecit, ipse pro castris fortissīmē pugnans occidiētur. 2 Illī aegrē ad noctem oppugnationēm sustīnēnt: noctu 3 ad unum 4 omnes, desperātā salūte, se ipsī interficiunt. Pauci ex praelio elapsi, incertis itineribus 5 per silvas ad Titum Labiēnum legātūm in hiberna pervenient atque eum de rebus gestīs certīorem faciunt.

38. Hāc victoria 4 subīlātus Ambiōrīx, statim cum equītātu in Aduatūcos, qui erant ejus regno d finītīmi, proficisciētur; neque noctem neque diem intermitīt, peditatumque se subsēqui jubet. Re demonstrātā, Aduatucisque concitātīs, postēro die in Nervios pervēnīt, hortaturque, “ne sui 6 in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi 6 Romānos, pro iis, quas accepērīnt, 6 injuriis, occasīōnem dimittant: interfectos esse 1 legātos duo magnamque partem exercītūs interīsse” 1 demonstrat; 5 “nihil esse negotii, subītō oppressam legiōnem, quā cum Cicerōne hiēmet, 6 interfici;” 6 se ad eam rem profitētur adjutōrem. 1 Facili hāc oratīōne Nervīs persuādet.

39. Itāque, confestim dimissīs nuncīs ad Centrōnes, Gru- diōs, Levācos, Pleumoxios, Geidūnos, qui omnes sub eōrum imperio sunt, quàm maxīmas manus possunt, cogunt, et de improviso ad Cicerōnis hiberna advōlant, nondum ad eum famā de Titurīi morte perlātā. 7 Huique quoque accīdit, quod m fuit necesse, ut nonnulli mīlitēs, qui lignationis munitionis-
que causā in silvas discessissent,\(^a\) repentino equītum adventu interciperentur.\(^b\) His circumventis, magnā manū Eburus, Nervii, Aduatūci atque horum omnium socii et clientes, legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt: nostri celerūter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. \(^1\)Ægrè is dies sustentātur, quōd omnem spem hostes in celeritāte ponēbant, atque, hanc adeptī\(^c\) victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres\(^d\) confidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Cæsārem confestim ab Cicerōne litterae, magnis\(^2\) propositīs præmiis, si pertulissent. Obsessīs omnibus viis, missī\(^e\) intercipiantur. Noctū ex ea materiā, quam munitiōnis causā comportavērant, \(^3\) turres admodum centum et vigintī excitantur incredibili celeritāte: quae\(^f\) deesse opēri\(^g\) videbantur, persiciuntur. Hostes postēro die, multō majoribus copiis coactus, castra oppugnānt, fossam complent. Ab nostrīs eādem rationē,\(^h\) quà pridī, resistitūr: hoc idem deinceps reliquis fit diēbus. Nulla pars nocturni tempōris ad labōrem intermititur: non ægris,\(^i\) non vulnerātis, facultas quētis datur: quae cuncte\(^j\) ad proxīmī diēī oppugnatio nem opus sunt, noctū comparantur: multae\(^k\) præusta" sudes, magnus muralium pilōrum numèrus instituitur; \(^5\) turres contabulantur, pinnae loricāque ex cratibus attexuntur. Ipsē Cicēro,\(^6\) cūm tenuissimā valetudīne\(^m\) esset, ne nocturnum "quidem sībi tempus ad quiētem reliquēbat, ut\(^n\) ultro militūm concursi ac vocībus\(^p\) sībi parēre cogerētūr.

41. Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui\(^q\) alīquem sermōnis adītum causamque amicitāte cum Cicerōne habēbant, collōqui sese velle dicunt. \(^9\) Factā potestāte, eādem, quae Ambiōrīx cum Titurio egērat, commemorānt, "omnem esse in armīs Galliām, Germānōs Rhenum transisse, Cæsār-

\(^a\) § 141, R. I. \(^f\) 37, 2. \(^i\) 37, 8, Note. 2.  
\(^b\) § 140, 1, 4th. \(^g\) § 112, R. I. \(^m\) § 106, R. VII.  
\(^c\) 105, 1. \(^h\) § 129, R. \(^n\) 121, Note. 2.  
\(^d\) § 103, R. \(^i\) 67, 1. \(^o\) § 140, 1, 1st, (ita.)  
\(^e\) 19, (homines.) \(^k\) § 126, R. III. & 19. \(^p\) § 112, R. V.
is reliquorumque hiberna oppugnāri." Addunt etiam de Sabini morte. 1 Ambiorīgēm ostentant fidēi faciendae causā: "errāre 2 eos" dicunt, "si quicquam ab his praeidii sperent," qui suis rebus 3 diffidant; 4 sese tamen 5 hoc esse in Cicero-nem Populumque Romanum animo, 6 ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent" atque hanc inveterāscēre consuetūdinem nolint:

licēre illis 7 incolūmis per se ex hibernis discēdēre, et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci." 3 Cicēro ad hæc unum modō respondit. "Non esse consuetūdinem Popūlī Romānī, ullam accipēre ab hoste armāto conditio-nem: si ab armis discēdēre velint, 8 se 9 adjutōre utantur, 8 legatosque ad Cāsārem mittant: 9 sperāre, 10 pro ejus justitiā, quae petiērint, 11 impetrāturos." 4

42. Ab hāc spe repulsi Nervii, vallo 12 pedum undēcim et fossā pedum quindēcim hiberna cingunt. Hæc et superiō-rum annōrum consuetūdine 13 a nostrīs cognovērant, et, quos-dam de exercitu nactū captīvōs, ab his docebantur: 17 sed, nullā ferramentōrum copiā, quae sunt ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis 14 cespītem circumcidere, manibus 15 sagulisque 9 terram exhauriēre cogeantur. Qua 16 k quidem ex re homīnum multitudō cognoscē potūt: nam minus horis tribus 10 millium decem in circūitu munitōnem perfecérunt: reliquisque diēbus turres ad altitudinem 2 allī, 11 falces testudinesque, quas iīdem captīvī docuērant, parāre ac facēre cœpērant.

43. Septīmo oppugnatiōnis die, maxīmo coorto vento, 12 ferventes fusīli ex argillā 1 glandes fundīs et 13 servefacta jacūla in casas, quae more 14 Gallicī stramentīs erant tectē, jacēre cœpērant. Hæ celerēter ignem comprehendērant et venti magnitudīne 16 in omnem castrōrum locum 14 distulērant. Hostes, maxīmo clamōre 16 inseçtī, quasi partā jam atque explorātā victoriā, turres testudinesque 15 agēre et scalis val-

---

1 § 140, 2. 2 § 112, R. V. 3 § 121, R. XXVI. 4 § 141, Obs. 3. 5 § 139, 2. § 42, Obs. 5. 6 § 128, Obs. 2. 7 § 106, R. VII 8 § 129, R. 9 § 140, 1. 10 § 140. 1, 1st.
lum ascendère cæpérunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea præsentia animi fuit, ut, cūm undique flammâ torre rentur, maximâque telòrum multitudine prementur, suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intelligentes non modò demigrandi causâ de vallo decedère nemo, sed pāne ne respiceret quidem quisquam; ac tum omnes acerrímë fortissimèque pugnârent. Hic dies nostri longè gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus hostium numerus vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultīmi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissâ flammâ, et quodam loco turri adacta et continuante vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo, quo loco recesserunt suosque omnes removérunt; nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire vellent, vocāre cæpérunt, quorum progressi auxus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus conjectis deturbāti, turrisque succensa est. 

44. Erant in ea legiōne fortissimi viri centuriōnes, qui jam primis ordinibus propinquarent, Tito Pulfiō et Lucius Varènus. Hi perpetuas controversias inter se habēbant, quinam anteferrētur, omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatibus contendēbant. Ex iis Pulfiō, cūm acerrímë ad munitiōnes pugnarētur, “Quid dubitas,” inquit, “Varène aut quem locum probandæ virtŭtes tuae spectas? hic, hic dies de nostris controversiis judicabit.” Hæc cūm dixisset, procédit extra munitiōnes, quâque pars hostium confertissima visa est, in eam irrumpit. Ne Varènus quidem tum vallo sese contīnet, sed omnium virtūs existimationem subsequitur. Tum, mediocris spatio relictō, Pulfiō pilum in hostes mittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem transäsent, quo percusso et examināto, hunc scutis prote-
gunt hostes, 1 in illum tela universi conjiciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulßioni a et verútum in balteo desfigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educère conanti b dextrae moratūr manum; impeditum c hostes circumspicit. 2 Succurrit inimicus illi d Värenus et laboranti e subvenit. Ad 3 hunc se confestim a Pulßione omnis multitūdo convertit, 4 illum verūto transfixum arbitrantur. Occursat oiiús gladio cominusque rem gerit Värenus atque, uno interfecto, reliquis paulum propellit: dūm cupidiús instat, 5 in locum dejectus inferioriorem conedit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulsio atque ambo incólumes, compluribus interfectis, summâ cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortûna 6 in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter altéri 4 inimicus auxilio 7 salutisque esset, neque dijudicāri posset, uter utri 8 virtūte 9 anteaerendorus videretur.

45. 7 Quanto i erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maximē quod, magna parte militum confestā vulneribus, res ad paucitātem defensōrum pervenerat, tanto 1 crebriores literæ nuntiique ad Cæsarem mittebantur: quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrōrum militum cum cruciātu necabant. Erat 8 unus intus Nervius, nomine Vertīco, 9 loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsидione ad Cicerōnum perfugērat, suānumque ei fidem præstitērat. Hic 10 servōc spe libertātis magnisque persuādet præmiis, ut litteras ad Cæsarem desērat. Has ille in jaculo illigātas effert, et, Gallus inter Gallos sine ullam suspicione versātus, ad Cæsarem pervēnit. Ab eo 1 de 11 pericūlis Cicerōnis legionisque cognoscitur.

46. Cæsar, acceptis litteris 12 horā circiter undecimā dieī, statim nuncium in Bellovācos ad Marcum Crassum quaes-

---

a § 110, Obs. 1, c § 112, R. V.
b 19, (et.) & a. e § 114, R. c § 126, R. III.
c 19, (eum.) d § 128, R.
d § 111, R. e § 132, R. XLIII. Obs.

6, & 44, 8, & 47.

k 63, & § 123, R.

l 67, 1.
torem mittit; cujus hiberna abērant ab eo millia passuum viginti quinque. Jubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci, celeriterque ad se venīre. Exīt cum nuncio Crassus, Altērum ad Caium Fabium legātum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines legiōnem addēcat, 1 quā sībi d iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēno, 2 si reipublicā commōdo facēre possēt, cum legiōne ad fines Nerviōrum veniāt: 3 reliquam partem exercītūs, quōd paulō abērat longiūs, non putat expectandam; 4 equītes circiter quadrīngentos ex proxīmis hibernis cogit.

47. Horā circiter tertīā ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die millia 5 passuum viginti progredītur. Crassum Samarobrīvā 6 præsīcit, legiōnemque ei 8 attribuit, quōd ibi impedimenta exercītūs, obsides civitātum, 3 litteras publicas, frumentumque omne, quod eō 4 tolerandā hiēmis causā devexērat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātūm erat, non ita multum morātus, in itinēre cum legiōne currit. Labiēnus, interītu Sabīni et cāde cohortium cognītā, cūm omnes ad cūm Trevirōrum copiā venissent, 9 verītus, ne 1 si ex hibernis fugē simulēm profectionem fecisset, hostium impētum sustinēre non possēt, prāsentim quos 8 recenti victoriā efferri scīret, litteras Cāsāri remittit, quanto cum pericūlo legiōnem ex hibernis educērūs esset: 1 5 rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit: docet, omnes peditātūs equitātūsque copias Trevirōrum trīa millia 7 passuum longē ab suis castris consēdisse.

48. Cāsār, consilio ejus probāto, etsi, 6 opinione  m trium legiōnēm dejectus, ad duas rediērat, tamen unum commūnis salūtis auxiliūm in celeritāte ponēbat. Venit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fines. Ibi ex captīvis cognoscit, quam apud Cicerōnem gerantur, 1 quantōque in pericūlo res sit. 1 Tum cuidam  e ex equītibus Gallis magnīs prēmiīs persuādet,
ut ad Cicerônem epistolam deferat. Hanc Græcis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne, interceptâ epistolâ, nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur.\footnote{1} Si adire non possit, monet, ut tragulam cum epistolâ,\footnote{2} ad amentum deligat, intra munitiônes castrorum abjiciat.\footnote{3} In litteris scribit, se cum legionibus profectum celeriter afficeret: horâtur, ut pristînam virtûtem retineat. Gallus, periculum veritus, ut erat præceptum, tragulam mittit. \textit{Hæc 3 caso ad turrim adhäsit, neque\footnote{4} ab nostris biduo animadversa; tertio die a quodam militate conspiciatur; demta ad Cicerônem defertur. Ille\footnote{5} perlectam in conventu militum recitat, maximaque omnes lætitiâ afficit.} Tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventíus legionum\footnote{6} expulit.

49. Galli, re cognitä per exploratóres, obsidiônem relinquunt, ad Cæsarem omnibus copiis contendunt; ea erant armatôrum circiter millia\footnote{d} sexaginta. Cicero, datâ facultate, Gallum ab eödem Verticône, quem supra demonstravimus, repêtit; qui litteras ad Cæsarem referât;\footnote{e} hunc\footnote{f} admonet, iter cautè diligenterque faciat:\footnote{g} perscrìbit in litteris, hostes ab se discessisse, omnemque ab eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus\footnote{h} litteris circiter media nocte Cæsar alâtis suis facit certiores, eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat: postêro die luce primâ movet castra, et circiter millia\footnote{i} passuum quatuor progressus, trans vallem magnam et rivum multitudinem hostium conspicátur. Erat magni periculi\footnote{k} res, cum tantis copiis iníquo loco\footnote{l} dimicâre. Tum, quoniam liberatûm obsidiône\footnote{m} Cicerônem scíebat, eoque omnino remittendum de celeritate existimábât, consédit, et, quàm aquissîmo potest loco,\footnote{1} castra communî. Atque hæc, etsi erant exigua per se, vix honînum\footnote{k} millium septem, præsertim nullus cum impedimentis,\footnote{6} tamen angustiis viârum
quam maxime potest, contrahit, eo consilio, ut in summam contentionem hostibus a veniat. Intem, speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis, explorat, quo commodissimo b itinere vallem transire possit.

50. Eo die, parvulis equestribus praelis ad aquam factis, utrique sese suo loco continent; Galli, quod ampliores copias, quae nondum conveniunt, expectabant; Caesar, si forte timoris simulatio hostes b in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris praelio contendere; c si id efficere non posset, ut, exploratis iteribus, minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. c Primam luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit, praeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere, d seque in castra recipere d jubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri, d portasque obstrui, atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatio timoris agi jubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias transducent, aciemque iniquo loco constituunt; nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis, propriis accedunt, et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus concurrunt; praeconibusque circumnissis pronuntiari jubent, "seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem:" 6 ac sic nostros contemserunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus cespitum, quod e a non posse intrurumpere videbant, alii vallum se indidero, alii fossas compleere incipere. Tum Caesar, omnibus portis eruptione factae equitatuque emissos, celebriter hostes dat in fugam, sic, uti omnino pugnandi causae resistere nemo; magnumque ex eis numerum occidit, atque omnes armis f exuit.

52. Longius prossequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque intercedebant, neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum

---

a § 110, Obs. 1. c § 140, 1, 2d. e § 109, 2.

b § 93, Obs. 10. d § 90, 4. f § 125, R.
relinqui vidēbat, omnia suis incolumibus copis eōdem die ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institūtas turres, testudines, munitionesque hostium admirātur: 1 productā legiōne cognoscit, non decīmum quemque esse relictum milītem sine vulnēre. Ex his omniōbus judiōcat rebus, quanto cum pericūlo et quantā cum virtūte res sint a administrātāe: Cicerōnem 2 pro ejus merīto, legionemque collaudat: centuriones singillātim tribunosque milītum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisset virtūtem testimonio Cicerōnis cognovērat. De caso Sabīni et Cotta certīus ex captīvis cognoscit. Postēro die conciōne habētā 3 rem gestam propōnit, milites consolātur et confirmat: quōd detrimentum 4 culpā et temeritāte legātī sit b acceptum, hoc aequiōre animō serendum docet, quōd, beneficiō Deōrum immortalium et virtūte cōrum 7 expiāto incommodō, neque hostibus diutina lātatio, neque ipsis longior dolor relinquātur. c

53. Intērim ad Labiēnum per Remos incredibilī celeritāte de victoriā Cāsāris fama perfertur, ut, cūm ab hibernis Cicerōnis abesset millia passuum circiter sexaginta, eōque 8 post horam nonam dīci Cāsar pervenisset, ante medium noctem ad portas castrōrum clamor orītur, quo clamōrem significat victorīae gratulatiōque ab Remis Labiēno e fieret. Hac famā ad Tревīros perlātā, Indutiomārus, qui postēro die castra Labīēni oppuguāre decrevērat, noctu profūgit, copiasque omnēs in Tревīros redūcit. Cāsar Fabium cum legiōne in sua remittit hiberna, ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam 9 trinis hibernis hiemāre constituit; et, quōd tanti motus Galliāe extitērant, totam hiēmem ipse ad exercitum manēre decrēvit. Nam illo incommodo de Sabīni morte perlāto, omnes ferē Galliāe civitātes de bello 10 consulēbant, nuncios legationesque in omnes partes dimittēbant, et 11 quīd reliquī consiliī capērent atque unde initium belli fieret, explorābant, nocturnāque in locis desertīs 12 concīlia

a § 140, 5.   e 77, 5.   g § 126, R. III.  
b § 140, Obs. 2. d § 140, 1, 3d. f § 106. R. VIII.
habēbant. Neque ullam serè totius hiēmis tempus sine sollicitudine Cæsāris intercessit, 1 quin 2 alīquem de conciliis ac motu Gallōrum nuncium accipēret. 3 In his ab Lucio Roscio legāto, quem legiōni decimæ tertii præsecērat, certior est factus, magnas Gallōrum copias eārum civitātum, quæ 2 Armorīcæ appellantur, oppugnandi sui causā convenisse: neque longius 6 millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abfuisset, sed nuncio allato de victoriā Cæsāris, discississe, adeo ut fugae similis discussus viderētur.

54. At Cæsar, principibus cuju̇sque civitātis ad se evocātis, aliās 6 territando, cūm se scire, quae fiērent, denunciāret, aliās cohortando, magnam partem Galliāe in officio tennit. Tamen Senōnes, quae est civitas in primis firma et magnā inter Gallos auctoritātis, Cavarīnum, quem Cæsar apud eos regem constituērat (cuju̇s frater Moritasgus, adventū in Galliam Cæsāris, cuju̇sque majōres regnum obtinuērant), interficēre publico consilio conātī, cūm ille præsensisset ac pro fugisset, usque ad fines inseculi regno 4 domōque expulērunt: et, missis ad Cāsārem satisfaciendi causā legātis, cūm is omnēm ad se senātum venīre pussisset, 3 dicto audientes non fuērunt. 4 Tantum 6 apud homines barbāros valuit, esse repertos aliās principes belli inferendi, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commutātionem 5 attulit, ut præter Æduos et Remos, quos 6 præcipuo semper honōre Cæsar habuīt, 7 altēros pro vetēre ac perpetuā erga Popūlum Romānum fide, 7 altēros pro recentibus Gallīci belli officiis, 8 nulla serè civitās suērit non 7 suspecta nobis. 9 Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cūm complurībus aliis de causīs, tum maxime, 10 quòd, qui virūtē belli omnibus gentibus præferebantur, tantum se ejus opiniȯnis deperdidisse, ut a Popūlo Romāno imperia perferrent, gravissīme dolēbant.

55. Trevīri vero atque Indu̇somārūs totius hiēmis nullum tempus intermisērunt, quin 5 trans Rhenum legātos mittērunt,

56. Ubi intellexit 2ultró ad se veníri, altérâ ex parte Senónes Carnutesque conscientiá facinóris instigári, altérâ Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Románis parâre, neque sibi 1voluntariórum copias desíre, si ex finibus suis pròrèdi cæpisset: armá tum concilium indicit (hoc more Gallórum est initium belli), quo lege commu ní omnes pubéres armáti convenìre consúerunt; qui 5 ex iis novissímus venit, in concpectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, 4alterius princípem 5factiónis, generum suum (quem suprâ demonstrávimus, Cæsáris secútum fide m, ab eo non discíssisse), hostem judicat, bonique ejus publicat. His rebus confectis, in concilio pronuntiáta, accéssum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliíisque com pluribus Galliæ civitatibus, húc iter factūrum per fines Remórum, eorumque agros populáturum, ac priús, quám id faciat, Labiëni castra oppugnáturum: quae fieri velit, præcipit.

57. Labiënus, cúm et loci naturá et manu multissímis causris sese tenéret, de suo ac legiónis perículo nihil timébat; ne quain occasiöm rei bene gerendæ dimittétet, co- gitábât. Itaque a Cingetorige atque ejus propínquís ora-
tiōne Indutiomāri cognitā, quam in concilio habuērat, nun-
cios mittit ad finitimas civitātes, equitesque undique evōcāt:
iis certum diem conveniendi dicit. Intērīm propē quotidie
cum omni equītātu Indutiomārus sub castris ejus vagabātur,
aliās ut situm castrōrum cognoscērēt, aliās colloquendi aut
territandi causā: equītes plerumque omnes tela intra vallum
cogniciēbant. Labiēnus suos intra munitiōnes continēbat, tim-
orisque opiniōinem, quibuscumque potērat rebus, augēbat.

58. Cum majōre in dies contentiōne Indutiomārus ad castra accedēret, nocte unā, intromissis equītibus omnium
finitimārum civitātum, quos arcessendos curāvērat, tantā
diligentiā omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuēt, ut
nullā ratiōne ea res enunciāri aut ad Treviros perferri pos-
set. Intērīm ex consuetūdine quotidiānā Indutiomārus ad
casta accēdit, atque ibi magnam partem diēi consuōmit;
equītes tela conjiciunt, et magna cum contumeliā verbōrum
nostros ad pugnam evōcant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso,
ubi visum est, sub vespērum dispersi ac dissipāti discē-
dunt. Subītō Labiēnus duābus portis omnem equītānum
emittit; praēcipit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque
in fugam conjectis (quod fore, sicut accīdīt, vidēbat), unum
omnes petant; Indutiomārum; neu quis quem priūs vulnē-
ret, quam illum interficium vidērit, quōd morā reliquōrum
spatium nactum illum effugēre nolēbat: magna propōnit
iis, qui occidērīnt, præmia: submittit cohortes equītibus
subsidiō. Comprōbat homīnis consilium fortūna; et, cum
unum omnes petērent, in ipso flumīnis vado deprehensus
Indutiomārus interficītur, caputque ejus refertur in castra:
redeuntes equītes, quos possunt, consecantur atque occi-
dunt. Hāc re cognitā, omnes Eburōnum et Nerviōrum,
quae convenērunt, copiāe discēdunt; pauloque habuit post id
factum Cæsar quietiōrem Galliam.

a § 123, R. b 124, 12. c § 140, 1, 2d. d 37, 7, Note 2. e § 136, Obs. 7. f § 98, Obs. 10. g 37, 9, Note 3. h § 140, 1, 3d. i § 141, Obs. 3.
BOOK VI.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.


1. Multis de causis Caeser, majorem Galliæ motum expectans, per Marcum Silanum, Caium Antistium Reginum, Titum Sextium, legatos, 1 dilectum habère instituit: simul ab Cneio Pompeio proconsule petit, 2 quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipublicë causâ remanēret, a quos b ex Cisalpīnă Galliā consūlis sacramento rogavisset, a ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci jubēret: c magni d interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliāe existimans, tantas vidēri Italiae facultātes, e ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modō id brevi tempōre 3sarcīri, sed etiam majoribus adaugēri copiis posset. f 4 Quod cūm Pompeius et reipublicæ et amicitiae tribuisset, b celeriter confecto per suas dilecta, tribus ante exactam hiēmen et constitūtis et adductis legiōnibus, duplicatoque eārum cohortium numēro, quas cum Quinto Titurio amisērat, et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid Popūli Romāni disciplīnā atque opes possent. 1

2. Interfecto Indutiomāro, 5 ut docuīnus, ad ejus propinquos a Treviris imperium desertur. Illi finītīmos Germānos solicitāre et pecuniam pollicēri non desistunt: cūm, ab proxīmis imperāre non possent, ulteriōres tentant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus, jurejurando inter se confirmant, 6 obsidibusque de pecuniā cavent: Ambiorīgem sibi societāte et sēdēre adjungunt. Quibus rebus cognītis, Cæsar, cūm

---

a § 141, Obs. 7.  
b 37, (milites.)  
c § 140, 1, 3d.  
d § 122 R, XXVIII.  
e § 145, R.  
f § 140, 1, 1st.  
g 38.  
h 81, 1.  
i § 140, 5.
undique bellum parāri vidēret, Nervios, a Aduatūcos, Menapios, adjunctis Cisrhenānis omnibus Germānīs, esse b in armis, Senōnes 1 ad imperātum non venire, et cum Carnuībus finitimisque civitātibus consilia communicāre, a Trevirīs Germānos a crebris legationibus solicitāri; b maturius sibi c de bello cogitandum putāvit.

3. Itāque 2 nondum hiēme confectā, proxīmis quatuor coactis legionibus, de improviso in fines Nerviōrum contendit, et priūs, quàm illi aut convenire aut profugēre possent, d magnō pecōris atque homīnum numēro capto, atque eā prædā militibus e concessā, vastatīisque agrīs, in deditionem venire atque obsides sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter confecto negotio, rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo f vere, 3 uti instituērat, indicto, cūm reliquī, præter Senōnes, Carnūtes, Trevisorīque, venissent, initium belli ac defectiōnis hoc esse arbitrātus, g ut 4 omnia postponēre videētur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiōrum transfert. Confīnes erant hi Senonībus, h civitatemque patrum memoriā conjunxerant; 5 sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur. 6 Hac re pro suggestu pronunciātā, eōdem die cum legionibus in Senōnes profiscītur, magnīisque itineribus eō pervēnit.

4. Cognōto ejus adventu, Acco, qui princeps ejus consiliī fuērat, jubet in oppīda multitudīnem convenire; 7 conantibus, e priusquam id efficī posset, d adesse Romānos a nunciātur; necessariō 8 sententiā desistunt, legatosque 9 deprecandi causā ad Cāsārem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduōs, quorum antiquitūs erat in fide civitās. Libenter Cæsar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam, excusationemque accipit; 10 quod aestiūrum tempus instantis belli, non quæstiōnis, esse arbitrātur. Obsidibus imperātis centum, hos Aeduis custodiēndos tradit. Eōdem Carnūtes legātos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remīs, quorum erant in clientēlā: eādem

---

a § 145, R. b § 147, R. LXI.
c § 140, 4. d § 126, R. III.
e 106, 1. f 17, 1.
 g § 111, R. h i 107, 1.
ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Caesar, equitesque in- pérat civitatibus.⁴

5. Hác parte Galliæ pacatâ, totus et mente et animo in bellum Trevirôrum et Ambiorîgîs insistit. Cavarînum cum equitàtu Senônum secum proficisci jubet, ne quis aut ex hujus iracundìa, aut ex eo, quod meruérat, odio civitâtis, motus existat.⁵ His rebus constitûtis, quòd ³ pro explorató habébat, Ambiorîgem prælio non esse concertatûrum, reli- lua ejus consilia anîmo circumspiciébat. Erant Menapìi propinquì Eburônium finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvis- que muniti, qui uni ex Galliâ de pace ad Cæsârem legatos nunquam misérant. Cum iis esse hospitium Ambiorîgî sciébat: item per Trevíros venisse Germânis in amicitiam, cognovérat. Hæc priùs illîs detrâhenda auxilia existimá- bat, quâm ipsum bello lacesérret; ne, desperâtâ salûte, aut se in Menapios abdéréret, aut cum Transrhenânís congrédi cogerêtur. Hoc inito consilio, totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labiènum in Trevíros mittit, duasque legiones ad eum proficisci jubet ipsum cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios profisciscitur. Illî, nullâ coactâ manu, loci præ- sidio nêret, in silvas paludescque confugiunt, suâque eòdem conférunt.


---

⁴ § 123, R. & 5, 1. ⁵ § 111, R. ⁶ § 126, R. III. & 5, 1.
⁵ § 140, 1, 2d. ⁷ § 112, R. II. ⁸ § 119, R.
⁹ § 129, R ⁴ § 110, Obs. 1. ¹ § 121, R. XXVI
DE BELLO GALLICO.


8. Vix agmen novissīmum extra munitīones processērat, cūm Galli, cohortātī inter se, "ne sperātam prādam ex manibus dimittērent; 6 longum esse, perterrītis Romānīs, Germanōrum auxilium expectāre, neque suam pati dignitā-

---

a § 136, R. LII. d § 132, Obs. 5. b § 140, 6.
b § 132, R. XLII. & e § 129, R. i § 140, Obs. 1.
§ 120, Obs. 3. f 109, 2. k § 112, R. V.
c 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d. z § 106, R. VII. l § 140, 1, 2d.
tem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum,\textsuperscript{a} præsertim fugi-\textsuperscript{entem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant;\textsuperscript{b} flumen\textsuperscript{c} trans-\textsuperscript{ire et iniquo loco\textsuperscript{d} prælium committère non dubitant. Quæ\textsuperscript{e} fore suspicatūs Labiēnus, ut omnes citra flumen elicēret, \textsuperscript{1}cædem usus simulatiōne\textsuperscript{f} itinēris, placidē progrediēbātur. Tum, præmissis paulum impeditimentis atque in tumulo quo-\textsuperscript{dam collocātis, \textquoteright Habētis,\textquoteright inquit, \textquoteright milītes,\textsuperscript{g} quam petitis, \textsuperscript{2}facultātem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco\textsuperscript{h} tenētis: \textsuperscript{1}præstāte eandem nobis\textsuperscript{i} ducībus virtūtem, quam sæpemūnē-\textsuperscript{ro imperatōri præstītīstis: adesse eum et hæc coram cer-\textsuperscript{nēre, existimāte.

\textsuperscript{1}Simul signa ad hostem convertī\textsuperscript{z} aciem-\textsuperscript{que dirīgi jūbet, et, paucīs turmis \textsuperscript{4}præsidīo ad impedi-\textsuperscript{menta dimissīs, reliquis equītes ad latēra dispōnit. Celer-\textsuperscript{ter nostri clamōre sublāto pila in hostes immittunt. Illī, ubi \textsuperscript{5}præter spem, quos\textsuperscript{b} fugēre credēbant,\textsuperscript{6} infestis signīs\textsuperscript{i} ad se ire vidērant, impētum modō ferre non potuērunt, ac, primo concursī\textsuperscript{1} in fugam conjectī, proxīmas silvas petiē-\textsuperscript{rant: quos\textsuperscript{b} Labīēnus equītāta consectātus, magno numēro interfecto, complurībus captīs, paucīs pōst diēbus civitātem recēpīt: nam Germānī, qui auxīlio\textsuperscript{i} veniēbant, perceptā Trevirōrum fugā, sese domum contulērunt. Cum iīs pro-\textsuperscript{pinqui Indutiomāri, qui defectionis auctōres fuērant, comi-\textsuperscript{tāti eos, ex civitāte excessērē. \textsuperscript{7}Cingetorigī, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravīmus, principātus atque imperium est traditum.

9. Cæsar, postquām ex Menapiis in Trevisō venit, duā-\textsuperscript{bus de causis Rhenum transire constituit: quarum erat al-\textsuperscript{tēra,\textsuperscript{a} quod auxilia contra se Trevirīs misērant; altēra,\textsuperscript{m} ne Ambiōrixx ad eos receptum habērett. His constitūtīs rebus, paulum supra eum locum, quo antē exercītum transduxērat, facēre pontem instituit. Notā atque institūtā ratīōne, magno

\textsuperscript{a} § 116, Obs. 4. \hspace{1em} \textsuperscript{e} § 117. \hspace{1em} \textsuperscript{i} § 129, R. 
\textsuperscript{b} § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) \hspace{1em} \textsuperscript{f} § 123, R. \hspace{1em} \textsuperscript{k} 38. 
\textsuperscript{c} § 145, R. & 38. \hspace{1em} \textsuperscript{g} 90, 4. \hspace{1em} \textsuperscript{l} § 114, Obs. 4, (illis.) 
\textsuperscript{d} § 121, R. XXVI. \hspace{1em} \textsuperscript{h} 38, & 91. \hspace{1em} \textsuperscript{m} 27, 10.
militum studio, paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Tre-
víris præsidio ad pontem relicito, ne quis ab iis subitò motus
orírètur, reliquas copias equitatumque transducit. Ubii,
qui antè obsídes dedérant atque in deditiōnem venérant,
purgandi sui causá ad eum legátos mittunt, qui doceant,
"neque ex suá civitáte auxilia in Trevíros missá, neque
ab se fidem læsám:" petunt atque orant, "ut sibi parcat,
ne commūni odio Germanórum innocentes pro nocentibus
pénas pendant:" si amplius obsidúm velít, dare pollicen-
tur. Cognítá Cásar causá repérít, ab Suévis auxilia missa
esse: Ubii órum satisfactionem accipit; aditus viasque
in Suevos perquirit.

10. Interim paucis post diebus sit ab Ubii certior, Suëvos omnes
unum in locum copias cogère, atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint
imperio, denunciare, uti auxilia ped-
tátūs equitatušque mittant. Hís cognitís rebus, rem fru-
mentaríam providet, castrís idoneum locum deligít, Ubii
impérat, ut pecóra dedúcunt suaque omnia ex agris in op-
pída consérant, sperans, barbarós atque imperítos homínés,
inopiá cibariórum afflictos, ad initium pugnandi condití-
nem possedécúi: mandat, ut crebro explorařores in Su-
evós mittant, quaeque apud eos gerantur, cognoscant. Illi
imperáta faciunt, et, paucis diebus intermissis, referunt,
"Suëvos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuncii de exercítu
Romanórum venérint, cum omnibus suis sociorumpque copiis,
quas coégissent, penitus ad extrémos fines sese recepisse:
silvam esse ibi infinitá magnitudine, que appellátur. Bac-
enís: hanc longè introrsus pertinère, et, pro nativo muro
objectam, Cheruscos ab Suëvis, Suevosque ab Cheruscis,
injuriis incursionibusque prohibère: ad ejus initium silvæ
Suëvos adventum Romanórum expectáre constituísse."
11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non aliēnum, esse vidētur, de Galliāe Germanieaque moribus, et quo diffērant eae natiōnes inter sese, proponēre. In Galliā, non solūm in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pa-gis partibusque, sed pæne etiam in singulis dominibus, factiōnes sunt: earumque factiōnum princīpes sunt, qui sum-mam auctoritātem eōrum judicio habēre existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium judiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. 

5 Idqae ejus rei causā antiquītūs institūtum vidētur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiōrem auxiliī egēret: suos enim quīisque opprīmi et circumveniri non patītur, neque, alīter si faciant, ullam inter suos habent auctoritātem. 

7 Haec eādem ratio est in summā totius Galliāe: namque omnes civitātes in partes divisae sunt duas.

12. Cūm Cāsar in Galliam venit, alterius factiōnis princīpes erant Ėdui, alterius Sequāni. Hi cūm per se minus valērent, quōd summa auctoritas antiquītūs erat in Ėduis, magnāque eōrum erant clientēlāe, Germānos atque Arioquistum sibi adjunxerant, eosque ad se magnis jactūris policitationibusque perduxerant. 

Praelīs verō complūribus factis secundis, atque omni nobilitāte Ėduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecessērant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Ėduis ad se transducērent, obsidesque ab iis principium filios accipērent, et publicē jurāre cogērent, nihil se contra Sequānos consiliōs initiōros; et partem finitimi agri, per vim occupatam, possidērent: Galliāque totius principā-tum obtinērent. 

Quā necessitāte adductus Divitiācus, auxiliī petendi causā Romam ad Senātum profectus, infectā re rediērat. Adventu Cāsāris factā commutatioōne rerum, obsidibus Ėduis reddītis, veteribus clientēlis restitūtis, novis per Cāsārem comparātīs (quōd hi, qui se ad ĕōrum
amicitiam aggregaverant, meliöre conditione atque equi-
öre imperio se uti vidébant), 1 reliquis rebus eorum, gra-
tiä, dignitatis amplificatä, Sequani principatum dimisérant. In eorum locum Remi successérant; 3 quos quod adæquare apud Cæsarem gratiä intelligebatur, ii, qui propter vetères inimicitias nullo modo cum Æduis conjungi potérant, se in clientélam dicabant. Hos illi diligenter tueban-
tur. Ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatem tené-
bant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longè principes haberen-
tur secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinérer.b

13. In omni Galliä eorum hominum, qui aliiquò sunt num-
iero atque honöre, genera sunt duo: nam plebes pæne servorum habëtur loco, quæ per se nihil audet et nullo ad-
hibëtur consilio. Plerique, cùm aut ãere aliēno, aut mag-
nitudine tributōrum, aut injuriā potentiōrum premuntur, sese in servitūtem dicant nobilibus: in hos eadem omnia sunt jura, quæ dominis in servos. Sed de his duōbus generibus alternum est Druïdum, altērum equitum. Illi rebus a divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privāta procurānt, religiones interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescēntium numerus disciplinæ causâ concurrit, magnōque ii sunt apud eos honöre. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt; et, si quod est admissionem fas-
cinus, si cædes facta, si de hæreditate, si de finibus contro-
versia est, idem decernunt; præmia pænaeque constituunt: si qui aut privatus aut publicus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Hac pæna apud eos est gravissima. Quibus igitur est interdictum, iii numero impiorum ac sceler-
atorum habentur; iii omnes decedunt, aditum eorum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommödi ac-

a § 121, R. XXVI. c § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) 1 § 129, R. 
b § 145, R. e § 103, R. & Obs. 2. m § 112, R. II. 
c 109, 2. & § 98, Obs. 4. e § 140, 1, Ist. o § 112, R. I. 
d 39, & 91. 4 § 106, R. VII. p § 140, Obs. 2. 
* § 123, R. k § 126, R. III. r § 112, R. V. 
cipiant: neque iis petentibus jus redditur, neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus Druidibus praest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, si qui ex religiosis excellit dignitae, succedit; at, si sunt plures pares, suffragio a Druidum deligitur, nonnunquam etiam armis a de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnaturi, quae regio totius Galliae media b habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt, eorumque decretis c judiciisque 3 parent. 

4 Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translatæ esse existimatur: et nunc, qui d 6 diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt,plerumque illò discendi causá proficiscuntur.

14. Druidès a bello abesse consuérunt, neque tribūta unà cum reliquis pendent; 6 militiae vacatiōnem 7 omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati 6 præmiis, 8 et suà sponte a multi in disciplīnam conveniunt, et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versus 9 ediscēre dicuntur: itaque annos nonnulli vicēnos e in disciplīnā permanēnt. Neque fas esse existimant, 10 ea litterís mandāre, cùm in reliquis serè rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Greciis utantur c litterís. 11 Id mihi duābus de causis instituisses videntur; quòd neque in vulgum 12 disciplīnam esserī velint, neque eos, qui discant, s litterís c consi-sos, minus memoriam et studere: quod 9 serè plerisque accidit, ut præsidio literarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoria remittant. i 13 In primis hoc volunt persuadère, 14 non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios: atque hoc 9 maximè ad virtūtem excitāri putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa præterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de Deorum immortalium vi ac potestate 15 disputant et juventūti tradunt.

---

a § 129, R. d 37, (ii.) e § 141, Obs. 3.
b § 103, R. & Obs. 2. e 26, 1. b 37, 9, Note 3.
c § 112, R. V. i § 140, Obs. 3. i § 140, 1, 4th.
15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus, atque aliquid bellum incidit (quod ante Caesaris adventum ferè quotannis accidere solèbat, uti aut ipsi injuriar rent, aut illatas propusarant), omnes in bello versantur: atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habent. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque novērunt.

16. Natio est omnium Gallorum admōdum dedita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, quique in prœlis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis hominibus immolant, aut se immolaturos vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus utuntur; quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse aliter Deorum immortalium numer placari arbitrantur: publiceque ciusdem generis habent institutā sacrificia. Allii immani magnitudine simulācra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent, quibus succinctis, circumventi flammā examinantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto, aut in latrocinio, aut alīquā noxā sint comprehensi, gratiōra Diis immortaliibus esse arbitrantur: sed, cum ejus genēris copia deficiat, ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

17. Deum maxime Mercurium colunt: hujus sunt plurima simulacra, hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinērum ducem, hunc ad quæstus pecuniā mercaturasque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc, Apollinem et Matrem et Jovem et Minervam: de his eandem serè, quam reliquā gentes, habent opiniōnem; Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam opērum atque artificiōrum initia tradere; Jovem imperium caelestium tenere; Martem bella regere. Huic, cum prælio dimicāre constituērunt, ea, quae bello cepērint, plerunque de-

\[a\] 37, 9, Note 3.  \[d\] § 111, R.  \[e\] § 141, Obs. 8.
\[b\] 32, 3.  \[c\] § 106, R. VII.  \[h\] § 145, R.
\[c\] § 123, R.  \[f\] § 125, R.  \[i\] § 101, Obs. 4.
vövent. Quæ superavèrint, animalia capta immolant; reliquas res in unum locum confœrunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstrictos tumulos locis consecratis conspícari licet: neque sǽpe accidit, ut, neglectâ quispiam religiónem, aut capta apud se occultâre, aut posita tollëre audëret: gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciâtu constitûtum est.

18. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognàtos prædicant, idque ab Druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam, spatia omnis tempóris non numéro diérum, sed noctium, finiunt; dies natæs et mensium et annorum initia síc observant, ut noctem dies subsecuâtur. In reliquis vitæ institutis, hocòr fére ab reliquis diffërunt, quod suos libéròs, nisi cùm adolevèrint, ut munus militiæ sustinère possint, palàm ad se adìre non patentur; filiumque puerili ætâte in publico, in conspectu patris assistere, turpe ducunt.

19. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxòribus dotis nomine accepérunt, tantas ex suis bonis, æstimatione factæ, cum dotibus communicant. Hujus omnis pecunia conjunctim ratio habetur, fructusque servantur: uter eòrum vitæ supéràrit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiórum tempórum pervénit. Viri in uxorès, sicut in libéròs, vitae necisque habent potestátem: et, cùm pater familiæ, illustriōre loco natus, decessit, ejus propinquii conveniunt, et, de morte si res in suspícionem venit, de uxoribus in servîlem modum qwestió nem habent, et, si compértum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciâtatas interfûciant. Funérâ sunt pro cultu Galliōrum magnifica et sumtuosâ; omniōque, quæ vivís córdi fuisses arbitrântur, in ignem inforunt, etiam animalia: ac paulò supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constábát, justis funeribus confectis, unà cremabantur.

---

*a § 141, Obs. 3.*  
*b § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)*  
*c 109, 2.*  
*d 19. (animalia.)*  
*e § 140, 1, 1st.*  
*f § 140, 1, 1st.*  
*§ 128, R.*  
*e § 126, R. III.*  
*§ 98, Obs. 6.*  
*h § 98, Obs. 6.*  
*§ 114, R. & 19.*  

17
20. Quae a civitates b commodiis suam rem publicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus c sanctum, si quis quid de republica a finitimis rumore ac fama accepit, uti ad magistratum desiderat, neve cum quo alio communicet: quod sapientes homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terrert, et ad facinus impelli, et de summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus, quae visa sunt, occultant; quaeque esse ex usu judicaverint, multitudo produnt. De republica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.


22. Agriculturae non student; majorque pars victus eorum in lacte, caseo, carne consistit: neque quisquam agrum modum certum at fines habet proprios; sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognitionibusque hominum, qui unâ coërint, quantum, et quo loco visum est, agri attribuunt, atque anno post aliò transire cogunt. Eius rei multas afférunt causas; ne assiduâ consuetudine capti, studium belli gerendi agricultura commù-
tent; ne latos fines parâre studeant; potentioresque humiliares possessionibus expellant; ne accuratiûs ad frigûra atque æstus vitandos ædificent; ne qua oriâtur pecuniae cupiditâs, quà ex re factiônès dissensionesque nascuntur; ut anîmi æquitâte plebem continent, cùm suas quìisque opes cum potentissimiæ æquãri videat.  

23. Civitâtibus maxima laus est, quàm latissïmas circum se vastâtis finibus solitûdines habère. Hoc proprium virtûtis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedère, neque quenquam prope audère consistère: simul hoc se fore tûiores arbitrantur, repentiæ incursiônis timore sublato. Cùm bellum civitas aut illátum defendit, aut infert; magistratus, qui ei bello præsint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestâtem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regionum ata pagorum inter suas jus dicunt, controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quà extra fines cujusque civitatis fiunt; atque ea juventútis exercendae ac desidice minuendæ causâ fiëri prædicant. Atque, ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit, “se ducem fore; qui sequi velint, profiteantur;” consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex iis secuti non sunt, in desertórum ac proditórum numero ducentur, omniumque iis rerum postea fides derogat. Hospites violâre, fas non putant; qui quaque de causâ ad eos veniunt, ab injuriâ prohibent, sanctosque habent; iis omnium domus patent, victusque communicatûr.


---

a § 140, 1, 2d. f § 107, R. IX. i § 141, R. I. I. Obs. 2, 4th.
b § 136, R. LII. g § 136, R. LII. m 112, 5.
c § 98, Obs. 2, & 112, 7. h § 145, R. n § 141, Obs. 3.
d § 140, Obs. 3. i 109, 2. o § 45, I. 1.
e § 110, Obs. 1. k § 112, R. 1. p § 126, R. V.
Itaque ea, quae fertilissima sunt, Germaniae locacircum Hercyniam silvam (quam a Eratosthēni et quibusdam Græcis famâ notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcæ Tectosāgēs occupavērunt, atque ibi consedērunt. Quae b gens ad hoc tempus iis sedibus sese continet, 1 summamque habet justitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem: nunc quoque in eādem inopia, egestāte, patientiā, quà Germaniī, permānent, eōdem victu et cultu corpōris utuntur; 2 Gallis autem Provinciē proprīnas, et transmarinarum rerum notitia, 3 multa ad copiam atque usus largītur. Paulātīm assuefactī superāri, multisque victi prōliis, ne se quidem ipsī cum illis virtūte compārant.

25. Hujus Hercyniae silvæ, quae suprā demonstrāta est, latitūdo novem diērum iter 4 expedito 5 patet: non enim aliūter 6 finiri potest, neque mensūras itinērum novērunt. Oriitur ab Helvetiōrum et Nemētum et Rauracōrum finibus, rectāque flumīnis Danūbii regiōne h pertīnet ad fines Dacōrum et Anartium: hinc se flectit 6 sinistrorsus, diversis ab flumīne regionibus, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit: neque quisquam est hujus Germaniāe, qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvāe dicat, 1 cūm diērum iter 7 sexaginta processerit, 8 aut quo ex loco oriātur, 1 acceptērit. Multa in eā genera 9 serārum nasci constat, quàe reliquis in locis visa non sint: 10 ex quibus, quae maxīmē differeant ab cetēris et 7 memoriae 11 prodenda videantur, hæc sunt.

26. 8 Est bos cervi figura, cuius a mediā fronte inter aures unum cornu existit, excelsius magisque directum his, quàe nobis nota sunt, cornibus. Ab ejus summō, 9 sicut palmae, rami quàm latē diffunduntur. Eādem est feminæ marisque natura, eādem forma magnitudōque cornuum.

---
a § 145, R.  
b § 38, 2.  
c § 121, R. XXVI.  
d § 110, R.  
e § 33, 1.  
f § 132, R. XLII.  
g § 112, R. XVII.  
h § 129, R.  
i § 141, R. I.  
j § 140, Obs. 3.  
k § 140, Obs. 3.  
l § 140, 5.  
m § 141, Obs. 3.  
n § 126, R. III.  
o § 108, 6.  
p § 106, R. VII.
27. Sunt item, quae appellantur 1 Alces. 2 Harum est consimilis capreis b figura et 2 varietas pellium; sed magnitudine c paulo antecedunt, mutilaque sunt cornibus, e et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quieta causa procumbunt, neque, si quo afflictae casu concidertint, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His d sunt arbores pro cubilibus: 4 ad eas se applicat, atque ita, paulum modò reclinatae, quiëtem capiunt: quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus, quò se recipère consuèrent, 6 omnes eo loco aut a radicibus subruunt, aut accidunt arbores tantum, ut summum species eàrum stantium relinquantur. Huc cùm se consuetudine reclinavissent, 5 infirmas arbores pondère affligunt, atque unà ipsæ concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eòrum, qui 6 Uri a appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine c paulo infra elephantos, specie f et colore et figura tauri. Magna vis eorum, et magna velocitas: neque homini, g neque feræ, quam conspexerint, parcunt. Hos studiösè foveis h captos interficiunt. Hoc se labore h durant adolescentes, atque hoc genere h venationis exercent; et, qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus, 7 quæ sint testimonio, f magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescere ad homines, et mansuefiti, 8 ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multùm a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Hæc studiösè conquìsita ab labris argento k circumcludunt, atque in 9 amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

29. 10 Caesáre, postquam per Ubios exploratóres compèrit, Suevos sese in silvas recepisse, l inopiam frumenti veritus, quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germāni agricultūrae student, constituit, non progrödi longius: sed, ne omnino metum reditūs sui barbaris m tolleret, atque ut

---

1 § 103, R. V. 2 § 110, 5. 3 § 106, R. VII. 4 § 103, R. V. 5 § 110, 5. 6 § 128, R. 7 § 129, R. 8 § 123, R. & 19.
eōrum auxilia tardāret, reducto exercitu, partem ultīmam pontis, quae ripas Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitudinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit; atque in extrēmo ponte a turrim tabulatōrum b quatuor constituit, præsidiumque cohortium c duodēcim pontis tuendi causā ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco d præsidiōque Caïum Volcatium Tullum adolescentem præfēcit: ipse, cūm maturescēre frumenta incipērent, d ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus (per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliāe maxīma, atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Trevirōrum ad Nervios pertīnet, milibusque e amplius f quingentis in longitudīnem patet), Lu-cium Minucium Basīlum cum omni equitātū præmittit, 1 si quid celeritāte itinēris atque opportūnāte tempōris proficēre possit; monet, ut ignes fīrī in castris prohibeant, g ne qua ejus adventūs procul significatio fiat: h sese confestim subsēqui i dicit.

30. Basīlus, 2 ut imperātum est, facit; celerīter contrāque omnium opinionēm confecto itinēre, multos in agris inopīnantes deprehendit; eōrum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equībus esse dixerat. 3 Multum cūm k in omnībus rebus, tum k in re militāri potest fortūna. Nam sicut mortuus accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum atque etiam imparātum incidēret, 1 priūsque ejus adventus ab hominibus viderētur, quàm fama ac nuncius adventūs afferrētur; m sic 4 magnā fuit fortūna, n omni militāri instrumento, o quod circum se habēbat, erepto, rhedis equisque comprehensī, ipsum effugēre mortem. Sed hoc eo factum est, quod adificio circumdāto silvā (ut sunt ferō domicilia Gallōrum, qui, vitandi aestūs causā, plerumque silvārum ac fluminum petunt propinquitātes), comites familiaresque ejus

a 17, 1.  
b § 106, R. VII.  
c § 123, R.  
d § 140, Obs. 4.  
e § 122, R. XLII.  
f § 120, Obs. 3.  
g § 140, 1, 3d.  
h § 140, 1, 2d.  
i 94, 3  
j 124, 8.  
k § 140, 1, 4th.  
m § 140, 4.  
n § 108, R. XII.  
o 109, 2.
angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuère-runt. His pugnantibus, illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit: fugientem silvæ texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum, et ad vitandum, multum fortunā valuit.

31. Ambiorix copias suas non conduxerit, quod praelio dimicandum non existimaret, an tempore exclusus et repentinō equitum adventu prohibitus, cūm reliquo exercitum subsēquisti crederet, dubium est: sed certe, dimissis per agros nunciis, sibi quemque consulēre jussit: quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentēs palūdes profugit: qui proxīmi Oceānum fuerunt, hi insūlis sese occultārunt, quas æstus efficere consuerunt: multi, ex suis finibus egressi, se suāque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Cativolcus, rex dimidiæ partis Eburōnum, qui una cum Ambiorīgĕ consilium iniērat, ætāte jam conquestus, cūm labōrem aut belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Ambioriginem, quī ejus consilii auctor fuisset, taxo, cujus magna in Galliā Germaniāque copia est, se examināvit.

32. Segni Condrusique ex gente et numero Germanōrum, qui sunt inter Eburōnes Trevirosque, legātos ad Cāsārem misērunt, orātum, ne se in hostium numero ducēret, neve omnium Germanōrum, qui essent citra Rhenum, unam esse causam judicāret: nihil se de bello cogitavisse, nulla Ambiorīgī auxilia misisse. Cæsar, explorātā re quæstione captivōrum, si quī ad eos Eburōnes ex fugā convenissent, ad se ut reducērentur, imperāvit: si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violārūm negāvīt. Tum copiis in tres partes distribūtis, impedimenta omnium legiōnūm Aduatūcam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc sērē est in mediis Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandī causā
consedérant. Hunc cùm reliquis rebus locum probábat, tum, quòd superiōris anni munitiōnes integràe manábant, ut militum laborem sublevaret.\(^a\) Præsidio\(^b\) impedimentis legiōnem quatuordecimam reliquit, unam ex iis tribus, quas proxīmē conscriptas ex Italiā transduxērat. Eī legiōni\(^c\) castrisque Quintum Tullium Cicerōnem præsīcit, ducentosque equites attribuit.

33. Partito exercītu, Titum Labiēnum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceānum versus, in eas partes, quæ Menapios attingunt, proficisci jubet: Caium Trebonium cum pari legiōnum numero ad eam regiōnem, quæ Aduatūcis\(^d\) adjacēt, depopulandum\(^e\) mittit: ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Sabīm, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduenniae partes ire constituit, quò cum paucis equitibus profectum\(^f\) Ambīriāgem audiēbat. Discēdens,\(^1\) post diem septimum sese reversūrum, confirmat; quam ad diem ei legiōni,\(^g\) quæ in præsidio relinqubātur, frumentum debēri sciēbat. Labiēnum Treboniumque hortātur, si reipublicae commōdo\(^h\) facēre possint, ad eam diem revertantur;\(^i\) ut, rursus communicāto consilio, exploratisque hostium rationibus, aliud bellī initium capēre possent.\(^k\)

34. Erat,\(^2\) ut suprā demonstrāvīmus,\(^3\) manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non præsidium, quod\(^1\) se armis defendēret; sed omnes in partes dispersa multītūdo. Ubi cuique\(^c\) aut vallis abdeda, aut locus silvestris, aut palus impedīta, spem præsidii aut salūtis aliquam offerēbat, consedērat. Hāc loca\(^4\) vicinitatibus\(^m\) erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirēbat, non in summā exercītūs tundā (nullum enim potērat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidēre), sed in singūlis militibus conservandis; quæ tamen\(^6\) ex parte res ad salūtem exercītūs pertinēbat. Nam et prædæ cupid-

---
\(^a\) § 140, 1, 1st. \(^e\) 112, 7. \(^i\) § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5, (ut.)
\(^b\) § 114, R. \(^f\) 98, 2. \(^k\) § 140, 1, 2d.
\(^c\) § 123, R. \(^g\) § 126, R. III. \(^l\) § 141, R. I.
\(^d\) § 112, R. IV. \(^h\) § 129, R. \(^m\) § 111, Obs. 1, 4th.
itas multos longius evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus 1 confertos adire prohibebant. 2 Si negotium confici 2 stirpemque hominum sceleratorem interfici 3 vellet, dimittendae 4 plures manus diducendi que erant milites: si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut 3 instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat prasidio 5 barbāris, 6 neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis 4 de 6 erat audacia. At in ejusmodi difficultatibus, quantum 6 diligentia providēri potērat, providēbatur; ut potius 4 in nocendo aliquid emitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardebat, quām cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur. Cæsar ad finitimas civitātes nuncios dimittīt, omnes ad se evocat spe presitam, ad diripendos Eburōnes, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita, quàm 5 legionarius miles, periclitētur; 6 simul ut, magnā multitudine circumfusā, pro tāli facinōre, stirps ac nomen civitātis tollātur. 7 Magnus undique numeros celeriter convēnit.

35. Hāc in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerebantur, dēque 6 appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Cæsar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituērat. Hic, quantum 5 in bello fortūna possit 6 et 1 quantos 6 affērat 7 casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipātis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstrāvīmus, 8 manus erat nulla, quae parvam modo causam timōris affert. 9 Trans Rhenum ad Germānos pervēnit fama, di-rīpi 5 Eburōnes, atque ultro omnes ad prādam evocāri. 5 Co-gunt equītum duo millia Sigambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fugā Tenchthēros atque Usipētes 9 supra docuimus: transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque, triginta millībus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus prasidiumque ab Cæsāre relic tum: prīmos Eburōnum fines 1 adeunt, multos ex fugā dispersos excipiunt, magno pecōris

---

a 94, 3.  19, 1.  b § 140, 5.  
108, 2.  46, 1.  1 § 141, R. I.  
§ 114, R.  f § 140, 1, 2d.  k 96, 6.  
§ 112, Obs. 1, 2.  e 48, 4.  l § 136, R. I.II.
numéro, cujus a sunt cupidissími barbari, potiuntur. Invitati prædæ. longiús procedunt: 1 non hos palus, in bello latrocin-isque natos, non silvæ morantur: quibus in locis sit b Caesār, ex captivis quærunt; profectum longiús reperiunt, omnem-que exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captīvis, "Quid vos," inquit, "hanc misēram ac tenuem secta-mīni prædam, quibus licet jam esse fortunatissīmis? e Tribus horis d Aduatūcam e venīre potestis: hoc omnes suas fortunas exercitus Romanōrum contūlit: 2præsidii tantum est, ut ne murus f quidem cīgni possit, g neque quīsquam egrēdi extra munitiōnes audeat." g Oblatā spe, Germāni, quam h nacti erant prædam, in occulto relinquent, ipsi Aduatūcam e contendunt, usi eōdem 2duce, cujus hāc indicio i cognovērant.

36. Cicēro, qui per omnes superiōres dies præceptis Ca-sāris summā diligentia militēs in castris continuiisset, ac ne calōnem f quidem quemquam extra munitiōnem egrēdi passus esset, septīmo die, diffidens de numero diērūm Caesārem fidem servatūrum, quōd longiūs eum progressum audiēbat, neque ulla de reditu ejus fama afferebātur; simul eōrum permōtus vocībus, 4qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiōnem appellābant, si quidem ex castris egrēdi non licēret; nullum ejusmōdi casum expectans, quo, novem opposītis legionibus maximōque equitātu, dispersis ac pæne delētis hosībus, in millībus passuum tribus offendi posset; quinque cohortes frumentātum in proximas segētes misit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis interērat. Complūres erant in castris ex legionibus ægri relictī; ex quibus 5qui hoc spatio diērūm convaluērant, circīter trecentī sub vexillo unā mittuntur: magna præterea multitudō calōnum, magna vis jumentō-rum, quæ in castris 6subsedērat, factā potestāte, sequitur.

37. Hoc ipso tempore, 7casu Germāni equestes interveniunt, protinusque eōdem illo, quo venērant, cursu ab decu-

---

a § 107, R. IX.  
b § 140, 5.  
c § 103, Obs. 7.  
d § 141, R. XLI.  
e § 130, 2.  
g § 140, 1, 1st.  
h § 131, R. XLI.  
i § 129, R.  
j § 120, R.
mänâ portā in castra irrumpère conantur: nec priùs sunt visi, objectis ab ea parte silvis, quàm castris appropinquārent, usque eo, ut, ¹ qui a sub vallo tendērent mercatōres, receptiendi sui facultātem non habērent. Inopinantes nostri re novā perturbantur, ac vix primum impētum cohors in statione sustīnet. Circumfunduntur b ex reliquis hostes partībus, si quem c adītum reperīre possent. Ægrè portas nostri tentur, ² reliquis adītus locus ipse per se munitiōque defendit. Totis trepidātūr castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultūs quærit; neque quō signa ferantur, ³ neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, ⁴ provident. Alius capta jam castra c pronunciat; alius, delēto exercitu atque imperatōre, victōres barbāros ⁵ venisse contendit: ³ plerique novas sibi ex loco religiōnes fingunt, Cottaēque et Titurīi calamitātem, qui in eōdem occidērint f castello, ante oculus ponunt. Tali timōre omnībus perterritīs, confirmātur opinio barbāris, ⁶ ut ex captīvo audiērant, nullum esse intus præsidium. Perrumpère nituntur, seque ipsi b adhortantur, ne tantam fortūnam ex manibus dimittant. ³


[a] 37, 4.  b 116, 6.  c § 145, R.  d § 140, 5.  e § 141, R. III.  f § 110, Obs. 1.  h 33, 1.  i § 140, 1, 3d.  k § 131, R. XLI.  m § 112, R. V.

40. Calónes in proxímum tumúlm procurrent: hinc ce- leríter dejecti se in signa manipulosque conjiciunt: eo ma- gis timídos perurrent mìlités. Alii, 2 cuneo facto ut celerí- ter perrumpant, f censent, quoniam tam propinquá sint ca- tra; et, 3 si pars alíqua circumventa cecidérit, at reliquos servári posse confídunt: alii, g ut in jugó consistánt, f atque eundem omnes ferant f casum. Hoc vetères non probant mìlités, quos h sub vexillo uná profectos docúmus. Itáque inter se 1 cohortáti, duce Caio Trebonio, equité Románo, qui eis erat præpositus, per medíos hostes perrumptunt, incolu- mesque ad unum omnes in castra perveníunt. Hos sub- secúti calónes equitesque eódem ímpétu miliírum vírtute servantur. At i, qui in jugó constitírent, 4 nullo etiam nunc usu rei militáris percepto, neque in eo, quod prová- rant, consilio permanére, ut se loco superíore defendérent, neque eam, quam profúisse aliis k vim celeritatemque víde- rant, imitári potuérunt; sed, se in castra recipére conáti, in- iquam in locum demisérent. Centuriónes, quorum 1 non- nulli, ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquárum legiônium, vírtú- tis causá, m in superíores erant ordínes hujus legiônis trans-

a § 140, 5.  
b § 141, R. I.  
c § 107, R. IX.  
d § 140, 3.  
<sup>a</sup> § 136, R. LII.  
<sup>b</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.  
<sup>c</sup> § 101, Obs. 4, consent.  
<sup>d</sup> § 145, R. & 91, 4.  
<sup>i</sup> § 28, Obs. 5.  
<sup>k</sup> § 107, R. X.  
<sup>l</sup> § 107, R. X.  
<sup>h</sup> § 145, R. & 91, 4.  
<sup>n</sup> § 129, R.
ducti ne antè partam rei militàris laudem amittérent, for-tissìmè pugnantes concidérint. Militùm pars, horum vir-tùte submòtitis hostìbus, pràeter spem incolùmis in castra pervénit; pars a barbàris circumventa perìt.

41. Germàni, desperàtâ expugnationè castròrum, quòd nostros jàm constituísse in munitionibus vidèbant, cum eà prædà, quam in silvis deponuérant, trans Rhenum sese rece-pèrent. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discéssum hostium terror, ut eà nocte, cùm Càius Volusènus missus cum equitátu ad castra venisset, sidem non facéret, adesse cum incolùmi Càsàrem exercitù. Sic omnium anìmos timor pràoccupavì-èrat, ut, ãne alienâtà mente, delètis omnìbus copìis equitátum tantùm se ex fugà receptisse, dicérent, neque, incolùmi exercitù, Germànos castra oppugnáturos fuisset contendérent. Quem tímòrem Càsàris adventus sustúlit.

42. Revervs ille, eventus belli non ignórans, unum, quòd cohortes ex statiónè et præsidio essent emissæ, ques-tus, ne minimò quidem casu locum relinqui debuisse, multum fortùnam in repéntìno hostium adventu potuisse indicávit; multò etiam amplìus, quòd ãne ab ipso vallo portisque castròrum barbaròs avertisset. Quarum omnium rerùm maxìmè admirandum videbátur, quòd Germàni, qui eo consilio Rhenum transiérant, ut Ambìriorìgis fines depopu-larentur, ad castra Romanòrum delàti, optatissìnum Ambìriorìgis benefìciùm obtulérunt.

43. Càsar, rursùs, ad vexandos hostes prosectus, magno coacto numerò ex fìnitìmis civitatibus, in omnes partes di-mittit. Omnes vici atque omnia aëdificia, quæ quisque con-spesxèrat, incendebantur: præda ex omnìbus locis agebátur: frumenta non solúm a tantà multitudìne jumentòrum atque homìnum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempòre atque im-

---

a § 140, 1, 2d. b 109, 2. c § 140, Obs. 4. d § 140, R. XL. e § 140, 1, 3d. f § 140, 1, 1st. g § 140, 1, 4th. h § 153, R. XLVII. i § 150, R. III. k § 126, R. III. l § 135, R. XLVII.
bribus procubuerant; ut, si qui etiam in præsentia se occultassent, tamen ii, a deducto exercitu, rerum omnium inopiam pereundum videretur. Ac sæpe in eum locum ventum est, b tanto in omnes partes diviso equitatu, ut modò visum c ab se Ambioricgem d in fugā captivi, nec planè etiam abèsse c ex conspectu contendèrent, ut, spe consequendi illátà atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Cæsäre gratiam e initûros putârent, f pæne nâtûram studio vincèrent, g semiperque paulum 2 ad summam felicitātem defuisse videretur, g atque 3 ille latēbris aut saltibus se eripēret, g et noctu occultātus alias regiones partesque petēret, g non majōre equitūm prāsidio, quam quatuor, quibus h solis vitam suam committere audēbat.

44. Tali modo vastātis regionibus, l exercītum Cæsar duārum cohortium damno Durocortōrum k Remōrum redūcit, conciliōque in eum locum Galliæ indīcto, l de conjuratiōne Senōnum et Carnūtum quæstiōnem habēre instituit; et de Accōne, qui princeps l ejus consilii fuērat, graviōre sententiā l pronunciātā, 4 more majōrum supplicium sumsit. Nonnulli judicium verīti profugērunt; 5 quibus m cūm aqūā n atque igni o interdixissent, duas legiones ad fines Trevirōrum, duas in Linonibus, sex reliquas in Senōnum finibus Agen dici in hibernis collocāvīt; frumentōque 6 exercītum p provīso, ut instituērat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

---

a § 147, R. b § 141, R. III. c 103, R. V. b § 140, 1, 1st. e § 126, R. III. d § 145, R. i 109, 2. e § 136, R. LII. f § 141, R. III. g § 112, R. IV. h § 123, R. n § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.) i § 130, 2. o § 15, 7. j § 126, R. III.
NOTES ON BOOK I.

PAGE 53.—1. Quarum, supply partium, of these parts.—2. (ii) qui appellantur Celtæ ipsorum linguā, Galli nostrā (linguā, incūlunt*) tertiam (partem).—3. Institūitis, customs.—4. Inter se, among themselves; from each other.—5. Arrange: Flumen Garumna dividit Gallos ab Aquitanis, Matrona et Sequana (dividunt Gallos) a Belgis.—6. Cultu, civilization, mode of living—humanitate, refinement, mental culture.—7. Minimē sāpe, least often, i. e. very seldom.—8. Eos, i. e. Germānos.—9. Ipsi, i. e. Helvetii.—10. Eorum, of them, i. e. of the Germans.—11. Eorum, (finium), of those confines, or territories, of that country, i. e. one of the three general divisions of Gaul.—12. Vergit ad Septentriōnes, it inclines, or extends towards the north.

P. 54.—1. Ab extremis finibus, from the remotest, or most distant confines of Gaul; meaning the most northern limit of the division then inhabited by the Celtæ, or Gauls, called Gallia propria, and here called extrēmis, because farthest distant from Rome.—2. Spectant, &c., they look towards—the country faces—the northeast.—3. Ad Hispaniam, at—next to—Spain, viz.: the Bay of Biscay.—4. Consules, See Index.—5. Civitati, his state:—Civitas means all the people living under one government.—6. Potiri imperio, to obtain the government.—7. Persuāsit id eis faciliōs hoc, he persuaded them to that measure more easily, on this account.—8. Naturā loci, by the nature of the place, or, of their situation; by their natural situation.—9. Pro multitudine hominum, for, in proportion to, the number of inhabitants; in proportion to the population.—10. Belli atque fortitudinis, for war and bravery.—11. Qui patēbant, which extended.—12. Adducti his rebus, induced by these circumstances. 13. Ad proficiscendum, for their departure. 14. Carrōrum quām maximum numērum, as great a number of wagons as possible.—15. Sementes quām maximas, as great sowings as possible.

P. 55.—1. In tertium annum, against the third year.—2. Occupāret, that he should take possession of:—The imperfect subjunctive here follows the present (persuādet) on the principle stated.

* Latin words not in Italics, or enclosed in parentheses, are not in the text, but are here supplied, to show the full construction of the sentence.
§ 137, Obs. 1.—3. Principatum, the highest power or authority.—4. Probab illis, perfecit esse factu, perficiere conitata, he (Orgetorix) assures them that the accomplishment of their designs would be easily done; that their designs would be easily accomplished.—5. Totius Galliae, i. e. civitatibus totius Galliae, &c., Of the states of all Gaul the Helvetii,—possent (facere) plurimum, could do most, i. e. were most powerful.—6. Inter se, among themselves, to each other, mutually.—7. Per tres—populos, viz: the Helvetii, Sequani, and Ædui.—8. Arrange: Sperant sese posse potiri (imperio) totius Galliae.—9. Ea res, this design.—10. Per indicium, by information. 11. Ex vinculis, Out of chains, i. e. in chains.—12. Arrange: Opportebat panem sequi (Orgetorigem) damnatum, ut cremaretur igni, it behoved this punishment to follow, overtake, Orgetorix, being condemned, that he should be burned with fire.—13. Familiarum, household—including domestics, slaves, &c.—14. Ad millia decem, about ten thousand;—Ad, with a numeral, signifies about, near, or towards.

P. 56.—1. Magistratus cogi rent, the magistrates (of the Ædui) were collecting.—2. Quin ipse, but that he.—3. Ad, about.—4. Trivium mensium, for three months.—5. Molita cibaria, ground provisions, i. e. meal or flour.—6. Uti eodem consilio, following the same counsel or design; adopting the same resolution.—7. Boiosque, &c.,—rectepos ad se, &c., having received the Boii, &c., they join them to themselves as allies; Or, they receive, and join to themselves as allies, the Boii, &c. For this use of the perfect participle see Idioms, 104.—8. Vix quâ, scil. viâ, where, or, by which way. 9. Provinciam nostram, our province; the Roman province in the south of Gaul, afterwards called Gallia Narbonensis.—10. Propter quod, because; literally, on this account that.—11. Isque transitur vado, and it is crossed by a ford, i. e. it is fordable.

P. 57.—1. Bono animo, of a good mind, friendly disposition, well affected.—2. Diem, see Dies, Index.—3. Ante diem quintum, &c. The fifth before the Kalends of April, i. e. the 28th March. See Gr. App. I.—4. Lucio Pisone, &c., that was, A. U. C. 696, B. C. 58.—5. Urbe, scil. Româ.—6. Galliam ulteriorem, farther Gaul, i. e. Gaul beyond the Alps.—7. Provincia toti, &c. he orders as many soldiers as possible from the whole province, i. e. he levies, &c.—For explanation of this construction see § 123. Exp.—8. Ad, near—9. Facti sunt certiores, were made more certain; were informed. 10. Esse sibi in animo, that they had it in design; that it was their intention; literally, that it was in the mind to them.—11. Voluntate, with his consent. 12. Sub jugum missum, sent under the yoke:
Two spears were set upright in the ground, and another was laid across them at top, forming what the Romans called *jugum*. Under this they who were admitted to surrender upon these terms were compelled to pass unarmed, *nudi*.—13. *Concedendum* (esse sibi,) that he ought to yield to their request.—14. *Ante diem Idus Aprilis*, i. e. the 12th April, see App. I.

**P. 58.**—1. *Qui in flumen*—As the Rhone flows through the lake Lemanus, and of course out of it, it is here said that the lake flows into it. 2. *Ad montem Juram*, towards mount Jura.—3. *Milia possessum novem decem*, nineteen miles in length. See App. VI. Table 5.—4. *Castella communit*, he strongly fortifies castles, or redoubts. § 91. Obs. 1. 5th.—5. *Se invito*, he being unwilling, i. e. against his will, or inclination.—6. *Negat se, more, &c.* he declares that he cannot, consistently with the custom, &c. *Negat* is equivalent to dicit non.—7 *Navibus junctis ratibusque, &c.*, some by means of boats joined together, and numerous rafts being made; before navibus supply Alii.—8. *Qua minima, &c.*, where the depth of the river was least. 9. *Perrumpère*, break through, force a passage.—10. *Eo deprecatore*, he being intercessor; by his mediation.—11. *Gratià et largitìone*, by his personal influence and liberality—*potrat* (facère) *plurìnum*, could accomplish a very great deal.—12. *In matrimonium duxìrat*, had married; literally, had led into matrimony. *Ducère uxòrem* (domum) "to marry," is said of the husband, because a part of the ceremony consisted in leading the wife home to his house. *Nubere* (se) vīro, "to marry," is said of the wife, (literally, "to veil herself to her husband,") because during the ceremony she wore a flame-colored veil.—13. *Novis rebus studebat*, desired. wished for, new things; aimed at, plotted, a revolution in the state.

**P. 59.**—1. *Sequâri* (dent obsiades);—*Helvetii* (dent obsides). 2. *Ne prohibeant*, that they would not prevent, or hinder, the Helvetii from (using) this route.—3. *Casâri renunciatur*, Intelligence is brought to Caesar; § 126, R. III.—1. *Intelligebat*, &c.—he perceived it would be very dangerous to the province—*ut habèret, to have;* (literally, that it should have).—5. *Proximum*, nearest, i. e. shortest.—6. *Quod est extrèmum* (oppidum) *citeriòris Provinciæ*, which is the most distant town (viz: from Rome,) of the hither province, i. e. of Cisalpine Gaul; See Index.—7. *Rogatûm auxilium*, to ask assistance.

**P. 60.**—1. *Necessarìi*, &c., friends and relations.—2. *Sibi præter agrì*, &c. that nothing was left to them except the soil of their land; except a desolate country.—3. *Flumen est Arar*, The Arar
NOW the Saone,) is a river.—4. Incredibili lenitāte, with surprising smoothness.—5. In utram partem, into which part; which way; in which direction.—6. Id transitabant, were crossing that;—l'întribus, canoes, small boats.—7. De tertiiā vigiliā, at the third watch, i.e. midnight; See App. I.—8. Impeditos, encumbered with their baggage.—9. In proximas silvas, &c., went into the neighboring forests and hid themselves.—This expresses the force of the accusative after in.—10. Princeps pānas persolvit, first suffered punishment; § 98, Obs. 10, i.e. was the first to suffer punishment.

P. 61.—1. Arrange: Tigurini interfecerunt L. Pisōnum legātum, avum L. Pisōnis ejus (i.e. Cæsāris,) sociēri cōdem praelō quo Tigurini interfecerunt Cassium.—2. Consēqui, come up with, overtake.—3. Pontem in Arārī, &c. that a bridge should be made over the Arar.—4. Cassiāno bello, in the war with Cassius; See Index, Cassius.—5. Ita cum Cāsāre agit, thus speaks with, or addresses Cæsar:—This address of Divico is in the form of oblique narration; See § 140, 6, & § 141, R. VI., with explanation, &c.—6. Vetēris incommōdi, the old disaster; alluding to the defeat of Cassius.—7.—Tribuēret (quodquam) magnopēri, &c., should ascribe any thing too greatly to his own bravery.—8. Ne committēret, that he should not cause; bring it to pass—aut prodēret, &c., or hand down to posterity the memory of such an event.—9.—Cēsar respondit, Cæsar replied. All that follows in this chapter is oblique narration; the the verb respondit being in the perfect indefinite, the leading verb governed by it in the present infinitive is translated as the perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive as the pluperfect indicative; See Idioms, Nos. 96, 98.—10. Qui si, if they, viz: the Roman people.

P. 62.—1. Non fuisse, &c., it would not have been difficult to guard against it; the subject of fuisse is cavēre, and strictly rendered is, "that to guard against it would not have been difficult."—2. Sed eo deceptum esse, &c., but that they (the Roman people) had been deceived by this, because they did not think anything had been done by them;—Supply quidquam before commissum.—3. Timendum (esse sibi,) that they should fear.—4. Quōd si vellet, but if, even although, he were willing.—5. Num etiam—possē, &c.? Could he also lay aside, &c.?—6. Eōdem pertinēre, were to the same effect; pertinēre has for its subject the two preceding clauses.—7. Secundiōres res, more prosperous things; greater prosperity.—8. Quum ea sint ita, although these things are so; although this is the case.—9. Testem ejus rei, a proof of that custom.—10. Cupidiūs, too eagerly.—Aliēno loco, in a disadvantageous, or unfavorable place.
NOTES ON BOOK I.

P. 63.—1. Novissimo agmine, the rear, i. e. the "last line" "the hindmost" on the march.—2. Satis habebat, &c., considered it sufficient for the present.—3. Nostrum primum (agmen), our van.—4. Quinis aut senis, &c., five or six miles (each day).—5. Flagitare (for flagitabant), continued to importune—publice, in the name of their state.—6. Frigora, the cold; the coldness of the climate.—7. Sub septentrionibus, under the north; towards the north.—This must be understood in relation to Italy.—8. Frumento, corn:—At this time not meal or bread was served out to the Roman soldiers, but raw corn, which they themselves prepared.—9. Conferri, &c., that it was collecting, bringing in, at hand.—10. Diutius, too long; See Idioms, 22.—11. Qui summo, &c., who was invested with the office of chief magistrate.

P. 64.—1. Tacuérat, had concealed.—2. Valét plurimum, is very powerful; has great influence.—3. Privati, though private individuals.—4. Necessarió coáclus, compelled by necessity, (Necessarió for necessitátë.)—5. Designarí, was meant.—6. Nolèbat eas res jactári, multis presentibus, he was unwilling, he did not wish, that these affairs should be discussed, so many being present; in the presence of so many.—7. Solo, (Lisco,) of him alone.—8. Redempta habérë, &c., had farmed the customs, and all the other public revenues of the Edui: Portoria means duties on exports and imports,—vectigalia means every other kind of tax or revenue. Those who "farmed" them bought them at the lowest price they could, from the government, and collected them for their own use.

P. 65.—1. Facultates magnas comparássæ, &c., had acquired great means for bestowing presents, namely, for the purpose of extending and strengthening his influence. 2. Largiter posse, had great influence—collaçasse (nuptum), had given in marriage.—3. Cupére (for bene velle), wished well to.—4. Si quid (adversi) acédat, if any thing unfortunate should happen; if any calamity befel —5. Inquirendo, by enquiry, on enquiring.—6. Equitatu (the old dative for equitatiu; § 16, Exc. 2 ) præérat, was over, or commanded the cavalry.—7. Certissimae res, most certain; most unquestionable facts.—8. Injussu suo, &c without his order and the order of the state (viz: of the Edui).

P. 66.—1. Voluntatem, affection.—2. Commonesfícil, reminds him.—3. Ostendit, shews him.—4. Causâ cognitá, the cause being tried or investigated.—5. Nequid gravius, &c. that he (Caesar) should not determine any thing too severe; that he should not pass too severe a sentence.—6. Ipse, he himself (viz: Divitiacus).—
7 Ille, he (i. e. Dumnorix).—8. Fraterno amore, by brotherly love; by love or affection for his brother.

P. 67.—1. Adhībet, brings in—propōnit, lays before him.—2. Divitiāco fratri, to his brother, i. e. at the request of, and for the sake of his brother, Divitiacus.—3. Custodes, spies.—4. Conserdisse, had sat down, i. e. had encamped.—5. Facilem (ascensum) esse, that the ascent was easy.—6. Vigiliā; See Index; also Appendix to Gr. I.—7. See Index, Legātus.—8. See Index, Prātor—Legātum proprātore, a lieutenant with praetorian powers.—9. Et iis ductibus, and with those as guides.—10. In (exercitu) M. Crassi.—11. Primā luce, at the first daylight; at the dawn of day.—12. Ipse, he himself (i. e.) Cæsar).—13. Equo admissō, his horse being put to it; spurred up, i. e. at full gallop.

P. 68.—1. Multō die (acto) much of the day being past; when much of the day was past.—2. Pro viso, literally, for seen, i. e. as if it had actually been seen by him.—3. Quo consuerat intervallo, at the distance at which he had been accustomed to follow, i. e. at the usual distance. 4. Exercitu (the old dative for exercitui,) frumentum metiri, to measure out, i. e. to serve out corn for the army.—5. Rei frumentariāe spesicicandum (esse sibi), that he must provide for a supply of corn.—6. Decurio, See Index.—7. Discēdēre, were departing from them.—8. (Helvetii) confidērent (Romānos) posse, &c.—9. Animō admītīt, (same as animadvertit,) perceives; § 44, 1. 3.—10. Qui sustinēret impētum, to sustain the charge.

P. 69.—1. Citeriōre Galliā, hither Gaul; the north of Italy. 2. Complēri, to be filled, to be covered.—3. Eum, it, i. e. the place in which the baggage was.—4. Confertissimā acie, &c., in very close array—phalange facta, a phalanx being made. The German phalanx consisted of a very close body of men with their shields held over their heads, and overlapping so as to form a shed or screen like the Roman testudo, to defend them from the missiles of the enemy. The Macedonian phalanx, on the other hand, consisted of a body of men, sixteen deep and five hundred long.—5. Sub, close up to.—6. Suo (equo remōto).—7. Pericūlo omnium (i. e. Imperatōris et militum) aequāto, the danger of all being equal; all being exposed to equal danger.—8. Scelum, See Index.—9. Satis commōdē, conveniently enough; with sufficient ease or readiness.—10. Nudo, naked, unprotected;—Their bodies were exposed to the darts of the enemy, from having thrown down their shields.—11. Pedem referre, to retreat; literally, to take back the foot.—12. Claudebant agmen, closed up the rear,—13. Bipartito, in two parties; in two divisions.
The army was drawn up in three lines, of which the first and second lines, forming one division, made head against those who had been defeated and compelled to retreat, i.e. the Helvetians, who were now returning to the attack; and the third line sustained the attack of those advancing (venientes,) against them, the fresh troops, i.e. the Boii and the Tulingi, who were coming up in the rear.

P. 70.—1. *Ancipitri prælio,* in doubtful battle, i.e. victory inclining to neither side.—2. *Altēri,* the one, i.e. the Helvetii—*altēri,* the other, i.e. the Boii and the Tulingi.—3. *Ab septimā horā,* from the seventh hour, i.e. one o'clock p.m.; See Index, hora.—4. *Aversum,* turned away; who had turned his back; retreating; flying.—5. *Pugnatum est ad multitam noctem,* It was fought till a great part of the night was past; till late at night.—6. *Māras ac tragūlus,* &c. continued throwing lances and javelins from beneath.—7. *Qui, si juvissent,* for, if they should aid them; See Idioms, 39.—8. Arrange: *Se habitūrum eos (Lingōnas)ēōdem loco quo ille, (Cæsar,) ha bēret Helvetios.—9. *Qui, cūm convenissent,* and they, when they had met; See Ref.

P. 71.—1. *Occultāri,* be concealed, (viz: from Cæsar).—2. *Omnino ignorāri,* be altogether unknown; remain altogether unnoticed.—3. *Primā nocte,* at the beginning of the night.—4. Arrange *Imperāvit his per quorum fines ierant, utē,* &c.—5. *Habuit,* &c., treated as enemies; i.e. either put them to death or sold them as slaves.—6. *Ipsos,* them, viz: the Helvetii, Tulingi, and Latobrigi.—7. *Vacāre,* to be empty; to be uninhabited.—8. Arrange, *Concessit Ėduis potentiōbus, ut (Ēdui) collocarent Boios in suis finibus, quōd (Boii) cognitī erant egregiā virtūte: quibus (Scil. Boiiis) illī (Ēdui) dedērunt agros.—9. *Tabūtā,* lists; literally, tablets:—These were made of wood covered with wax, on which the Romans were accustomed to write with the stylus.—10. *Confectā Graecis litēris,* written in Greek letters.—11. *Ratio,* an account.

P. 72.—1. *Capitum,* literally, "of heads," i.e. persons, souls. 2. *Censu habito,* the census having been held; the number having been taken:—This was only a numbering of the army, and consequently very different from the Roman census; See Index, Census.—3. *Gratulatum,* to congratulate him:—After gratulātum supply di centes, expressing past time; See Idioms, 94, 4, and 1, 2d.—4. *Pro veteribus injuriis,* &c., for the ancient injuries done by the Helvetii to the Roman people. Here two genitives are governed by one noun, the one, (Helvetiōrum) in an active sense, and the other (Populi Romāni) in a passive sense; § 106, Obs. 1, & 2.—5. *Ne quis,* &c
that no one should disclose their deliberations, unless those to whom this charge should be given by the assembly at large.

P. 73.—1. Non minùs, &c.; See Note 3, preceding page. The statement of the chiefs, and of Divitiacus who spoke for them, it will be perceived, is given in the form of oblique narration—of course, the leading verbs are in the infinitive mood governed by dicentes, or dicens expressing past time, because agreeing with the subject of verbs in the perfect tense. Hence the present infinitive, with a subject, will be translated in the perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, in the pluperfect, as the references show; and also all the verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive; See § 140, 6, and § 141, R. VI., &c.—2. Harum (factiōnum) &c. that the Āedui were at the head of one of these factions, and the Avernī at the head of the other.—3. Hi cùm contendērent, &c.; since these (the Āedui and Avernī) had contended for the superiority.—4. Ho-
rum, of the latter, (viz: the Germans).—5. Copias; copia in the singular means "abundance," in the plural, commonly "forces," but here, great abundance; the plural form rendering it emphatic.—6. Neque reclusuros quo minus essent, &c. nor refuse to be forever under their sway and government: Idioms, 78, Note, & 7.—7. Se unum, that he (Divitiacus) was the only one.

P. 74.—1. Quibus locus, &c. for whom a settlement and habi-
tations were to be procured.—2. Futūrum esse, that it would be; that the consequence in a few years would be.—3. Neque enim, &c., For neither was the Gallic territory to be compared with that of the Germans.—4. Ut semel. when once, i. e. as soon as.—5. Omnia exempla cruciatusque, all manner of cruelties: by Hendiadys (§ 150, 2, 2d,) for exempla cruciātum.—6. Nisi si, same as nisi, unless.—7. Ut, namely, that.

P. 75.—1. Habītā, being delivered.—2. Exprimēre, draw, ex-
tort.—3. Hoc, on this account.—4. Præ (fortūnī) reliquōrum, in comparison with the fortune of the rest; or simply, than the rest.—5. Fugae facultas, the means of escape.—6. Omnes cruciātus, all tortures, i. e. all kinds of torture.7. Ėam rem futūram (esse) curē sibi, that that thing would be a care to him; that he would attend to that matter.—8. Secundum ea, &c., besides these things, many cir-
cumstances induced him—quarc putāret, to think; literally, why he should think.

P. 76.—1. Occurrendum, &c., he must meet, or thwart, as early as possible.—2. Placuit ei, it pleased him, i. e. he resolved.—3. Et summis utrisque rebus, matters of the greatest importance to
both.—4. *Si quid ipsi*, &c, if any thing had been wanted by him from Cæsar, *i. e.* if he had wanted any thing from Cæsar.—5. *Si quid ille se velit*, if he (Cæsar,) wished any thing from him (Ariovistus).—6. *Sine magno commcatu atque emolimento*, (better than emolumento,) without great expense and trouble.—7. Arrange. *Quid negotii esset aut Cæsāri*, &c.

**P. 77.**—1. *Hanc gratiam referret*, he should make this return —*ut gravaretur*, that he grudged, or, was reluctant.—2. *Neque*. used conjunctively, equivalent to *et non.*—3. *Dicendum sibi et cognoscendum*, &c., that he should not think it necessary for him to speak, and inform himself about a matter of common interest.—4. *Ne quam*, &c. (equivalent to *ne aliquam,* ) that he should not lead any, &c.—5. *Injurīā* literally, with injury, *i. e.* without just cause.—6. *Quod, i. e. secundum id quod*, according to that which, *i. e.* as far as (equivalent to *quantum*) he could do it consistently with the interest of the republic.—7. *Ihem*, in like manner.—8. *Non opporētē se impeditri*, that he ought not to be hindered.


**P. 79.**—1. *Ut eirceo circumductum*, as if traced around it with a pair of compasses.—2. *Non amplius* (spatio), not more than the space.—3. *Continet*, closes, occupies.—4. *Murus, circumdatuś hunc* (montem,;) *efficiē arcem, et conjungit* (montem) *cum oppido*, a wall, thrown around, converts this mountain into a citadel, and connects it with the town.—5. *Ex percunctationione, &c.* from the enquiries of our men, and the statements of the Gauls.—6. *Vultum et aciem oculōrüm*, their look and the keenness of their eyes.—7. *Triūnīs,—prefectis;* See Index.—8. *Quorum aliūs, &c.* of whom one having assigned one reason, another, another reason, which they said was a necessary one, (or rendered it necessary,) for them to return home.—9. *Fingēre vultum*, compose their countenance.
NOTES ON BOOK I.

P. 80.—1. Qui, i. e. ii qui, those who.—2. Dicto audiens, obedient to the order:—Dicto is governed in the dative here by audiens, § 111, R.: both words together commonly signify obedient. and govern a dative by the same rule; as, Ducit dicto audiens, obedient to the general.—3. Consilio convocato, a council (of war) being called; or, having called a council of war.—4. Sibi quareendum, that they must enquire, i. e. that it was their business to enquire.—5. Sibi quidem persuaderi. that he was even persuaded.—6. Suis postulatis, &c. his demands being known, and the fairness.—7. Suâ, their own—ipsius, his.—8. Factum (esse) periculum, that trial had been made. 9. Servili tumultu, (equivalent to servorum tumultu) the insurrection of the slaves.

P. 81.—1. In suis, in their own, (i. e. the Helvetii)—illorum (i. e. Germanorum) finibus, in their territories.—2. Quos, for aliquos. any.—3. Neque sui potestatem fecisset, and had not given an opportunity of coming to an engagement with him:—Facere potestatem sui, means to allow one’s self to be approached.—4. Ratiône et consilio, by stratagem and cunning.—5. Qui, i. e. ii qui, those who.—6. Quod non fore dicto, &c., As to this, that it was said the soldiers would not be obedient to orders.—7. Scire enim quibuscumque, &c., for he knew, to whomsoever, (i. e. in all cases in which; § 99, Obs. 7,) an army would not be obedient, that either, &c.—8. Hâque se, quod, &c., that he would therefore do immediately that which he was going to put off to a more distant day.

P. 82.—1. Praetoriam cohortem, a body guard.—2. Confidebat maxime, trusted most.—3. Princeps, first.—4. Egérunt, strove—before se neque, supply dicentes or dixerunt; See Idioms, 94, 4.—5. Satisfactiône, their apology, excuse.—6. Exquisito, being reconnoitred.—7. (Supply qui dicerent.) quod, &c., to say that that which, &c.—8. Fore uti desistet, that he would desist; See Ref.

P. 83.—1. Ne quem peditem, &c. that Caesar should not bring any infantry.—2. Tollô, should be prevented, thwarted.—3. Commodissimum, most expedient.—4. Omnibus equis, &c., All their horses being taken from the Gallic cavalry, to mount on them, (literally, thereon).—5. Si quid opus, &c., if there should be any need of action; § 118, R. XXII.—6. Nunc rescribere ad equum, he now enrolled them among the cavalry.—7. Ex equis. ou horseback—denos, ten each.—8. Ubi ventum est eo, when they came to the place appointed; See Ref.

P. 84.—1. Necessitatis, &c., of alliance existed between them and the Ædui.—2. Nihil sui, nothing of their own.—3. Aucti-
ores enereased, farther advanced.—4. Quos amplius, any more.—5. Rogatum et arcessitum, having been asked and sent for.

P. 85.—1. Quod multitudinem, transducat, as to his leading &c.,; literally, as to this that he led; See Idioms, 38, Note.—2. De fendiærit, had warded it off.—3. Quid sibi vellet? (Cæsar) What did he (Cæsar) want?—Here sibi refers to Cæsar, suas to Ariovistus.—4. Hanc Galliam, &c. That this Gaul (viz: in the north,) belonged to him (Ariovistus)—Sicut illam nostram, just as that (viz: the Roman Province) to us.—5. Qui, Since we.—6. Quod diceret; as to that which he said; or since he said.—7. Sese facturum esse gratum, that he would do an agreeable thing, a favor; would oblige.

P. 86.—1. In eam sententiam, to this effect.—2. Esse Ariovisti, &c., belonged to Ariovistus, rather than to the Roman people.—3. Quodquæ tempus, &c., if all ancient time—the most ancient—the most distant period ought to be regarded.—4. Voluisset, had decreed. 5. Propius (ad) tumulum.—6. Per fidem, by relying on his faith.—7. Vulgus militum, among the common soldiers.—8. Quæ arrogantia usus, &c., using what arrogance, or with what arrogance Ariovistus had interdicted the Romans from all Gaul, and his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that affair had broken up the conference:—These subjunctives are all in the same construction, containing an indirect question, the first and second indicated by quæ arrogantia, and the third by ut; § 140, 5.—9. Injectum est, was infused.

P. 87.—1. Neque perfectæ essent, and had not been completed: § 93, 1.—2. Quin conjecterent, from throwing; See Ref.—3. In eo peccandi, &c., and because in him the Germans had no cause of sinning, or committing any act of violence.—1. Causa speculandi? for the sake of spying? on purpose to act as spies?

P. 88.—1. Ei potestas non dcesset, an opportunity might not be wanting to him, i.e. he might have the opportunity.—2. Quos ex omni, &c., literally, whom they had selected from the whole army, each horseman one.—3. Si quæ, &c. if they had to advance farther than usual in any direction.—4. Cursum adaquarent, equalled their speed.—5 Quo in loco, &c. in which the Germans had encamped. 6. Quæ copia, that these forces.

P. 89.—1. Suo instituto, according to his custom, or design—2. A majoribus (castris) from the larger camp—3. Sortibus et vaticinationibus, by lots and auguries.—1. Ex usu esset, &c., whether or not it would be of advantage that the battle should be joined.—19
NOTES ON BOOK II.

P. 93.—1. Quin proficiscerētur, but that he should march, about marching.—2. Celeriusque, &c., and sooner than the expectation of all, (of any one,) i. e. than all (or any one) expected.—3. Neque se consensisse, that they had neither agreed; approved of the design; joined, entered into the confederacy.—4. Furōrem, infatuation.—5. Ab his, from these, viz: the ambassadors from the Remi.—6. Quantæ, how powerful.—7. Omnia se habère explorāta, that they had all things fully examined.

P. 94.—1. Divitiācum, Divitiacus—not the Æduan.—2. Totius belli summam, the direction of the whole war.—3. Longissimē absint, are very remote.—4. Qui appellantur uno nomine Germāni, who are called by one name, Germans—ad quadrāginta milliā, about forty thousand.—5. Liberaliter prosecute oratōne, having complimented them highly in a speech.—6. Ad diem, by the day appointed.—7. Magnō opère, i. e. magnopère, greatly—quanto opère, i. e. quantopère, how much it concerned.—8. Ne conflatendum sit; that he might not have to contend.

P. 95.—1. Quaē res, this position.—2. Cohortibus; See Gr. App. V.—3. Duodevīgintī pedum, (in latitudinem) eighteen feet broad.—4. Gallōrum cādem utque, &c. of the Gauls as well as of the Belgæ.—5. Quod tum, &c. this was then easily done.—6. Polētās consistendi in muro erat nullī, the power of standing on the wall was to none; no man was able to stand on the wall.—7. Praērat, was over; had the command of; was governor of.—8. De mediā nocte, soon after midnight.

P. 96.—1. Quos, &c., which, (viz: villages and buildings,) they could reach.—2. Et ab millibus passuum &c., at less than two miles distant (viz: castris, from the camp).—3. Prālio supersedēre, to defer a battle.—4. Solicitationembus periclitabātur, trial was made in skirmishes.—5. Ex utrāque parte, &c., had a steep descent on both sides; literally, had descents of the side on both sides.—6. Et frontem lenēter fastigātur, and in front gently sloping.—7. Ad e·xtrēmas fossas, at the extremities, or ends of the ditches.—8. Tor·menta, military engines, viz: the Catapulta and the Balista; See Index.—9. Quod tantum multitudinem poterat, because they could do so much by their great number; were so powerful, or strong, in numbers.—10. Si quā opus, &c. if it should be needful any where.

P. 97.—1. Non magna palus erat, there was a small morass.—2. Expectābant, continued waiting to see.—3. Secundīōre nostris, being more favorable to our men.—4. Demonstrātum est, has been
shewn: See Ch. 5.—5. *Si minus potuissent*, if they could not do this;—*ad gerendum bellum*, for carrying on the war; for prosecuting the war.—6. *Impeditos*, embarrassed.—7. *Quorum in fines*, into whose soever boundaries, or territory.—8. *Et domesticis copiis*, &c., and enjoy the abundance of provisions which they had at home.

P. 98.—1. *Hac quoque ratio*, this consideration also.—2. *His persuaderi*,—*non poterat*, these could not be persuaded; See Idioms, 68, 1.—3. *Nullo certo ordine*, in no fixed, determined, regular order.

4. *Cum sibi quisque*, &c.:—Since each one sought to be foremost on the route.—5. *Insidias veritus*, fearing a stratagem, an ambuscade,—qui *moraretur*, that they might delay; in order to delay.—6. *Cūm* (illi) *ab extrēmo*, &c.. when those in the rear, to which they had come.—7. *Tantam multitudinem*, quantum, &c., as great a number as the length of the day allowed.

P. 99.—1. *Vacuum ab defensoribus*, empty, unprotected by defenders.—2. *Vineas agère*, to move forward the vine; See Index.—3. *Aggère jacto*, a mound being thrown up; See Index.—4. *Turribusque constitūtis*, and towers being erected on it; See Index, Turrīs.—5. *Petentibus Remis*, the Remi requesting it; at the request of the Remi.—6. *Impetrant*, they obtain it; viz: that they should be preserved.—7. *Māiores natu*, greater by birth, i. e. older, more advanced in age.—8. *Passis manibus*, with extended hands.—9. *Facit verba*; literally, makes words, i. e. speaks,—present tense for the past; § 44, I. 3:—The pupil may here note the difference between *faecere verba*, and *dare verba*,—the first means "to make a speech;" the last, "to put off with words," i. e. "to deceive." 10. *In fide, &c.*, under the protection, and in the friendship of, &c., i. e. had always been protected and befriended by.

P. 100.—1. *Non solūm Bellovācos*, &c., that not only the Bellovaci themselves, but also the *Ædui* for them, entreated that he would use.—2. *Cum quaerēret*, when he enquired; on enquiry.—3. *Nīhil vīni*, no wine.—4. *Increpitare*, &c., that they inveighed against and accused.—5. *Confirmare*, asserted, declared; were determined, it was their fixed resolution.—6. *Conditionem*, offer, proposal.—7. *Expectāre*, were expecting, were waiting.—8. *Expectāri*, were expected, were waited for.

P. 101.—1. Arrange: *Conjecisse*, *mulieres* (et homines) *qui widerentur inutiles*, &c.—2. *Eorum diērum*, &c., the custom of those days in respect of the march:—*Exerētūs* is governed by *itinēris*.—3. *Neque esse quiequam*, &c., literally, and that when the first legion
had come into the camp, &c., to attack this legion under its baggage would be a matter of no great difficulty; i.e. there would be no great difficulty in attacking, &c. —4. Qua (legiones) pulsâ, reliquae (legiones).—5. Ei rei, to this subject, viz. the training of cavalry.—6. Valent (efficere).—7. Incis is alque inflexis, being cut in, and bent over.—8. Crebris in latitudinem, &c., numerous branches, and briars, and thorns, intervening in a lateral direction:—The young trees being gashed but not separated from the root, still continued to grow, and when bent over, their branches stood out in a lateral direction; the interstices were filled with briars and thorns, so that the whole formed a strong and impervious barrier.—9. Loci—quem locum, of the place which.

P. 102.—1. Infimâ (parte) apertus, &c., open, clear at the bottom, woody towards the top.—2. Secundum flumen, along the river,—Stationes equitum, troops of horse on guard.—3. Aliter se habebat ac, literally, had itself otherwise than; i.e. was different from what.—4. Expeditas, free from all encumbrance, i.e. without the load of baggage which the soldier was accustomed to carry, generally amounting in all to sixty pounds besides his arms.—5. Identidem, from time to time.—6. Quâm quem ad finem, i.e. ad finem ad quem, to the limit to which; as far as.—7. Quod tempus, &c., which had been agreed upon as the time of joining battle.—8. In manibus, close at hand.—9. Adverso colle, up the hill, viz: the hill opposite that on which they had stood.

P. 103.—1. Vexillum proponendum, the standard had to be displayed.—2. (ii) qui processerant paullo longius causâ petendi aegaris, (erant) acressendi, those, who had gone to a greater distance, in order to fetch materials for the rampart were to be recalled.—3. Successus et incursus, the near approach and onset.—4. Erant subsidio, were of advantage.—5. Singulisque legionibus, and from their respective legions,—singûlos legátos, every lieutenant.—6. Nihil, equivalent to non or nullo;—the construction is quod ad nihil, did not now at all wait for any order from Cæsar.—7. Per se, of themselves, of their own accord.—8. Videbantur (illis), seemed to them proper; they thought best.—9. Quam in partem, into whatever part.—10. Neu perturbarentur animo, nor be agitated in their minds. 11. Exiguittas, the shortness.

P. 104.—1. Dejectus, declivity.—2. Necessitas, urgency.—3. Prospectus impedimentum, the view in front was obstructed.—Neque certa, neither with certainty; § 98, Obs. 10.—4. In tantâ iniquitate rerum, in such an unequal situation of affairs.—5. In sinis-
trā parte acie, on the left part of the line; (acie) an old form of the genitive for aciei; § 17, Exc. If acie be regarded as the ablative, it will then be rendered “in the line on the left part.”—6. Examínatos, out of breath, panting,—confectos, spent, exhausted.—7. Nam his ea pars obvenerat, that party had fallen to their lot; had been accidentally opposed to them.—8. In fugam dedérunt, put to flight.—9. Diversæ légiones, other legions, different from those mentioned before.—10. At tum, but at this time.—11. Summum locum castrorum, literally, the top of the place of the camp, i. e. the summit on which the camp stood.—12. Levisque armaturæ pedites, foot soldiers of the light armor; the light armed infantry.—13. Quos pulsos (esse), who had been routed.—14. Adversis hostibus occurrébant, met the enemy in front, face to face.

P. 105.—1. Calónes, the soldiers’ servants.—2. Decumánæ portæ, the decuman or rear gate of the Roman camp:—So called because the tenth cohorts were situated there.—3. Versari, were actively engaged.—4. Mandábant sese præcipitès fugæ, committed themselves headlong to flight.—5. Diversos dissipatæsque, scattered in every direction.—6. Urgéri, were overpowered.—7. Primopilo; See Index, Primopilus.—8. Confecto, i. e, ita confecto ut.—9. A fronte. in front.—10. Subeuntes, advancing.

P. 106.—1. Signa inferre, to carry forward the standards; i. e. to advance,—laxāre manipulos, to extend the maniples.—2. Cujus adventu, by his arrival; 38.—3. Pro se quisque, they, each one for himself; i. e. to the best of his ability.—4. Legiones sese conjungérent et inferrent conversa signa, that the legions (viz: the 7th and 12th, should unite and advance with the standard turned two ways; i. e. with double front.—5. Ne aversi, that when turned away.—6. Versarētur, were.—7. Nihil ad celeritatem, &c.; Arrange: fecérunt nihil reliqui esse sibi, they caused that nothing remaining was to them; they did all they could as to speed; they made all the haste they could.—8. Omnibus in locis, &c., in every quarter of the flight they thrust themselves before the legionary soldiers; i. e. they strove to surpass them in valor.—9. Præstitērunt, displayed.

P. 107.—1. Qui superessent, those who survived.—2. Uti ex tumulo, as if from an eminence.—3. Redegérat, had rendered.—4. Prope ad interneçonem, almost to extermination.—5. Estuaria, &c., the low grounds and marshes.—6. Nihil (esse) impeditum, that nothing was a hindrance.—7. Quos Cæsar, &c., Cæsar. that he might appear to have exercised mercy towards the unfortunate and suppliants, preserved them, &c.. (39).—8. Altissimas rupes despec-
tusque, very steep rocks and commanding views of the country below.—9. Non amplius (quam ad mensuram) ducentorum pedum.

P. 108.—1. *Iis impedimentis,* to that baggage.—2. *Cùm (hi) aliis inferrent bellum (finitus), aliis defendérent (bellum) illátum* (sibi a finitūmis), when they at one time made war on their neighbors, at another time resisted the war made on themselves by their neighbors; when, at one time they acted on the offensive, at another time, on the defensive.—3. *Duodécem pedum,* of twelve feet.—4. *Vineis,* See Index.—5. *Quó,* for what purpose?—6. *Prae,* in comparison of.—7. *Mověri et appropriáre,* moving and approaching; See Idioms, 89, 1.—8. *Ad hunc modum,* after this manner.—9. *Tantae altitudinis,* of so great height.—10. *Et ex propinquitate,* &c., and fight close at hand.—11. *Unum pelère ac deprecari,* that they begged and earnestly entreated one thing (supply eum) from him.


P. 110.—1. *Ita acriter ut,* &c., as fiercely as it ought to have been fought; See Idioms, 88, 7.—2. *Ad* (used adverbially) about.—3. *Sectionem,* booty:—So called, because divided into small sections or portions, to be sold.—4. *Capitum numerus millium,* &c. the number of fifty-three thousand souls.—5. *Oceanum,* the Atlantic.—6. *Certior factus est,* he was informed.—7. *Dies quindécim supplicatió decreta est,* a thanksgiving of fifteen days was decreed.

NOTES ON BOOK III.

PAGE 111.—1. *Quo (itínere),* by which (road).—2. *Cum magnis portorius,* with heavy duties, or imposts:—The duty levied on goods in harbor, (in portu) was called *portorium.* This term was afterwards extended, as here, to denote the duty paid for liberty to carry goods through a particular country, or the tax paid at bridges.—3. *Hic vicus,* this village.—1. *Eum locum,* this part, i. e. the part of the village in which the cohorts were to pass the winter.
P. 112.—1. Neque eam plenissimam, and that not very full. See Index, Legio.—2. Singillátim, individually.—3. Decurrérent, should run down.—4. Ne primum quidem posse, &c., they thought that that legion could not withstand even the first onset:—With posse supply illam legiônem.—5. Accédébat, to this was added; another reason was.—6. Sibi persuásuum habébat, literally, they had it persuaded unto themselves; they were firmly persuaded.—7. Neque satis provítsum esset, nor had it been sufficiently provided; nor had a sufficient supply been provided.—8. Nihil de bellum timendum, he had thought that nothing was to be feared, i. e. that he had nothing to fear concerning the war.—9. Neque subsídio ventri, literally, neither could it be come to them with assistance, i. e. neither could assistance come to them.—10. Placuit majori partí, it pleased the greater part; it was the opinion of the majority.

P. 113.—1. Collocandis atque administrandis (the dative of the end or design,) for arranging and executing.—2. Gásáque, and javelins (the Gallic iron javelin).—3. Integris viribus, with fresh strength.—4. Frustra, in vain, without effect.—5. Sed hoc (nostri) superári, but in this they (our men) were overcome, were inferior.—6. Paucitátem, their fewness — 7. Non modo, &c., an opportunity was not given not only to the wearied.—8. Perducta ad extrémum casum, brought to an extreme case, to the last extremity. 9. Quem conquestum (esse), &c., who, we have said, was worn out; (See Idioms; 96, 2, & 94, 1: 1).—10. Convocátis centuriónibus celeríter (per eos) milítis, &c. the centurions being called together, he quickly, through them, directs the soldiers;—excipérunt, to take up. 11. Omníbus portís, from all the gates of the camp:—Of these there were four; See Index, Castra.

P. 114.—1. Ex (numéro) homínem amplius quátum millibus tríginta, literally, from a number of men more than thirty thousand, i. e. from more than thirty thousand men.—2. (Parte) plus tertíá parte, &c. literally, a part more than the third part being slain.—3. Fusis &c., being routed. and stripped of their arms:—Here exútis agrees with copiís, and governs armís in the ablative, by § 126, R. V.—4. Alio,—alius, &c., with one view,—they had encountered things very different.—5. Cásar existimáret, de omnibus causís, Cásar supposed, from all reasons; Cásar had every reason to suppose.—6. (Ad) mare Oceanum, to the Atlantic Ocean.—7. Prefectos tribunosque milítum; See Index, Legio.

P. 115.—1. Scientiá atque usu, knowledge and experience.—2. In magno impétu maris atque aperto, in the great and open v.o-
lence, force, swell (or surge) of the sea.—3. *Ipsi*, (Venēti,) they themselves, (the Veneti.)—4. *Consuérunt uti*, are accustomed to use; use to trade in; or usually trade in.—5 *Vēctīgāles*, tributary.
6. *Ut consilia Gallōrum*, since the designs (resolves) of the Gauls.
7. *Omnis*; Accusative plural for *omnes*, the subject of *latīros* (esse).
8. *Suōs*, his (Crassus’) countrymen; § 28, Exc.;—*sibi*, to them, (the Veneti) the main subject of discourse.—9. *Naves longas*, ships of war,—so called from their being much longer than the ships of bur-
den*(naves onerarīae).*—10. *Remīges*, rowers,—*institui*, to be raised.
11. *Pro magnitudine*, in proportion to the greatness.—12. *Hoc* (fa-
ciunt), this they do.—13. *Pedestria itinēra*, roads, or approaches by foot; *i. e.* by land.

**P. 116.**—1. *Navigatīōnem*, access by sea.—2. *Neque nostros*, &c., and they were confident that our army could not, &c. *Neque* here is copulative, and means “and not.”—3. *Opiniōnem*, the ex-
pectation.—4. *Longē aliam atque*, &c., that the navigation was far other in a confined or inland sea (such as the Mediterranean,) than, &c.—5. *Hā erant difficultātes*, such were the difficulties, &c.—
6. *Injurīa retentōrum difficultātes*, such were the difficulties, &c.—
7. *Rebellīo*, a renewal of hostilities,—*defectio*, a revolt, a refusal of obedience.—8. *Ne arbitrarēntur*, in order that they might not think; § 140, 1, 2d.—9. *Idem* (faciē) *sibi licēre*, that to do the same thing would be permitted to them.—10. *Novis rebus studēre*, are fond of changes.—11. *Naturā libertāti studēre*, are naturally fond of liberty.

**P. 117.**—1. *Auxiliō* (sibi) &c., who were said to have been sent for by the Belgae as aid to themselves.—2. *Qui cam manum*, &c.,
that he should take care that that body should be kept apart.—
3. *Sitūs*, the situations.—4. *In extremīs lingūlīs*, on the extreme
points or tongues of land.—5. *Cūm ex alto*, &c., when the tide had flowed in from the deep; *i. e.* when it was full tide, or high water.
6. *Minuente* (sese) *astu*, the tide ebbing, or when the tide ebbs.—
7. *Naves in radis*, &c., the ships aground on the shallow places would be dashed with the waves.—8. *(In)strāque re*, in either case.—9. *Ag-
gēre ac molībus*, by a mound and dams.—10. *Appulso*, being brought up.—11. *Magnīs astībus*, &c., on account of the great tides, and there being few or almost no harbors.—12. *Factū armataque erant*, were built and equipped.—13. *Aliquanto planīōres*, considerably flatter.

**P. 118.**—1. *Excīpēre*, withstand, or admit of.—2. *Ad quam-
vis vim*, for enduring any violence and shock.—3. *Pedūlibus*, &c.,
of planks a foot in breadth.—4. Digiti pollicis crassitudine, of the thickness of one's thumb; i.e. an inch thick.—5. Pelles pro velis, &c., for sails there were to them (i.e. they had) raw hides and thin dressed skins;—lini, of linen, of canvass. 6. Regi, could be managed. 7. Cum his navibus, &c., the meeting of our fleet with these vessels was of such a nature, that the former had the advantage in swiftness only, and the sweep of the oars.—8. Reliqua, other things.—9. Neque enim his, &c. for our ships could not hurt them with the beak.—10. Copulis, grappling irons.—11. Savire, to blow hard.—12. Casus, the chances or dangers.—13. Neque his noceri posse, and that they could not be hurt.—14. Paratissimae atque, &c., in the best order; and equipped in the best manner, with every kind of tackling.

P. 119.—1. Bruto, &c., nor was it sufficiently clear to Brutus. 2. Aut quam rationem, &c., or what mode of fighting they would adopt.—3. Ut, so that.—4. Gravius acciderent, fell with greater force. 5. Falces praeacuit, hooks with sharpened edges towards the points. 6. Muralium, mural hooks; i.e. hooks used to pull down the walls in a siege; or their defenders.—7. Comprehensi adductique, were grappled and pulled towards us.—8. Latère posset, could escape notice; could pass unnoticed, or unobserved.—9. Cum singulas, &c., when two or three of our ships had surrounded each one of the enemy's.—10. Transcendere in naves hostium, to climb over into the ships of the enemy; to board the enemy's ships.—11. Quò ventus ferébat (naves), where, to which the wind carried them (the ships); Singulas nostris: &c., our men having pursued, took them one by one.

P. 120.—1. Graviissimæ atque, of heavier, i.e. of more advanced age.—2. In quos, &c., on these Cæsar resolved to inflict severer punishment, on this account that, &c.—3. Venditid reliquos sub corona, he sold the rest under the crown; i.e. he sold the rest for slaves.—Prisoners taken in war wore a chaplet (corona) on their heads when exposed to public sale. At sales by auction a spear was set up; hence, vendère sub hastâ, to sell by auction.—4. Atque his paucis diónibus, and within these few days.—5. Perditorum hominum, of ruined men; i.e. men of desperate fortunes.—6. Non nihil carparétur, was in some degree carped at, railed at:—Nihil and nonnihil in such sentences may be considered as accusatives governed by quod ad; § 128, Exc.

P. 121.—1. Eo absente qui tenébat summam imperii, he being absent who held the supreme command; in the absence of the commander in chief.—2. Hac confirmató opinione timóris, (the enemy's)
opinion of his fear being confirmed.—3. Propónit, he lays before
them, tells them of.—4. Neque longius abesse, &c.; and that it was
not farther off, but that on the next night; i. e. at no greater dis-
tance of time than the next night.—5. Ad castra iri oportère, lit-
erally, that it ought to be gone to the camp; See Idioms, 67.—
6. Perspectā confirmatio, the assertion of the deserter.—7. Quibus,
with which, i. e. that with these.—8. Quâm minimum spatii, as little
space of time as possible —9. Exanimati, out of breath.

P. 122.—1. Integris viribus, with strength still fresh.—2. Sa-
bitus (factus est certior) de, &c.—3. Minimè resistens, by no means
firm.—4. Ex tertii parte, as the third part,—an unusual expression,
and probably the text is incorrect.—5. Non mediocrem, &c., that
more than ordinary diligence must be used by him.—6. Quo pluri-
num valébant, in which they were very powerful.

P. 123.—1. Cujus rei, &c., in which art the Aquitáni are by
far the most expert.—2. Erario secturæ copper mines.—3. Nihil
his rebus proficisci posse, that they could be profited nothing by these
things.—4. Quorum hæc est conditio, the condition of whom (i. e. of
whose association) is this.—5. Sibi mortem consciscant, or make
away with themselves.—6. Barbari, the barbarians (referring to
the Vocates and Tarusátes).—7. Et naturâ loci et manu, both by
natural situation and by art.

P. 124.—1. Citerioris Hispaniæ; See Index.—2. Loca capère,
to select proper ground.—3. Facilè, easily; i. e. with safety.—
4. In dies, every day; literally, from day to day.—5. Hac re delatâ
ad consilium, this matter or plan being laid before a council (of
war).—6. Sentire idem, thought the same thing; were of the same
opinion, viz: with himself.—7. Duplici acie, a double line:—The
Romans usually drew up their army in three lines; on the present
occasion only two were formed, probably on account of their being
inferior in number to the enemy.—8. Auxiliis, &c., the aux-
iliares being placed in the centre,—their usual place was on the
wings.—9. Cum suâ cunctatione, &c., when the enemy had by their
own delay, and the opinion which was now entertained of their cow-
ardice, made our soldiers the more eager for battle.

P. 125.—1. Constanter ac non timidè, steadily and boldly
2. Decumánâ portâ, at the decuman, or rear gate; See Index, Cas-
tra.—3. Intritâ, not worn out, not fatigued.—1. Longiorù illinère,
by a longer route than usual.—5. Posset planè vidēri ab iis, it could
be distinctly seen by them.—6. Inténdérunt, strove.
NOTES ON BOOK IV.

P. 126.—1. Multā nocte, late at night,—or multā nocte actā, much of the night being spent.—2. Superērant, (supply soli, evidently implied,—hence the subjunctive following qui; § 141, R. V.) alone remained.—3. Qui longē aliā ratiōne ac, &c., and they resolved to prosecute the war in a very different manner from the rest of the Gauls.—4. Continentesque sīlvas, &c., and because they had extensive, uninterrupted forests:—Before continentes supply quod.

P. 127.—1. Conversam, &c., turned towards, facing, the enemy.—2. Confecto, being cleared.—3. Extrēma &c., the last of the baggage.—4. Sub pellibus, literally, under skins; i. e. in their tents:—The tents of the Roman soldiers were covered with skins. It does not appear that they ever used canvass for that purpose.—5. Quae proximē, &c., which had made war upon him last.

NOTES ON BOOK IV.

P. 128.—1. Eā hiēme, &c., the winter which followed; the next or following winter.—2. Cneio Pompeio, &c.:-Before Christ, 55, A. U. C. 699.—3. Quo Rhenus, &c., where the Rhine flows into it: near the mouth of the Rhine.—4. Qui domi manserint, since or because they remain at home.—5. Nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur, nor are the art and practice of war disused, discontinued, forgotten.—6. Maximam partem, for the most part; See Ref.—7. Nullō officio, &c., they are trained by no duty or discipline.

P. 129.—1. Ut quæ bello cepērint; Arrange: ut habeant (eos) quibus vendant (ea) quæ cepērint bello.—2. Jumentis importātis, imported cattle.—3. Quotidiānā exercitātione hāc prava atque deformīa (jumenta) quae sunt nata apud eos, ut (hāc jumenta) sint summi laboris:—Ut. &c., that they, (these beasts) are capable of the greatest labor, i. e. of enduring the greatest labor.—4. Audēnt adtre ad quemvis numerum, they dare to go to any number; they have courage to advance against, to attack, any number.—5. Publicē, to the nation.—6. Significāri, that proof is given.—7. Vacāre, to be empty, desolate uninhabited.—8. Ad altīram partem, on the other side.—9. Ut est captus Germanōrum. as the state of the Germans is; i. e.—
considering the condition of the Germans.—10. Amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis, the extent and populousness of their state (viz: the Ubii).

P. 130.—1. In câlem causâ, in a similar case.—2. (In regions) quas regiones, to the regions which.—3. Clam, privately, unobserved.—4. Tridui viam, a journey of three days.—5. Reliquam partem hicëmis, the remaining part of the winter; the rest of the winter;—aluerunt, maintained, supported.—6. Infirmitatem, the fickleness.—7. Nihil his committendum (esse), that nothing should be trusted to them.—8. Est autem hoc, &c., for this belongs to Gallic custom; this is one of the customs of the Gauls.

P. 131.—1. De summis rebus, &c., they enter into designs, concert measures, respecting the most important affairs.—2. E vestigio, literally, out of the footstep; i. e. speedily, instantly.—3. Cùm incertis rumoribus servierant, since they are mere slaves to uncertain rumors.—4. Ne graviorsi bello occurreret, that he might not meet with a more formidable war (viz: than he expected).—5. Facta (esse), had been done already.—6. Dissimulanda sibi, should be concealed by him.—7. Resistère (iis), to resist them and not to sue for peace.—8. Suam gratiam, their (the Germans') favor.—Sibi, to them, the Germans.—9. Eos (agros) quos, those lands which; i. e. such lands as; See Ref.—10. Concedère, yielded, acknowledged themselves inferior to.—11. In terris, upon the earth.

P. 132.—1. Arrange: Cæsar respondit ad hâc, quæ visum est (ei respondère).—2. Exitus, the conclusion.—3. Verum, just, reasonable, proper, right:—Verus has this sense chiefly when joined to the verb esse; as verum est, it is proper.—4. Neque ullos in Galliâ, &c., nor were there any lands vacant in Gaul.—5. Et, parte, &c.:—This is the reading of the Bipont edition. It is adopted by Anthon, and is manifestly better than the common text.—6. In plures diffīluì partes, divides into several branches.—7. Multis capittibus, by many heads, or mouths.

P. 133.—1. Sibi jurejurando, &c. should give them security by an oath.—2. Eōdem illo pertinentë, tended to the same end:—Eōdem and illo, here used adverbially, are properly old forms of the dative from idem and ille.—3. Sustinërent, should stand their ground.

P. 134.—1. Amplissimo genere natus, descended from a very illustrious family.—2. Intercluso, intercepted.—3. Se obtulit, presented himself; rushed against.—4. Summae dementiæ esse judicabat, he judged it to be the greatest folly; literally, to belong to, or to be
the part of the greatest folly.—5. Ne quem diem, &c., not to let a
day pass without a battle.—6. Omnibus principibus, &c., all their
leading men and elders being brought along; literally, being taken
unto them.—7. Sui purgandi, for the sake of clearing, excusing
themselves.—8. Contra alique. otherwise than; contrary to what
had been said.—9. Quos sibi Cæsar; &c, Cæsar rejoicing that these
had been cast in his way.

P. 135.—1. Perturbantur, &c., are thrown into confusion, so
that they were at a loss whether it would be best, &c.—2. Signifi-
caretur, was discovered, was evident.—3. Pristini diei, of the day
before;—for pridie.—4. Clamore, a shout, or noise, (either of the
Roman cavalry attacking those with whom they came up in the
rear,—or the wailing of those attacked).—5. Ad confluentem, at the
confluence.—6. Reliquâ fugâ desperatâ, despairing of making good
their flight any farther.—7. Ex tantâ belli timore, &c, from the
alarm of so great a war, since the number of the enemy had been
about four hundred and thirty thousand.—Before capitum, supply
ad numûrum.—8. Discendê potestatem, the liberty of departing.

P. 136.—1. Suis quoque rebus eos timère voluit, wished they
should be alarmed for their own possessions.—2. Et posse et audère,
had both the power and the courage.—3. Accessit etiam, it was
added also; i. e. another reason was.—4. Cur sui quicquam, &c.,
why should he (Cæsar) demand that any command or authority
should belong to him beyond the Rhine?—5. Occupationibus reipub-
llica, by the business of the republic.—6. Neque Sue neque Popûli
Romani, and thought that it became neither his own dignity nor that
of the Roman people.—7. Propônebâtur, was placed before him,
was manifest.

P. 139.—1. Instituit, &c., he determined on this plan of a
bridge.—2. He joined together at the distance of two feet, tigna
bina, beams, or piles, two by two, (or in pairs,) sharpened a little at
the lower end, and measured, (or proportioned) to the depth of the
river.—3. Hac cùm machinationibus, &c., when he had fastened
these, being let down into the river by machines, and had driven
them down with rammers (fistûcis).—4. Non sulpupper, &c., not per-
pendicularly after the manner of a stake, but bending forward and
sloping (downward, or down the stream).—5. His item contraria,
&c., likewise opposite to these, at the distance of forty feet down
the river, (ab inferior parte fluminis,) he placed two others joined
in the same manner, but turned (up the stream) against the force
and current of the river.—6. Hac utraque insûper, &c., both these
(viz: the pair above and the pair below,) were kept apart (or from falling towards each other,) by beams let in from above, two feet thick, being as much as the joining of these piles was apart, (i. e. as the piles, joined by the braces, were apart,)—each having two braces, one on each side near the end.—7. Quibus discclusis, &c., these (pairs) being kept apart, and (at the same time,) bound together in the contrary direction.—8. Ea rerum natura, such the nature of the materials.—9. Quo major vis, &c., literally, by how much a greater force of water urged itself on; i. e. that the more the force of the current pressed on, the more closely were they held bound together.—10. Hae (tigna, i. e. beams of two feet square reaching from one pair of piles to the other below it,) directa materia, &c., were fastened together with timbers laid lengthwise (directa) of the bridge; i. e. from beam to beam.—11. Longuriis, &c., and covered over with long poles and hurdles.—12. Ac nihil secus, &c., and besides all this, piles were driven in obliquely at the lower part of the stream.—13. Pro pariēte, for a buttress, or support.—14. Et alia item, and likewise others.—15. Dejiciendi operis (causā), for the sake of throwing down (destroying) the work, the bridge.—16. (Ex) Quibus materia, &c., after the days in which, or, after that the materials had been begun to be brought together:—Quibus, i. e. ex diebus quibus, is here used instead of the more common expression, postquam, or ex (tempore) quo;—See also B. III. Chap. 23d. and Gr. § 131, Obs. 3d.—17. Ad utramque partem, at each end.

P. 140.—1. Iis hortantibus, by the advice of those.—2. In solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant, had gone into the deserts and forests to conceal themselves;—This rendering gives the force of the accusative after in, which is evidently a better reading than in solitudine, &c., which excludes the idea of going to;—So also, in silvas deponebant, below.—3. Hunc esse delectum, that this was selected as nearly the middle, or centre.—1. Ulcisceretur, that lie might punish.—5. Satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem perfectum, that enough had been done, both for his honor and for utility, (profectum is from proficiō, and means the same as perfectum).—6. Maturae, early.—7. Inde, thence, i. e. from Britain.

P. 141.—1. Temérē, rashly, without good reason.—2. Neque tisipsis quicquam notum est, nor is any thing known even by them. 3. Quem usum bellī, &c., what experience they had in war, or what customs they followed.—4. In eo sententia, in that mind, resolution. 5. Horteturque, and that he should urge them.—6. Fidem sequantur,
to embrace the alliance; literally, should follow the faith.—7. *Quantum et facultatis, &c.,* as far as opportunity could be given; literally, with so much of opportunity as, &c.; see Idioms, 46, 1.—8. *Qui since he.*

**P. 142.**—1. *De superioris, &c.,* for their past conduct.—2. *Has tantulorum, &c.,* these engagements in such trifling affairs. 3. (Tot) *navibus onerariis,* so many ships of burden, &c.,—*quot, as;* see Index, *Naves.*—4. *Tertia fere vigilia,* near the third watch, or midnight.—5. *Solvit (naves),* looses his ships, sets sail.—6. *Conscendere naves,* to go on board; to embark.—7. *Horae quartae,* the fourth hour, i.e. 10 o'clock, A. M.; see Gr. App. I.—8. *Expostulas,* drawn out, displayed.

**P. 143.**—1. *Adeo angustis,* so steep.—2. *Ad egrediendum, for disembarking, for landing.*—3. *Ad nonam horam,* till the ninth hour, i.e. 3 o'clock P. M.—4. *Monuitque, &c.,* and warned them that all things should be done at a beck, and in a moment, as the principles, &c.—5. *Et essedariis,* and the essedarii, i.e. those who fought from the essedum, or two wheeled chariot.—6. *Prohibebant,* attempted to hinder; see § 44. II. 2.—7. *Militibus—desiliendum,* &c., the soldiers had to leap down from the ships.—8. *Omnibus membris expediti,* having the free use of all their limbs.—9. *Insuefactos,* accustomed to such exercise.—10. *Quarum et species,* both the appearance of which.

**P. 144.**—1. *Remis incitari,* to be pushed on, rowed briskly forward, with the oars.—2. *Tormentis,* engines (for throwing heavy darts or stones. namely, the balista and catapulta).—3. *Quae res,* this expedition.—4. *Ac paulum modò, &c.* and retreated only a little, a very little.—5. *Qui (he), who.*—6. *Ea res,* that thing (viz: which he was about to do).—7. *Magnae voce,* with a loud voice.—8. *Ex navi se projicit,* he threw himself out of the ship, overboard.—9. *Singulares,* one by one, one after another.—10. *Quod cum animum adversisset, i.e. Cum vertisset animum ad quod.*—11. *Scaphas longorum navium,* the boats belonging to the vessels of war.—12. *Speculatoria navigia,* spy vessels.

**P. 145.**—1. *Cursum tetere,* hold on their course;—*atque insulam capere,* and reach the island.—2. *Suprà,* viz: Ch. 21.—3. *Modo oratoris,* in the character of an ambassador.—4. *Culpam contulit, laid the blame.*—5. *In continentem,* to the continent, i.e. to Gaul.—6. *Imprudentiae,* their indiscretion.—7. *Arcessitam,* having been sent for.—8. *Post diem quartum,* after the fourth day, i.e.,
on the fourth day after.—9. Suprà; See Ch. 23,—sustulérant, had taken on board.—10. Quæ cum appropinquárent, and when they were drawing near.—11. Quæ est proprius solis occásum, which is more to the west.—12. Quæ, these —13. Necessarió adversá nocte in altum provectæ, from necessity, being carried out to sea in an unfavorable, stormy, night.

P. 146.—1. (Dies) qui dies, a day which (viz: the day of the full moon.—2. Nostris id incognitum erat, to our men this (viz: the great rising of the tide,) was unknown.—The phenomena of the tides were but little known to the Romans, as the tides in the Mediterranean with which they were most familiar, are scarcely observable.—3. Quæ delígatæ erant ad anchóras, which had been tied to the anchors; which had been riding at anchor.—4. Afflictábat, dashed violently against; drove from their moorings.—5. Quod omnibus constabat. because it was evident to all —6. His in locís, in these places (viz: in Britain).—7. Rem producère, to prolong the war.—8. Ex eventu navium. from what happened to, from the disaster of, the ships (the genitive passive).—9. Et ex eo quōd, &c., and from this, because they had intermitted; i. e. and from their having intermitted.

P. 147.—1. Ad omnes casus, for every emergency; against all contingencies.—2. Reíquís ut navigári, that it could be navigated with the rest.—3. Dum ea geruntur, whilst these things are carrying on, doing; during these transactions.—4. In statione, on guard.—5. Quãm consuetúdo ferret, than custom brought: i. e. than was usual. 6. In stationibus, on guard.—7. In stationem succéderé, to succeed on guard.—8. Et, confertâ legiwayne, &c., and that the legion being crowded together, weapons were hurled upon it from all quarters. 9. Quōd, because, inasmuch as —10 Incertis ordinibus, on account of not knowing their ranks, (They had been scattered about, reaping, and being attacked while thus employed, they could not find their ranks).—11. Genus hoc est, &c., the manner of fighting from the chariots was this.—12. Ipso terróre equórum, by the very terror occasioned to the horses (the genitive passive); and the noise, rotárum, of the wheels (the genitive active); § 106, Obs. 1.

P. 148.—1. Insinuaverint, when they have wrought themselves in.—2. Aurige, the charioteers, or drivers:—Each chariot contained a driver called auriga, and one who fought, called esse-darius.—3. Atque ita currú se collocant, and place themselves with the chariot in such a situation.—1. Praestant mobilitatem equitum, &c., they perform, unite the swiftness of cavalry and the steadiness
of infantry.—5. Ac efficiunt tantum, and they acquire such dexterity.—6. Incitatos equos sustinere, to rein in their horses when at full speed.—7. Et brevi (tempore), and in a moment.—8. Continuos plures dies, many days in succession.—9. Suis (civibus), to their own countrymen.—10. Quanta facultas, &c., how favorable an opportunity was presented of getting booty, and of regaining their independence forever.

P. 149.—1. Ante dictum est, viz: Ch. 21, & 27.—2. Omnibus afflictis incensisque longe latèque, having destroyed and burned every thing far and wide; See Idioms, 104, 1.—3. Die æquinocitii, the equinox.—4. Hiëmi navigatiónem subjiciendam, that his voyage ought to be exposed to a storm (viz: the equinoctial storm).—5. Eosdem quos reliqua portus capere, to make the same harbor which the rest made.—6. Quibus ex navibus, &c., had been landed from these ships.—7. Non itu magno, with not so great. i. e. with no very great number.—8. Si nollent, if they did not wish.—9. Or. be facto, forming themselves into a circle; See above, Note 2.—10. Vértérent tera, turned their backs; fled.

P. 150.—1. In densissimas silvas abdisérant, had gone into the thickest parts of the forests to hide themselves; See Note 2, page 140.

NOTES ON BOOK V.

P. 151.—1. Lucio Domitio, i. e. A. U. C., 700; B. C. 54.—2. Quam plurímas possent, &c., that as many new ships as possible should be built, and old ones repaired.—3. Ad celeritatem onerandi, &c., for despatch of lading and drawing them on shore, he builds them a little lower than those which, &c.—4. Nostro mari, in our sea, viz: the Mediterranean.—5. Actuarias, light, easily driven; See Index, Naves.—6. Adjudvat multum, contributes much,—7. Ad armandas, for equipping.—8. Omnibus rationibus, in every proper way.

P. 152.—1. Quo litem æstimet, to estimate the damage (Idioms, 83, 2,) and fix the compensation.—2. Conventibus, the assizes. 3. Instructas, got ready finished.—4. Neque multum abesse, &c., nor was much wanting but that they could be launched in a few
days, i.e. there was so little to do that they could, &c.—5. Transmissum, &c., the passage across into Britain was the most convenient, being a passage of about thirty miles.—6. Expeditis, unencumbered with baggage.—7. Alter, the one (viz: Cingetorix).—8. In silvan, &c., having gone and concealed themselves in the forest of Arduenna; See Note 2, p. 240.

P. 153.—1. Civitati consulte, take measures for the state, for the common good.—2. Laberetur, should fall off, revolt.—3. Permissūrum(esse) would give up.—4. Suam gratiam, that his influence.—5. Exarsit multo gravius hoc dolore, he was much more exasperated at this affront.—6. Non potuisse tencre cursum, could not keep their course; could not proceed on their voyage.

P. 154.—1. Antea dictum; B. I. Ch. 3.—2. Cupidum novārum rerum, fond of changes, of insurrections, of a revolution in the state.—3. Id factum, this fact.—4. Pelēre contendit, endeavored to obtain,—religionibus, religious obligations.—5. Non sine causā fieri, that it was not done without some secret motive; that Gaul was stripped of all her nobility.—6. Fidem reliquis interponēre, that he pledged his word to the rest.—7. Quod esse ex usu, &c., whatever they should understand to be for the interest of Gaul.—8. Quod tantum dignitātis, because he had always shewn so much respect.—9. Longius progressi, was going too far.—10. Prospiciendum, that he ought to take care.

P. 155.—1. Ne quid sibi, &c. that he (Dumnorix) should not be able, have it in his power, to do any injury to him and the state. 2. Corus, the northwest wind.—3. (Ut) cognoscēret, that he should find out.—4. Omnium animis impeditis, the minds of all being engaged.—5. Hunc pro sano, that he, as a man in his senses.—6. Ille enim, but, or nevertheless he.—7. Consiliumque pro tempore, &c., and that he might take measures, (form his plans,) according to time and circumstances.—8. Pari numēro equitum quem, &c. with a like number of cavalry which; i.e. with a number of cavalry equal to that which he left.—9. Longius delatus estu, being carried down by the tide farther than usual.—10. Secūtus, taking advantage of.

P. 156.—1. Virtus, the valor, i.e. the efforts, the exertions, 2. Vectoriisque navigiis, in transports and heavy laden vessels.—3. Accessum est (ab illis) ad, they (the Romans) reached, arrived at.—4. Cum annotinis, with the ships of the previous year.—5. Veritūs navibus, fearing for the ships,—instead of de navibus.—6. In littōre molli atque aperto, on a smooth and open shore.—
7. Praecusi, blocked up.—8. Testudine facta, et aggiere, &c., a testudo being erected and a mound thrown up against their fortifications.

P. 157.—1. Tripartitò, in three divisions,—milités, the foot soldiers, the infantry.—2. Superiòre nocte, in the former night.—3. Affictas atque, &c.—had been dashed against each other, and driven on shore.—4. Subsistèrent, could hold out.—5. Ex eo concurrus, from that rencontre of the ships; from the ships running foul of one another.—6. Incommòdum, injury, damage.—7. Coram, openly, with his own eyes.—8. Res, a work.—9. Subdici, to be drawn on shore.—10. Summa imperii, &c. the chief command and administration of the war.—11. Superiòre tempóre, at a former period.

P. 158.—1. Quos natos, &c., "who, they say it was handed down by tradition, were born on the island,"—an opinion prevalent among many ancient nations respecting themselves.—2. Bello illato, the war having been waged, being over.—3. Cerberrima, very thick, close together.—4. Fere Gallicis consimilia, almost like; i. e. closely resembling those of the Gauls.—5. Taleis ferreis ad certum pondus, &c., pieces of iron tried by, i. e. of a certain weight.—6. Plumbum album, tin (literally, white lead).—7. Copia, the quantity.—8. Matèria, wood, timber.—9. Causà animi voluptatisque, for the sake of amusement and pleasure.—10. Loca, places, climate.—11. Remissòribus, less intense.—12. Triquetra, triangular.—13. Ad Cantium, in Kent; from Land's end to the eastern extremity of Kent, is about 344 British miles, or 356 Roman miles in a straight line. It would be much more to follow the irregularities of the coast.—14. Ad Hispaniam:—This statement is erroneous, as Spain lies to the south, not to the west of Britain.—15. Dimidio minor, less by one half:—Great Britain is computed at 77,370 square miles,—Ireland at 30,370.—16. Sed pari spatio transmissis, but the passage across to Britain is the same distance as from Gaul.—17. Mona, the Isle of Man.—18. Dies continuos, &c., that there is night for thirty successive days at the winter solstice, i. e. the 22d December:—This is not true in fact, unless the dark, cloudy, and foggy weather, at that season, is here improperly called "night."—19. Nisi certis ex aqua, &c. but we perceived, by accurate water measures, that the nights were shorter than on the continent.—The "water measure" is the Clepsydra, or water-clock,—an invention similar to the sand-glass.

P. 159.—1. Septingentòrum millium, seven hundred miles:—The true length of the western coast is 590 British or 610 Roman
miles.—2. Contra septentriones, opposite the north.—This is not correct; the east is much nearer the truth.—3. Octingenta militia passuum, eight hundred miles:—This exceeds the true estimate 230 Roman miles.—4. Humanissimi, most civilized.—5. Se vitro insiciunt, stain themselves with woad.—6. Capillloque sunt promiss, and are with, i. e. they have, long hair.—7. Deni et duodéni, parties of ten and twelve,—habent uxores communes inter se.—8. Quo primum virgo, &c., by whom each female, when a virgin, was first married. 9. (Ita) tamen ut, in such a way however that.—10. Submissis, being sent to their aid,—atque his, and these.—11. Constitissent, had taken their ground.

P. 160.—1. Cùm, since, or as; § 140, Obs. 3.—2. Intellectum est (a nobis) nostros, we perceived (Idioms 67,) that our men.—3. Cedentes. those giving way —4. Cedèrent, gave way, yielded.—5. Pedibus dispári pretílo, on foot, in an unequal contest; i. e. with great advantage (against us) —6. Conserti, close, in a close body;—rari, scattered here and there —7. Alios alien deinceps excipérunt, &c., and they continued one to relieve another in succession, and the vigorous and the fresh succeeded (took the place of) those fatigued.—8. Lenís, with less spirit.—9. Ut non absístérent ab, that they kept not far from, i. e. close to, &c.—10. Neque post id tempus, &c., nor after that time did the enemy ever engage us with all their forces; nor did the enemy, after that time, ever come to a general engagement with us.

P. 161.—1. Acutís sudibus præfixís, with sharp stakes fixed in front.—2. Cùm capite, &c., when they (the soldiers) were above the water with the head alone; i. e. were up to the neck in the water.—3. Ut suprà, &c.; Ch. 17.—4. Dimissis amplioribus copiís, the greater part of the forces being dismissed.—5. Ex viát excedebat, withdrew from the road.—6. Relinquébatur, &c., it remained that Caesar did not suffer;—discedi (ab equitibus) that the cavalry should go; Idioms, 67.—7. Hostibus noceretur, &c., that the enemy were injured by laying waste their lands and setting fire to their property, as far as the legionary soldiers could effect it in the midst of labor and on their march, i. e. on a laborious march.

P. 162.—1. Atque mittat (eum, i. e. Mandubratium,) qui proexil, &c., and send him (Mandubratius) into the state that he might rule over it, and hold the government.—2. Ad numerum, to the number,—imperum, required,—frumentoque, and abundance of corn:—"Abundance" is expressed by the plural term, frumentum.—3. Prohibitís, being protected.—4. Vocant oppidum, call it a town.
5. *Ad mare,* on the sea shore; Ch. 13.—6. *Adoriantur atque oppugnent,* should attack and storm; take by assault.


2. *Rectas,* repaired,—*his* (navibus) *deductis* (in mare), those ships being brought down into the sea; *i.e.* being launched.—3. *Captivorum,* of prisoners.—4. *Commeatibus,* embarkations.—5. *Navigationibus,* voyages, trips.—6. *Desideraretur,* was missing, lost.—

7. *Et prioris conmeatus* both those of the previous convoy,—et quas, and of those which.—8. *Perpauca locum caperint,* very few reached their destination.—9. *Necessariò angustiìs milites collocavit,* from necessity stowed his soldiers more closely (than usual).—

10. *Subductis navibus* (in aridum), the ships being drawn on shore.

11. *Frumentum provenérat angustiis,* corn, grain had (come forth) been produced more scantily; the crop had been less abundant.—

12. *In plures civitates,* among a greater number of states than usual.

P. 164.—1. *Medéri,* cure, remedy.—2. *Millibus passuum,* &c., were contained within the space of a hundred miles:—(Probably an error as to the extent.)—3. *Natus summo loco,* descended from a very noble family; of very noble birth.—4. *Tertium jam annum,* &c. killed him, (Tasgetius) now reigning the third year, many belonging to the state being the instigators.—5. *Quod ad plures,* &c., because it pertained to more than one; *i.e.* more than one were concerned in it.—6. *In hiberna perventum* (esse), that they had arrived at winter quarters; literally, it had been come by them to winter quarters.

P. 165.—1. *Qui cum ad fines,* &c., and when they had met Sabinus and Cotta at the borders of their kingdom.—2. *Deserérat re,* having despaired of success.—3. *De communi re,* concerning their common interests.—4. *Minuit posse,* could be adjusted; literally, diminished.—5. *Missu Caesaris,* by the sending of Cæsar; *i.e.* being sent by Cæsar.—6. *Ad hunc modum,* to this purpose.—7. *Sese,* that he (Ambiorix):—This speech is given in oblique narration; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—8. *Plurimum ei debère,* that he was under very great obligations to him.—9. *De oppugnatione castrorum,* respecting the attack on the camp.—10. *Suàque esse,* &c., that his authority was of such a nature,—*multitudo,* the people.—11. *Ex humilitate suà,* from his weakness, slender circumstances.—12. *Esse Galliæ commune consilium,* &c., that it was the purpose of the whole of Gaul, that this day had been appointed by them for attacking (at once) all the winter quarters of Cæsar; so that no legion could bring aid to another.
P. 166.—1. Quibus quoniam pro pietate, &c., since he had done justice to them so far as affection (to his country) required, that he now had regard to the claims of duty for the kindnesses of Caeser to him.—2. Pro hospitio, by the ties of friendship.—3. Ipsorum esse consilium, it belonged to them (Titurius and Cotta,) to consider,—velintne, whether they should.—4. Quod cum facial, since he was doing this, i. e. in doing this he consulted, &c.—5. Existit, arises.—6. Sustinendi, could be withstood, resisted.—7. Rem esse testimonio, that fact was for proof; i. e. that facts proved this.

P. 167.—1. Levius aut turpius, weaker or more cowardly.—2. Auctore hoste, an enemy being the author; on the information of an enemy.—3. Clamitabat, kept crying out; § 44, II. 2.—4. Cæsarum arbitrai profectum in Italian, that he supposed that Caeser had gone into Italy.—5. Non hostem auctorem, &c., that he did not look at the enemy’s being the adviser, but at the thing itself.—6. Ardere, burned with resentment.—7. Sine certà re, without certain information.—8. Si nil sit durius, if nothing occurred more difficult than ordinary.—9. Unam salutem, their only security.—10. Præsens, immediate.—11. Hec in utramque, &c., this dispute being maintained on both sides.—12. Primisque ordinibus, and the chief centurions.

13. Vincite, prevail, carry your point:—This is spoken in the direct discourse; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—14. Et id, and that, i. e. et dixit id.

15. Hi (milites), these (referring to the Roman soldiers within hearing,) will understand;—abs te rationem, will demand satisfaction from you (Cotta); will call you to account.—16. Nec rejecti nec relegati, &c., and not perish with either the sword or famine, as if forced away and banished far from the rest.

P. 168. —1. Consurgit tur, they arise, break up.—2. Utrumque, both; viz: Cotta and Titurius.—3. Res disputatio ne ad medium noc tem, the affair is protracted by their dispute; i. e. the subject is debated till midnight.—4. Dux manus, gives his hands; i. e. yields,—a mode of expression borrowed from the form of making a surrender by stretching forth, or holding up the hands.—5. Pronunciatur, it is published; orders are given,—vigiliis, without sleep.—6. Quid, i. e. spectans, or visurus quid, to see what.—7. Omnìa excogitantor, &c., every reason is suggested to show,—quare, why.—8. Vigiliiis, want of sleep.—9. Ut quibus persuatum esset, since they were persuaded.—10. Se demississet, had gone down.—11. Ut qui, since he, or because he.—12. Hac tamen ipsa (licet) these very things however (he did),—atque (ita) ut, and so that; in such a way that.—13. In ipso negotio, &c., to deliberate in the very moment of action.
P. 169.—1. Auctor, an adviser.—2. Possent minùs facile obtine omnia per se, they could less easily perform every thing themselves; every part of their duty could not be performed by them in person (viz: Cotta and Titarius).—3. Jussurunt (duces) pronunciare (militibus).—4. In orbem consisténter, and form (Idioms, 85,) themselves into a circle.—5. Incomméndé accidit, it proved unfortunate.—6. Vulgà, every where.—7. (Ut) quæ quisque, &c. that whatever things any one of them considered the most valuable, these he hastened, &c.—8. Consilium non definìt barbaris, prudence was not wanting to the barbarians; the barbarians were not deficient in prudence, skill.—9. Illorum esse pradam, &c., that the booty belonged to them; (the Gauls) and that whatever the Romans should leave would be reserved for them; (Idioms, 94, 3.)—10. Erant et virtute, &c., both in valor and number, our men were a match for them in fighting.—11. Cedant, they should give way before them.—12. Nihil is noceri posse, that they could not be hurt:—For nihil see § 116, Obs. 3.

P. 170.—1. Locum tenére, to keep their place (in the circle).—2. Ad horum octavam, till the eighth hour (2 o'clock, P. M.)—3. Utrumque femur transfixit (militibus), each thigh is pierced through with a dart, to T. Balventius, a brave, &c.; a dart transfixed both the thighs of T. Balventius.—4. Subvinit, is bringing aid; is endeavoring to rescue.—5. In aedcum os, full in the mouth.—6. Ipsi vero nihil noctum iri, but that he should not be hurt; that no harm should be done to himself;—se interponére, that be pledged.—7. Alque in eo constitít, and persisted in it.—8. In praesentia (tempóară), at present.

P. 171.—1. Victoriam conclámant, shout victory.—2. Illi, they, viz. those who had retreated to the camp.—3. Ad vum, to a man.—4. Sublatus, being elated.—5. Nihil esse negotii, that it was an easy matter.—6. Sè proficisci, he offers himself.—7. Istius quoque accidit, to him, to this officer (Cicero) it happened.

P. 172.—1. Egrèe is dies sustentatur (a nostris), that day is maintained by our men with difficulty; i.e. our men hold out that day with difficulty.—2. Proposittis, being offered.—3. Turres admodum, &c., one hundred and twenty towers in all, altogether.—4. Praestàe sudes, stakes burned at the end.—5. Turres contabuluntur, towers of several stories are raised;—pinæe loricæque, &c., battlements and parapets are constructed of interwoven hurdles.—6. Cum esset tenuissimar valetudine, though he was in a very feeble state of health.—7. Sibi parcére, to spare himself.—8. Alquem
aditum sernônis, any intimacy.—9. Factâ-potentâte, leave being given.

P. 173.—1. Ambiorígem ostentant, &c., for the sake of gaining credit, they ostentatiously point to Ambiorix; i.e. they tell of his arrival.—2. Eos, that they; viz: Cæsar and his army.—3. Hoc animo, of such a disposition; are so favorably disposed.—4. Lucère illis, that it would be permitted to them (the Romans),—per se, by them (the Nervii).—5. Adjutóre, as an intercessor.—6. Pro ejus justitiâ, through his regard for justice.—7. Sed nullâ ferramentórum copiâ, but there being no quantity (or abundance) of iron tools.—8. Sagúlis (dim. of sagum), short cloaks.—9. Terram exaurire, to remove the earth.—10. Millium (passuum).—11. Falces testudinésque, mural hooks and sheds; See Index, Vince and Testudo.—12. Ferventes glandes ex fusílì argillâ, red hot balls of cast clay.—13. Fervèfacta jacúla, fiery javelins.—14. Distuléruit, spread the flames.—15. Agère, advance.

P. 174.—1. Demigrandi, of retiring from the fight, yielding.—2. Accrímè fortissimèque, with the greatest ardor and bravery.
3. Recessumque primis, &c., and the last (the farthest off) did not give a retreat, (an opportunity of retreating,) to the foremost.—
4. Turri, a tower, (of the enemy,)—vallum, (our) rampart.—
5. Quorum, of whom; viz: the enemy;—progridi, to come forth; viz: from the tower.—6. Deturbátì, &c., they were dislodged and the tower set on fire.—7. Qui jam primis ordinibus, &c., who were advancing (rising) to the first ranks.—8. Spectas, do you look for.

P. 175.—1. In illum, at him (Pulcio).—2. Succurrít inimícus, &c. Varenus, though his rival, runs up and assists him in danger.—
3. Hunc, him, (Varenus).—4. Illum, that he (Pulcio).—5. In locum dejectus, &c., stumbling, he fell; or, he stumbled and fell into a hollow place.—6. In contentiône et certamine, in this honorable rivalry and contest;—utrumque versávit, &c., employed, directed, both, that the one, though the rival, alternately brought aid and security to the other.—7. Quanto gravior, &c., the more severe and difficult,—tanto crebrisores, the more frequently; § 98, Obs. 10.—
8. Únum Nervius, a certain Nervian.—9. Honesto loco, of an honorable family.—10. Servo (suo) a slave of his.—11. Periculûs, the great danger (literally, the dangers).—12. Undécimâ horâ, the eleventh hour, 5 o'clock, P. M.; see Gr. App. I.

21
P. 176.—1. Qua sibi iter faciendum sciebat, where he knew he would have to pass.—2. Si república commódo &c., if he could do it with advantage to the state.—3. Litēras publicas, the public documents.—1. Tolerandae hicis causā, for the sake of enduring the winter; for a winter supply.—5. Rem gestam, the things done, the course pursued.—6. Opiniōne dejectus, disappointed in his expectation; literally, cast down from his expectation.

P. 177.—1. Si adire non possit, if he could not gain access (to the camp).—2. Ad amentum deligātā, tied to the thong, or strap: The amentum was a strap fastened to the middle of a spear or javelin, by means of which it was thrown with greater force.—3. Casu, by chance.—4. Perleclam, being read over; after he had read it over himself.—5. Expūlit, dispelled, put an end to.—6. Tamen angustiis viārum, nevertheless, by the narrowness of the ways (or passages) between the tents.

P. 178.—1. Galli (hoc faciunt) Cæsar (hoc facit).—2. In suum locum, to his own ground; i.e. ground favorable to him.—3. Porlasque obstruī, &c., the gates to be blocked up, and in doing this, that they should run to and fro as much as possible:—This was designed to lead the enemy to believe that there was great trepidation and fear in the camp.—4. Etiam de vallo deductis, &c., and being drawn back, even from the rampart, they (the enemy,) approach nearer.—5. Ad se, to them, viz: from the Roman camp.—6. Ac sic nostros contemserunt, and to such a degree did they show their contempt of us.—7. Eā (viā), in that way.—8. Longiūs, too far.—9. Illōrum, of them, viz: the enemy.

P. 179.—1. Legiōne productā, &c., having led forth the legion; having reviewed the legion, he finds; (Idioms, Í04.).—2. Pro ejus merito, according to his merit; as he deserved;—appellat, he addresses by name.—3. Rem gestam propōnit, he lays before them (viz: Cotta and Sabinus) the matter as it took place.—4. Culpā, by the misconduct.—5. Hoc, on this account.—6. Quōd, seeing, since. 7. Incommōdo expiāto, &c., the loss being retrieved; the disaster having been remedied by the kindness, &c.—8. Post hōram nonam, after 3 o’clock, P. M.; See Gr. App. I.—9. Trinās hibernis, in three several winter quarters; i.e. in three different places.—10. Consultābant, were consulting, deliberating; § 44, II. 2.—11. Quid consolationis reliquis capitārent, &c., what measures the rest were adopting, and where a beginning of the war would be made.—12. Concilia, assemblies, meetings.
P. 180.—1. *Quin aliquid, &c.*, but he heard, (that he did not hear,) some intelligence.—2. *Armorica*, states lying along the north of Gaul, now Bretagne.—3. *Dicto audientes*, obedient:—In this phrase *audientes* governs *dicto*, by § 112, R. V.; again, the words *audientes dicto*, together, are equivalent to *obedientes*, and often govern another dative by the same Rule; as, *Nobis dicto obedienti*, obedient to us.—4. *Tantum valuit*, prevailed so much; had so much influence.—5. *Attulit*, produced, caused.—6. *Præcipuo semper honore habuit*, treated always with special honor.—7. *Altéros*, *altéros*, the former,—the latter.—8. *Nulla fere civitas, &c.*, almost every state was suspected by us.—9. *Idque adeo, &c.*, and I do not know whether this is to be wondered at.—10. *Quód, qui, &c.*, because they grieved most bitterly that they who were accustomed to be ranked before all nations in valor, had lost so much of that reputation that they should endure the commands of the Roman people.—*Qui* has for its antecedent *se* in the next clause.

P. 181.—1. *Lapsus húc spe*, having fallen from this hope; *i. e.* being disappointed in this hope.—2. *Ultró ad se ventri* (ab hominibus, 67, 7,) that men were coming to him of their own accord.—3. *Omnibus cruciatibus*, by every species of torture.—4. *Alterius factionis*, of the opposite faction.—5. *Sectum fidem Cæsâris*, having put himself under the protection of Cæsar.—6. *Huc*, to them.


NOTES ON BOOK VI.

P. 183.—1. *Dilectum habère*, to hold a levy; to raise forces.—2. *Quoniam ipse ad urbem, &c.*, since he (Pompey) remained near the city with military command, on account of the republic (The
laws did not allow a person invested with military powers to enter the city,) that he would order those troops which he had raised in Cisalpine Gaul (and had bound) by the oath of fidelity to the consul.—3. Sarciri, &c., be repaired, but even be more than compensated by greater forces.—4. Quod cum Pompeius, &c., Pompey having granted this.—5. Ut docutimus, as we have shewn.—6. Obsidibusque de pecuniā carent, secure the payment of the money by means of hostages.

P. 184.—1. Ad imperātum, to the thing commanded; i.e. to do the thing commanded.—2. Nondum hiēme consectā, the winter being not yet ended, i.e. before the end of winter.—3. Úti instituērat, as he had been accustomed.—4. Omnia every thing else.—5. Sed ab hoc consilio absuisset existimabantur, but were supposed to be absent from, (not concerned in) this scheme (plot).—6. Hāc re, &c., this thing (the adjournment) being published from the tribunal; (an elevated place formed of turf or other material heaped up together, suggestus).—7. Conantibus, &c., to them attempting to do this.—8. Sententia, from this design.—9. Deprecandi, of excusing their conduct.—10. Quōd aestivum, &c., because the summer was the time for prosecuting the war, not for legal investigations.

P. 185.—1. Totus et mente et animo, wholly with his mind and soul; i.e. with his whole heart and soul.—2. Ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiā, &c., that no commotion might arise, either from this man's violent temper, or from that hatred on the part of the state which he had incurred (in consequence of having been made king over it by Caesar).—3 Pro explorāto, for certain.—4. Circumspiciēbat ejus (Ambiorīgis) reliqua consilia animo, watched his other plans in his mind (i.e. with attention).—5. Perpetuis paludibus, continued, uninterrupted marshes.—6. Illī, from him (Ambiorīx), ipsum, (Ambiorīx) himself. —7. Congrēdi cum Transrhenānīs, to unite with those beyond the Rhine.—8. Manu, an army.—9. Praēsidio loci, to the protection of the place, the strength of their position.—10. Effectis, erected, built.—11. Adit tripūrtitō, marches against them in three divisions.

P. 186.—1. Augēbātur (hostibus) was increased to the enemy.—2. Loquitur, he (Labienus) speaks.—3. In dubium non devocatūrum, would not endanger, involve in doubt.—4. Gallicēs rebus, the interest, the affairs of the Gauls.—5. Primi ordinibus, the chief centurions.—6. Longum esse, that it would be long, too long, too late.
P. 187.—1. Usus eàdem simulatione itinérís, practising the same deception respecting his march.—2. Facultätēm, opportunity. 3. Præstátête, display.—4. Præsidio ad impedimenta dimissis, being detached to the baggage for a guard; i. e. to guard the baggage.—5. Præter spem, contrary to expectation.—6. Infestis signis, with hostile standards.—7. Cingetorígī—traditum est, was conferred on Cingetorix; See B. V. Ch. 3. and 56.—8. Ne Ambiôrîx ad eos receptum habérât, that Ambiorix might not have a retreat to them; a place of refuge among them.


P. 189.—1. Aliénūm, improper, foreign to the purpose.—2. Proponēre, to treat of, lay before, to give some account of.—3. In omnibus pagis partibusque, in all the cantons and parts of cantons.—4. Princípes eàrum factíonum, &c., the heads of these factions are (persons) who in their opinion are considered to have the greatest interest, on whose will and decision all their most important affairs and resolutions hinge, depend.—5. Idque ejus rei causā, &c., and this custom seems to have been instituted from early times, for this reason.—6. Quisque non patiitur,—neque habent, each leader (patron),—neither do they have:—The pupil may here notice the transition from the singular, patiitur, with quisque, to the plural, habent; § 102, Obs. 5.—7. Hac eàdem ratio est, &c., this same principle exists, prevails, in the government of all Gaul.—8. Princípes, chief, at the head of.—9. Jactūris, expenses, gifts:—This is a pure use of the word, which denotes a present loss in expectation of future benefit.—10. Tantum potentià antecessérant, they (the Sequani) so far excelled (the Ædui) in power.—11. Re infectā, the business, his object, being unaccomplished.—12. Éorum amicitiam their (the Ædui's) friendship.

P. 190.—1. Reliquis rebus, &c., here the participle, amplificatū, agrees with the nearest noun; See § 98, Obs. 4.—2. Dimisérant, (for amisérant,) had lost.—3. Quos quôd adaequāre, &c., and because it was understood that they (the Remi) equalled the Ædui in Cæsar's favor; i. e. had an equal share of Cæsar's favor with the Ædui; stood as high in &c.—4. Vētēres inimicītias, ancient feuds.—5. Dicábant se Remis in clientēlam, gave up themselves to the Re-
mi for protection; put themselves under the protection of the Remi,
6. Aliquo numéro, of any note;—genéra, classes.—7. Acre aliéno, by debt, literally, the money of another.—8. In hos eadém, &c., over these the nobles have all the same rights as masters have over their slaves.—9. Altérum est Druidum, one is that of the Druids (See Index)—the other, that of the knights.—10. Ilí, the former;—ad hos, to the latter.—11. Procurant, have charge of.—12. Ii (Druides) sunt apud eos (adolescentes) they (the Druids) are in great honor among them, viz: their pupils.—13. Non statit decreto, &c., has not stood by, has violated their decree,—they exclude them from the public rites, excommunicate them.—14. Il quibus ita interdictum est, those who are thus excommunicated (Idioms, 66),.—15. Defugiunt aditum córum, &c., shun their company and conversation.

P. 191.—1. Habet summam auctoritátém, possesses the supreme authority; whose authority is absolute.—2. Arrange: Quæ regio habétur media (regio) totius Galliæ, which is esteemed the middle, or central region of all Gaul.—3. Parent, obey, abide by, acquiesce in.—4. Disciplína, &c. this institution is thought to have originated in Britain.—5. Diligentíus, more accurately.—6. Mílitiae vacatio-nem, exemption from military service.—7. Immunitatem omnium re-rum, immunity, privilege, free use, enjoyment, of all things; all immunities.—8. Præmiis, rewards, advantages, privileges.—9. Ediscére, to learn by heart; to commit to memory.—10. Ea literis mandáre, to commit these things to writing.—11. Instituíse id, to have instituted this custom.—12. Disciplínam efferri, that their doctrine should be spread abroad.—13. In primís hoc volunt, &c., they (the Druids) in particular wish to inculcate this idea; it is a favorite maxim of the Druids.—14. Animas non intèrtre, &c., that souls do not die, but pass from one body to another.—15. Disputátant, &c., they reason and impart their reflections to the young.

P. 192.—1. Cúm est usus, when there is need.—2. Versantur, are engaged.—3. Ambactos, retainers.—4. Dedita religionibus, given, addicted to religious rites, to superstitions.—5. Contexta viminibus, interwoven with twigs.—6. Ejus genéris(nocentium), of this class of offenders.—7. Deum maxímé Mercurium colunt, they (the Gauls) worship chiefly the god Mercury; i.e. Mercury is the chief or favorite deity of the Gauls:—Not however the Mercury of the Grecian mythology, but a Gallic deity.—8. (Colunt) Apollinem, &c.—9. Ini-tia, the beginnings, the first knowledge.
P. 193.—1. Quæ superavérint, &c. they sacrifice the captured animals which remain.—2. Posita, deposited (in sacred places).—3. Spatia omnis tempóris, all their periods or divisions of time.—4. Ut noctem dies subsequatur, that the day follows the night; i. e. their day is from sunset to sunset as among the Jews.—5. Palam, openly; i. e. publicly, in public.—6. Conjunctam ratio habétur, a joint account is kept.—7. Fructusque servátur, and the interest is laid up.—8. Vítà superárit, shall survive the other.—9. Habent questionem de uxoribus in serctlem modum, they examine their wives by torture, after the manner of slaves; like slaves.—10. Si commet-tum est, if any discovery is made.—11. Pro cultu, considering their mode of life.—12. Viris cordi fuisset, to have been pleasing to them living.—ac paúlo, and not long before our time.

P. 194.—1. Commodi's, to greater advantage than others; more judiciously.—2. Quæ visa sunt, what seemed proper to them; i. e. what they thought proper.—3. Per consiliíum, through, or during; i. e in the time of the council.—4. Neque student, nor do they pay attention to.—5. Opibus quorum, &c., by whose power they are manifestly benefited.—6. Vulcánun, fire.—7 Consistit, is spent.


11. Affirunt multas causas ejus rei, they produce many reasons for this practice.

P. 195.—1. Accuratíus, with greater care.—2. Animí aquitáte, in evenness of mind, contentment.—3. Proprium virtútis, peculiar to, or a proof of, their valor.—4. Dicunt jus, controversíasque minuunt, administer justice and decide controversies.—5. Qui velint sequi profileantur, let those who wish to follow signify it, give their names.

6. Ac tempus fuit anlea, but there was a time formerly.—7. Ultró bella inferrent, they (the Gauls) without provocation brought war:—Germaníis, upon the Germans.

P. 196.—1. Summam opiniónem, a very high character, reputation for justice, and military glory.—2. Gallis autem, &c., the nearness of the (Roman) province to the Gauls, and their acquaintance with foreign commodities.—3. Largitúra multa ad copiam alque usus, supplies many articles of luxury and convenience.—4. Expe-dito, to a traveller without baggage; to an expeditious traveller.—5. Fituri, be measured.—6. Sinistrorsus, to the left hand (viz: of the Danube,) stretches northward from the Danube.—7. Memoríae prodenda videantur, seem worthy to be handed down to remem-brance.—8. Bos, See Index, Bison.—9. Sicut palmæ, like palms.
P. 197.—1. Alces, elk; See Alce.—2. Varictas pellium, the spots, varied color, of their skins.—3. Si afflictæ quo casu concidērīnt, if, being thrown down by any accident, they have fallen.—4. Applicant se ad eas, they lean themselves against these.—5. Infirmas, being weakened—6. Uri; See Urus.—7. Quæ sunt testimonio, to serve as a proof.—8. Ne parėuli quidem excepti, not even those caught young. 9. Amplissimis, their most splendid.—10. Cæsar:—Cæsar having finished his digression, respecting the manners of the Gauls and Germans, (Ch. 11—28,) here resumes his narrative.

P. 198.—1. Si quid celeritatem, &c., to see if he may be able to gain any thing by rapidity of march and favorable opportunity.—2. Ut imperatūm est, as was ordered.—3. Fortuna potest (facere) multum, &c. fortune can do much; i. e. has great influence, not only, &c.—4. Magna fuit fortūna, it was a piece of great good fortune.

P. 199.—1. Multum fortūna valuit, fortune did much, had great power or influence.—2. Judicio, from choice, designedly.—3. Exclāsus tempore, prevented by want of time.—4. Sed certē, but it is certain.—5. Alienissimis to total strangers.—6. Omnibus precibus, with every sort of exaction.—7. Taxo, with yew; i. e. with a decoction of the leaves or berry, both of which were regarded as poisonous.—8. Causam omnium Germanoruni esse unam, that the cause of all the Germans was one and the same.—9. Questiōne captivorum, from an examination of the captives.

P. 200.—1. Post diem septimum (inchoatūm), after the seventh day was begun; i. e. on the seventh day;—2. Ut suprà, Ch. 31.—3. Nulla certa manus, no regular force.—4. Vicinitatibus, to the neighborhoods; i. e. to the people in the neighborhood:—a very common mode of speech in our own language.—5. Ex parte, partly, in a measure.

P. 201.—1. Confertos, in large parties.—2. Si vellet, if he (Cæsar) wished.—3. Institūta ratio, established discipline.—4. Ut potius in nocendo, &c., that some opportunity of injuring the enemy should be omitted, rather than that this injury should be inflicted with any danger to his soldiers.—5. Legionarius miles, the legionary soldier; the soldiers of the legion; i. e. the regular troops.—6. Appetēbat, was drawing near—7. Quantos casus affērat, how great accidents she brings; i. e. how great changes she brings about.—8. Manus erat nulla, there was no collected body.—9. Suprà doci- tumus, we have shewn above; B. IV. Ch. 16.
P. 202.—1. Non palus non silvae morantur hos, &c., no marsh, no woods hinder these men, &c.—2. Tantum praesidii ut ne, &c., so little of garrison that not even the walls could be surrounded with men; i.e. could be manned.—3. Duce, guide,—indicio, information. 4. Qui illius patientiam pæne obsessionem, &c., who called his forbearance almost a siege, since they were not permitted to go out of the camp.—5. Qui concepserant, &c., those who had recovered during this interval.—6. Subsedérat, had remained.—7. Casu, by chance, by accident.

P. 203.—1. Mercatores qui sub vallo tendérent, the sutlers who pitched their tents close to the ramparts.—2. Reliquos aditus, and other places of entrance.—3. Plerique novas sibi, &c., most of them form to themselves strange superstitious notions from the place; and they place before their eyes the disaster of Cotta and Titurius, since they were overthrown in that fort.—4. Qui primum pilum, &c., who had led the first rank with Caesar; i.e. who had been his chief centurion.—5. Superioribus præliis; See B. II. Ch. 25, and B. III. Ch. 5.—6. Relinquit animus Sextium, Sextius saints.

P. 204.—1. Imperiti usus militaris, not acquainted with the usages of war.—2. Cuneo facto, a wedge being made; being drawn up in the form of a wedge.—3. Sì, if, even if:—at, still, yet.—4. Nullo usu militaris rei percepto, &c., no experience in military affairs being yet acquired.

P. 205.—1. Non facēret sibi, he did not gain credit, was not believed.—2. Pæne alienátum mente, with a mind almost alienated, devoid of reason.—3. Questus unum, having complained of only one thing.—4. Locum debuisse relinquui, ne minimo quidem casu, that a place, or occasion, ought not to have been left, for even the smallest accident; See § 16, Exc. 2.—5. Quarum omnium rerum maxime, &c., of all these things it seemed the most astonishing.—6. Obtulórint optatisstnum beneficium Ambiorixi, rendered the most acceptable service to Ambiorix.—7. Ad vexandos hostes, to annoy the enemy.

P. 206.—1. Pæne naturam studio vincérent, they almost overcame nature by exertion.—2. Ad summam felicitatem, to complete success.—3. Sile eripēret, &c., he continued to snatch himself from them; to escape from them by the aid of lurking places and forests: 4. Summis supplicium more majórum, he inflicted punishment according to the practice of their ancestors.—5. Cum interdixisset quibus aqua atque igni, when he had interdicted them from water and fire;
i.e. had banished them:—This was the Roman judicial mode of inflicting the sentence of banishment, "To forbid the use of water and fire."—6. *Frumento provtso exercitui*, having provided corn for the army.

[END OF NOTES.]
INDEX,

HISTORICAL, GEOGRAPHICAL AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL,

FOR THE FIRST SIX BOOKS OF

CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

Acco, ōnis, a general of the Gauls, who was at the head of the con-
 federacy formed against the Senōnes, Carnūtes, and Trevīri.
Cæsar, by the rapidity of his marches, prevented the execution
of his plans, and ordered a general assembly of Gaul to inquire
into the conduct of these nations, in which he pronounced sen-
tence of death on Acco, who was instantly executed; B. VI. Ch.
4, and 44.

Adcantuannus, Adiomātus, vel, Adnuātus, i, the chief man, for
many years, among the Allobōges.

Aduatūca, æ, f. a fort nearly in the middle of the country possessed
by the Eburōnes,—a different place from Aduatūcum, the capital
of the Aduatūci, now called Tongres, with which it appears to
have been confounded by Ptolemy,—A small part of the town
only may have been built when Cæsar was in that country. Hence
he mentioned it as a castle, or fort. It stood near the river Mosa,
(Mæse,) between Liege and Maastricht.

Aduatūci, ōrum, m. a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay
on the west bank of the Mosa, (Mæse,) between Namur and Liege.
Ædui, ōrum, (sing. Æduus, i.), v. Hedui, ōrum, one of the most
powerful and wealthy nations of Gallia Celtica. Their territory
lay on the W. of the Arar, (Saone,) between that river and the Li-
gēris, (Loire,) a little to the N. of the junction of the former with
the Rhodānus, (Rhone.) At an early period they became the allies
of Rome, to which, in some degree, their influence among the
other nations of Gaul may be attributed. See Sequāni.

Æmilius, i, (Lucius), an officer in Cæsar's army, who commanded
a part of the Gallic cavalry.
Æquinoctium, i, n. (from Equus, equal, and Nox, night,) the Equinox, or time when the days and nights are equal, all over the globe. This happens twice a year, on 22d March, and 22d September. The former is called the Vernal, the latter the Autumnal Equinox. The circle, which passes through the place of the sun at these two periods of the year, has, from the phenomenon above mentioned, received the name of the Equinoctial, or Equinoctial Line, and is directly over the Equator.

Agendicum, i, n. (now Sens,) the chief city of the Senones, a brave and powerful people of Gaul, who inhabited the left bank of the Sequana, (Seine). It stood below the confluence of the Vanne and Icauna, vel, Itumna, (Yonne,) a southern branch of the Seine.

Agger, is, the name of a mound raised by the Romans in besieging cities. It was composed of earth, wood, hurdles, stone, &c. The agger commenced at a distance from the walls, gradually advanced towards the town, always increasing in height, till it equalled or overtopped the walls. This mound was secured by towers of different stories, (See Turris,) from which showers of missiles were discharged on the defenders by means of engines, and from which, when advanced near enough, a temporary platform or bridge was sometimes thrown to the top of the wall, on which the soldiers marched into the city.

Ala, æ, the wing of an army, properly the cavalry, so called from being placed on the right and left of the infantry. In the plural this term is often used to designate the troops of the allies, which (both infantry and cavalry,) were stationed on the right and left of the Roman army.

Alarii, örum, those belonging to the Alæ, or wings.

Allobroges, um, (sing. Allobrox, ögis,) a people of Gaul, whose country lay between the Isâra, (Isere,) and the river Rhodanus, (Rhone.) They bravely, and for a long time, resisted the power of the Roman legions, but were at last defeated by Pomtînus. Cicero extols them for their fidelity to his countrymen, of which they gave a remarkable proof in Catiline's conspiracy (See Sallust, B. C.) Horace censures them for their love of novelty, which seems characteristic of the inhabitants of that country, both in ancient and modern times. Cæsar De Bel. Gal. IV. 5. The chief town of the Allobroges was Vienna, (Vienne,) on the left bank of the Rhone, 13 miles below Lugdunum, (Lyon.)

Alpes, ium, a chain of mountains separating Italy from Gaul and Germany. They are in the form of a crescent, and extend from the Sinus Flanaticus, (the gulf of Quarnero,) at the top of the
gulf of Venice, to Vada Sabatia, (Salona,) on the gulf of Genoa, a distance of 600 miles. They have been divided into different portions, the principal of which are the following: 1. Alpes Maritimae, (or Maritime Alps,) extending from the vicinity of Nice to Monte Viso. 2. Alpes Cottæ, (or Cottian Alps,) from Monte Viso to Mont Cenis. 3. Alpes Graiae, (or Graian Alps,) between Mont Iseran and Little St. Bernard. 4. Alpes Penninæ, (or Pennine Alps,) from Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhone and Rhine. To this range belongs Mt. Blanc, 14,676 feet high. 5. Alpes Rhaetææ, (or Rhaetian Alps,) from St. Gothard to Mount Brenner in the Tyrol. 6. Alpes Noricæ, (or Noric Alps,) from Mount Brenner to the head of the river Plavis. 7. Alpes Carnicæ, sive Juliae, (the Carnic or Julian Alps,) from the head of the river Plavis to the confines of Illyricum. Over these mountains there are several passes, of which the principal are, that over the Great St. Bernard, that over Mont Simplon, and that over Mont St. Gothard.

Ambarri, ōrum, a people of Gaul, related to the Ædui, supposed to have lived on the Arar, (Saone,) a little to the N. of its Junction with the Rhodanæs, (Rhône.)

Ambiānum, i. n. anciently Samarobriva, now Amiens, a town of the Belgæ.

Ambiāni, ōrum, the inhabitants of Ambiānum. They entered into a conspiracy against Cæsar, (B. G. II. 4,) and appear to have held a considerable rank among the Belgic tribes.

Ambiliāti, ōrum, m. a nation of Gallia Celtieæ whose geographical position is not precisely ascertained. They are mentioned (B. G. III. 9,) along with the Osismii, Lexovii, Nannetes, &c., and therefore their country must have been included in the province of Bretagne or Normandy. Some editions have Ambiāni.

Ambfrōix, īgis, king of the Eburōnes, was a great enemy to the Romans. After many narrow escapes, he at last evaded the pursuit of Cæsar's men who followed him too closely, when only four of his attendants remained.

Ambivaritī, ōrum, a nation of Gaul, between the Mosa, (Maesse,) and the Rhenus, (Rhone,) who were subject to the Ædui. (B. IV. Ch. 9.)

Anartes, ium, et Anartiī, ōrum, a people of Dacia, who inhabited the east bank of the river Tibiscas, (Teissk, or Teyss,) one of the northern branches of the Danube. Their country now forms part of Hungary.

Anicalites, ium, a people of South Britain, who were neighbors to
the Trinobantes. Some have thought the Atrebates of Ptolemy and Antonine's Itinerary, the same with the Ancalites of Cæsar. See Horsley's Britannia Romana, p. 17, and Gale's Anton. Itiner. p. 105, 106.

Andes, ium, ïbus, a nation of the Celtæ in Gaul. Their territory lay on the north bank, and near the mouth, of the river Ligérís, (Loire.)

Annum, i, m. a year. See Gr. App. I.

Antebrogius, i, m. a man of great influence amongst the Rhemi, who was sent ambassador to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Antesignāni, ōrum, (Ante and signum,) a name given to the soldiers who fought before the standards, or in the first line, as those who were stationed behind the standards were called Postsignāni, or Subsignāni.

Antistius, i, (Caius A. Rheginus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. Cæsar, in consequence of his expecting greater commotions in that country, gave orders in the sixth year of the war, to Marcus Silanus, C. Antistius Rheginus, and T. Sextius, to levy troops. We find him, at other times, appointing this lieutenant to honorable commissions.

Antistius, (See Turpio.)

Apollo, inis, the son of Jupiter and Latōna, the god of music, medicine, augury, painting, poetry, and all the fine arts. He was born at the same birth with his sister Dīana, near the foot of Cyntus, a mountain in Delos, an island in Mare Ægeum, (Archipelago.) Hence he was called Cynthius and Delius; and Dīana, Cyntlia and Delia. Among beasts, the wolf; among insects, the grass-hopper; among birds, the cock, the crow, the swan, and the hawk; and among trees, the palm, the olive, and the laurel, were sacred to Apollo. He was represented as a tall beardless young man, of handsome shape, holding in his hand a bow, hence called Deus Arcitēnens, or a lyre, and his head surrounded with rays of light.

Aquila, æ, m. an eagle, also the standard of a Roman Legion. From the second consulship of Marius, and under the Emperors, the standards were most commonly of silver, seldom of gold, in the form of an eagle, from which the name is derived. The preference was given to the former metal, according to Pliny, because it is seen at a greater distance than the latter. But though the figure of the Roman ensigns was always that of an eagle, they were not always precisely alike. Sometimes they resembled an
eagle in a standing posture, at others, with outstretched wings, which was the most common form, and not unfrequently with a turret on their backs. The Roman standard, at first, was a bundle of hay fixed to a pole, Manipulus,—a term afterward used to denote the third part of a cohort, then of wood, sometimes of silver, and more rarely of gold, in different forms. Marius, during his second consulship, introduced into the Roman army the eagle, which continued to be ensign till the destruction of the empire. The merit of originality does not belong to the Romans, for we have the authority of Xenophon to maintain, that it was first used as a military standard by the Persians.

Aquilifer, fērī, m. standard-bearer, whose office seems, in some degree, to correspond to that of ensign with us. His place was in the first line. To allow the standard to fall into the hands of the enemy was reckoned highly disgraceful to the whole legion, which is still the case in modern times, but particularly to the person who carried it. In one instance recorded by Livy, the standard-bearer was, for this crime, put to death. But the centurions suffered the same punishment at that time, and the army was decimated for cowardice and treachery.—It does not appear from Roman history, that recourse was had to such severity, unless in instances of wilful dereliction of duty, proceeding either from unconcealed timidity or treacherous intention.

Aquileia, æ, f. a famous seaport belonging to the Veneti on Mare Adriaticum, (Gulf of Venice.) Strabo says it was built by the Romans, to repel the inroads of the barbarians, when their territory on that coast did not extend farther north. The name has been thought to be derived from an eagle, Aquila, flying over the site at the time the foundation was laid; but more probably from the Roman standard, in consequence of two legions having been long stationed in that place. From its splendor and magnificence, it was sometimes called Roma Secunda. Altilia, king of the Huns, after a long and obstinate siege, plundered it, A. D. 452, and so completely was the city destroyed, that the next generation could scarcely discover its ruins. Since that time, a few fishermen's huts point out the place near which it stood. Aquileia, according to Pliny, was at the distance of 1500 paces from the coast.

Aquitania, æ, f. one of the three principal divisions of Gallia, (France,) bounded on the east by Provencia, (Languedoc, Provence, and Dauphiné;) on the north by the river Garumna, (Garonne,) which separates it from Gallia Celtica, on the west by Oceānus Cantabricus, (Bay of Biscay,) and on the south by Py.
renæi Montes, (Pyrenees, or Pyrenean Mountains,) which divide Gallia from Hispania, (Spain.) As Aquitania was much less than either of the other two divisions, Augustus extended its northern boundary to the river Ligeris, (Loire.)

Aquitani, orum, (sing. Aquitanus, i,) the inhabitants of Aquitania. Arar, āris, m. (Saone,) a smooth flowing river of Gaul, which takes its rise near Mount Vosēgus, (Vosge,) runs southward, and after receiving several streams, falls into the river Rhodanu, (Rhone,) at Lugdūnum, (Lyon, or Lyons.) B. I. Ch. 12.

Arduenna, æ, f. Ardennes, a forest of Gaul, the largest in that country, reaching, according to Cæsar, from the Rhenus, (Rhine,) to the territory of the Remi, upwards of fifty miles in length. Others make the extent of this forest much larger. If it reached from the territory of the Trevīri to that of the Remi, it would greatly exceed fifty miles. The ground is now in many places cleared, and cities built upon it. Strabo says, the trees of this forest were not of a great height, and its length did not exceed forty miles.

Arecomici, orum, a people of Gaul, who lived on the Gallicus Sinus, (Gulf of Lyons,) to the west of the river Rhodanu, (Rhone.) See Volcae.

Aries, ētis, m. a ram:—also a military engine for battering down walls. It is said to have been first used by the Carthaginians at the siege of Gades, (Cadiz.) This instrument was originally very simple. To the end of a beam, varying in length and thickness according to circumstances, was affixed a piece of iron in the form of a ram’s head, to which it owes its name. This powerful engine of war rested on the arms of the soldiers who worked it. The first improvement made on the battering ram, was to suspend it by a chain or a rope from the top of two logs of wood, having the lower ends fixed firmly in the ground at a considerable distance from each other, and terminating in a point at the upper, by which contrivance the men who wrought it were wholly relieved of its weight. To protect them from the destructive weapons thrown by the besieged, a shed or mantlet, with a strong roof, was formed around it. The whole stood on wheels, so that the besiegers easily moved the engine at pleasure. It does not appear from ancient history, that the battering ram received any important improvement after the one just stated. The discovery of gunpowder and introduction of artillery have quite superseded the use of this military engine, which the Romans long held in great esteem.
The number of men employed at once in working the ram, and the length of time they continued, would vary according to the number of the troops, the magnitude of the beam, the thickness of the wall, &c. It is certain that in some instances, upwards of fifty men plied on each side, and from the severity of the labor, they must, in ordinary cases, have been frequently relieved. The following wood cut represents the battering ram protected by the Testudo, or vinea, under which the men employed in working it were protected from the missiles of the enemy.

Ariovistus, i, king of the Germans, who invaded Gallia, (France,) conquered a considerable part of that country, and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Cæsar marched up to his very camp, compelled him to fight, and gained such a complete victory, that a very few only, among whom was
Ariovistus himself, escaped. These continued their flight, until they reached the banks of the Rhine, which they crossed, some by swimming, others by boats. Ariovistus, in a little vessel, got safely to the other side. From this period nothing of his history is known.

Armoricæ civitates, Armoric States, namely, those of the Rhedones Namnetes, Veneti, Curiosolites, Osismii, Corisopiti, Unelli, Ambrincatui, Bajocasses, Viducasses, and Lexovii, who inhabited the western part of the countries, between the Ligéris, (Loire,) and the Sequāna, (Seine.) They had this name from their situation on the sea coast; Armor signifying, in the language of the ancient Gauls, on the sea.

Armorīci, ēorum, the inhabitants of Armorīcae.

Arpinius, i, (Caius,) a Roman knight whom Cæsar sent along with Quintus Junius to Ambiorix, after he himself had declined an interview with that prince.

Arverni, ēorum, a people of Gallia Celtīca, whose territories lay between the sources of the Eleāver, (Allier,) and Duranius, (Dordogne,) branches of the Ligéris and Garumna. From the numerous wars which they had carried on against the Romans, Strabo infers their power and resources must, in former ages, have been very great. Like the Romans, they boasted of being descended from the Trojans.

Atrebātes, ium, a people of Gallia Belgīca, the neighbors of the Morīni whose country lay along the English Channel, opposite to Dover.

Atrius, i, (Quintus,) an officer to whom Cæsar gave the command of the shipping, which had carried him and his army to the coast of Britain.

Atuatūci, v. Aduatūci, ēorum, a people of Belgic Gaul, whose territories lay between the rivers Mosa, (Mæse,) and the Scaldis (Scheld,) adjoining to those of the Nervii and Toxanuri. Their capital was Atuatūca, w, f. Tongres, in Brabant.

Aulerīci, ēorum; of this name Cæsar mentions four nations of Gaul. Aulerīci Brannovices, whose territories, (Moriane,) were adjoining to those of the Ædui, Segusiāni, and Ambivariti; Aulerīci Cenomanni, whose country, (Mans,) lay between the rivers Sarta, (Sarte,) and Leducus, two of the northern branches of the Loire, Suindūnum, vel, Subdinium, afterwards Cenomanni, on the Sarte was their chief city; Aulerīci Eburonīci inhabited the left bank of the Sequāna, (Seine,) below Lutetia, (Paris.) Their chief town was Mediolānum, afterwards Eburonīces, (Evreux.)
The *Aulerci Diablintes, Diablītēs, et Diaculītēs*, lived between the two last mentioned nations. *Neodūnum*, afterwards Diablintes, (*Jublēns,*), was their largest town. These three, probably, formed but one people, and might, with more propriety, have been denominated tribes, than separate or distinct nations.

Aurunculeius, i, (Lucius A. Cotta) one of Caesar’s lieutenants in the Gallic War. He opposed the rash measure of his colleague, in wishing to leave their winter quarters, at the deceitful suggestion of Ambiorīx, but at last yielded to the timidity of Titurius, which cost him his life. He is frequently called L. Cotta, and sometimes Cotta.

Ausci, ōrum, a people of Aquitania in Gaul. Their capital was Climberrīs, v. Climberrum, Augūsta, and at a latter period, Auci, (Āuch,;) which stood on the west branch of the Ger, one of the southern branches of the river Garumna, (*Garonne.*)

Auxilia, ōrum, troops sent by foreign kings and states. They usually received pay and clothing from the republic, although sometimes they were supported by those who sent them.

Axōnā, x, m. (Āine, or Āisne,) a river of Gaul, which Ausonius calls *Prōeceps*, from its rapidity. Its source was in the territories of the Rhemi, which form the department of the Mense. It runs in a southwest direction, joins the Isāra, (*Isere,*) a little below Campagne, and both fall into the Sequāna, (*Seine,*) about five miles south of Pointoise.

B.

Bacenīs, is, i. a forest of Germany, forming part of the Hercynīa Silva, or *Black Forest*. Caesār says it was of prodigious extent, (*infinitē magnitudinis,*;) and like a natural wall, prevented the mutual incursions of the Suevi and Cheruscī.

Baculus; See Sextius.

Baleāres, ium, a name anciently given to the islands of *Majorca* and *Minorca* off the coast of Spain, the inhabitants of which were celebrated for their skill in the use of the sling.

Baleāris, e, adj. of or belonging to the Balearic isles.

Balista, w, (from the Greek *ἐλώνα λυχνον* to throw,) a species of military engine used by the Romans for throwing darts, arrows, and stones. These were of different sizes, and were used with great effect both in battles and sieges. Stones of great weight were often.
thrown by these engines to a great distance, by which battlemens were thrown down and whole files of men swept from the deepest phalanx. Their effect is said to have been little inferior in sieges to that of artillery. The balista used for throwing darts or javelins, represented in the following wood cut, taken from Folard's commentary on Polybius, resembled in its operation an immense crossbow, the two ends of which consisted of two levers so twisted in coils of ropes as to acquire a powerful spring. The extreme ends were united by a strong rope which was drawn back by means of a windlass after the manner of a bowstring, bringing the ends of the lever back and closer together, thereby twisting the coils of ropes to their greatest tension. When thus drawn back, the javelin or dart was placed in the shaft, directed to the object aimed at, and, at the pleasure of the operator, letting go the rope, was hurled with prodigious force from the engine by the recoil of the levers.

**BALISTA FOR THROWING DARTS AND JAVELINS**

The balista for throwing stones, (represented in the following wood cut,) consisted of a strong lever, one end of which was made fast in a twist of ropes, and the other scooped out in the form of a spoon, for containing the stone &c. to be thrown. When unbent the lever stood perpendicular. In working it, the end of the lever was brought down, by means of a windlass, to a horizontal position, by which the ropes were twisted to their greatest tension; the stone or missile was laid on in its proper place and thrown by the recoil of the lever to a great distance, often with tremendous effect. Engines of both kinds, of a larger size, were
more commonly called Balistæ, those of a smaller size, Catapultæ, which see.

BALISTA FOR THROWING STONES OR OTHER HEAVY BODIES.

Balventius, i, (Titus, i,) a man of distinguished courage, who had both his thighs pierced with a dart, in the attack which Ambiorix made upon the legions which he had deceitfully persuaded to leave their camp.

Basilius; See Minucius.

Batavia, æ, f. v. Insula Batavorum, (United Provinces,) often called Holland, from its being the largest of them; a country at the mouth of the Rhine. It was denominated an island, from being bounded on two sides, by the southern and northern branches of the Rhine, and on the third by the sea. B. IV. Ch. 10.

Batavi, ūrum, the people of Batavia, originally a branch of the Catti, a German nation.

Belgæ, arum, a people originally of German extraction, who inhabited the third division of Gaul, which was bounded on the south by the Mârôna, (Marne,) and the Sequâna, (Seine;) on the east and north by the Rhênum, (Rhine,) and on the west by Fretum Britannicum, (English Channel.) Strictly speaking, Fretum Britannicum, v. Gallicum, was confined to the Straits of Dover, but seems generally to have had a more extended signification, and to have nearly corresponded to the modern appellation, the English Channel. Caesar calls it Oecânus, i. e. Atlánticus, of which the
English Channel and the German Sea form only a very small part. In the division of Gaul made by Augustus, whose object was to render the different provinces more equal in point of extent, the countries of the Helvetii and Sequani, which till that time were included in Gallia Celtica, were added to Gallia Belgica. According to Cæsar, the Belgæ were, of all the Gauls, the most warlike; and he attributes their superiority in arms to their being strangers to luxury and refinement. B. i. Ch. 1.

Belgium, i. n. is, in general, used by Cæsar to denote a part of Gallia Belgica, not the whole country. See Belgæ.

Bellovaci, ōrum, a numerous and powerful tribe of the Belgæ, adjoining the Bellocassi. Calèti, Ambiani, Veromandui, and Silvanectes.

Bibracte, is, n. afterwards Angustodūnum, i, n. (Autun,) a town of the Ædui, upon the Arroux, one of the northern branches of the Ligēris, (Loire,) towards the source of that river. At this town in the 7th year of the Gallic war a general assembly of the whole country was held, to choose a commander in chief, on whom the uncontrolled direction of all their military operations should be conferred. The Ædui, who claimed that honor, had to submit to the unanimous election of Vercingétorix, q. v.

Bibrax, ācis, f. (Bievre,) a town of the Remi on the Axōna, (Aisne.)

Bibrōci, ōrum, a British nation, inhabiting what now forms the N. W. part of Berkshire. Their chief town was Bibracte, (Bray.) At the time Cæsar invaded Britain, they, with the Cenomāgni, Ancalites, and Cassii, seem to have been subject to Cassivelonaus.

Bigerriōnes, v. Bigerrōnes, ium, a people of Aquitania, who, with several other adjoining tribes, surrendered to Crassus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Their territory was bounded on the south by the Pyrenees, and was nearly at equal distances from the Mediterranean and the Bay of Biscay.

Bison, ontis, v. ōnis, m. a buffalo, a kind of wild ox, of which Cæsar has given the best description to be found in the writings of the ancients, (B. G. VI. 25.) The natural history of this animal is unknown.

Biturīges, um, a nation of Gallia Celtica, on the west side of the river Ligēris, (Loire.) Their chief city, Avaricum, was afterwards called by the name of its inhabitants, (now Bourges.)

Boduognatus, i, the commander of the Nervii, at the time they attacked the Roman army under Cæsar.
Boi, ërum, a people of Gallia Celtica, who came originally from beyond the Rhine and settled in the country south and west of the Ædui on the banks of the Liger and Eliver,—a territory originally belonging to the Ædui, but which they gave up to the Boi with the consent of Cæsar; B. I. Ch. 28. There were several tribes of the Boi, who lived in different parts of Gaul and Germany. In the latter country their name is still recognized in the districts, Bavaria, and Bohemia, in the German language, Boierheim, i. e. the residence of the Boi.

Bratuspantium, i, n. a town of the Bellovæci. It is supposed to have stood between Cæsaromagnus, afterwards Belvæcus, or Belvacum, (Beauvais,) and Samarobriva, (Amiens.) This town is not mentioned by any writer after the commencement of the Christian Æra.

Britannia, æ, f. Britian, or Great Britain, (anciently called Albion,) is the largest island in Mare Atlanticum, (Atlantic Ocean,) belonging to Europæa, (Europe.) That part of the Atlantic which separates Britain from France, was called Fretum Britannicum, (strictly speaking, Strait of Dover,) but its significance seems often to have been more extensive, and to have corresponded nearly with the modern appellation, English Channel. Oceanus Verginius, (St. George's Channel,) lies between Britain and Hibernia, (Ireland.) On the west, Oceanus Calydonicus, (Scottish Sea,) washed the west and northwest parts of Scotland, Oceanus Hyperboreus, (Northern Sea,) the northern coast, and Oceanus Germanicus, (the German Ocean,—which is more properly called a sea,—) formed its boundary on the east. Cæsar's account, both of the form and extent of this island, is not very far from the truth. But of the characters, manners and customs, of the Britons, a very general description only is to be found in the writings of the ancients. Little was known, to the Romans, of this island until the invasion of Cæsar. This commander endeavored, although ineffectually, to reduce it. After a long interval, Ostorius, in the reign of Claudius, subjugated the southern part; and Agricolæ, subsequently, in the reign of Domitian, extended the Roman dominion to the Frith of Forth and Clyde. The whole force of the empire, although exerted to the utmost under Severns, could not, however, reduce to subjection the hardy natives of the highlands. Britain continued a Roman province, until A. D. 426, when the troops were in a great measure withdrawn, to assist Valentinian III. against the Huns, and never returned. The Britons had become so enervated under the Roman yoke, as to be unable to repel
the incursions of the inhabitants of the north. They invoked, therefore, the aid of the Saxons, by whom they were themselves subjugated, and compelled at last to take refuge among the mountains of Wales.


Britannus, et, Britannicus, a um, adj. of, or belonging to Britain.

Brutus, i, (Decimus, i,) one of Caesar's officers, to whom he gave the command of his fleet in the Gallic war, with which he defeated the Venetians, (B. G. III. 15,) and afterwards the people of Marseilles, in two engagements during the civil war.

C.

Cæresi, orum, a nation of Gallia Belgica, who, with the Condruși, Eburōnes, and Pæmāni, went under the general appellation of Germans, and were supposed to send 40,000 men to the Belgic army, which was raised against the Roman dominion in Gaul, (B. G. II. 4.) Their country was situated between that of the Treviri and the river Mosa, (Meuse.)

Cæsar, āris, (Caius Julius,) the first distinguished character of the Cæsars, was the son of Caius Cæsar and Aurelia the daughter of Cotta. He was born in the sixth consulship of Marius, 99 years B. C. He lost his father in the 16th year of his age, and the following year obtained the office of Flamen Diaēlis, (High Priest of Jupiter.) He procured many friends by his eloquence, and after passing through the different offices of Quæstor, Edile, High Priest, (Pontifex Maximus,) &c., he was sent as governor into Spain, and upon his return, being elected Consul, he entered into an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, that nothing should be done in the state without their joint concurrence. This was called the First Triumvirate, and was in fact a conspiracy against the liberties of Rome.

Previous to the expiration of his consulship, he obtained from the people the province of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, with three legions for five years; and the Senate, at the desire of Cæsar, added Transalpine Gaul and another legion. These legions were gradually increased to thirteen.

Cæsar set out for Transalpine Gaul in the end of March, B. C. 57, in the 42d year of his age. With wonderful conduct and
bravery he subdued this country in about ten years, and carried the terror of his arms into Germany and Britain, till then unknown to the Romans. The account of these wars is given by Cæsar himself, in his Commentaries on the Gallic war, in seven books. These Commentaries, or Journals, were composed on the spot where his battles were fought. The purity and neatness of his style, notwithstanding the rapidity with which they must have been written, have not been surpassed by any Roman writer. His narrative is perspicuous, simple, and natural. It is at once chaste and animated. His lucid and picturesque description places the whole scene distinctly before the reader, who accompanies him in all his marches, and is a witness of every engagement. No passage occurs in all his writings, which the most illiterate do not understand, and the most polished do not approve. To compose a simple narrative of his campaigns, for the amusement of himself and his friends, seems rather to have been his object, than to give a specimen of his talents as a profound historian, or deep politician. Hence, it were absurd to expect in his Commentaries, a finished history. They are mere outlines, which he perhaps entertained the hope of seeing filled up, either by himself, or by some other hand.

These Commentaries in seven books, and three books concerning the civil war, are the only genuine writings of Cæsar which now remain. Of the character of Cæsar as a general and historian, Dunlop, in his History of Roman Literature, Vol. II. p. 171, &c., speaks thus:

"Though the Commentaries on the Gallic War comprehend but a small extent of time, and are not the general history of a nation, they embrace events of the highest importance, and detail, perhaps, the greatest military operations to be found in ancient story. We see in them all that is great and consummate in the art of war. The ablest commander of the most warlike people on earth records the history of his own campaigns. Placed at the head of the finest army ever formed in the world, and one devoted to his fortunes, but opposed by prowess only second to their own, he and the soldiers he commanded, may be praised almost in the words in which Nestor praised the heroes who had gone before him; for the Gauls and Germans were among the bravest and most warlike nations then on earth. In his clear and scientific details of military operations, Cæsar is reckoned superior to every one, except, perhaps, Polybius. In general, too, when he speaks of himself, it is without affectation or arrogance. He talks
of Cæsar as of an indifferent person, and always maintains the character which he has thus assumed; indeed, it can hardly be conceived that he had so small a share in the great actions he describes, as would appear from his own representations. With the exception of the false colors with which he disguises his ambitious projects against the liberties of his country, every thing seems to be told with fidelity and candor."

Respecting the future history of this illustrious man the following notices may here suffice. After the conquest of Gaul, Pompey, having become jealous of Cæsar's power, induced the Senate to order him to lay down his command; upon which Cæsar crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province, and led his army to Rome, Pompey and all the friends of liberty fleeing before him. Having subdued Italy in sixty days, Cæsar entered Rome, and seized upon the money in the public treasury. He then went to Spain, where he conquered the partizans of Pompey, and at his return was created Dictator, and soon after Consul. Leaving Rome and going in search of Pompey, the two hostile generals engaged on the plains of Pharsalia. The army of Cæsar amounted to 22,000 men, while that of Pompey amounted to 45,000; but the superior generalship of Cæsar prevailed, and he was victorious. Making a generous use of his victory, Cæsar followed Pompey into Egypt, where he heard of his murder, and making the country tributary to his power, he hastened to suppress the remainder of Pompey's party in Africa and Spain. Thus triumphing over all his enemies, he was created perpetual Dictator, received the names of Imperator and Pater Patriae, and governed the people with justice. The consequence, however, of his engrossing all the powers of the state and ruling with absolute authority, engendered a spirit of opposition and general disgust; a conspiracy was formed against him by more than sixty senators, the chief of whom were Brutus and Cassius. Accordingly, on the 15th of March, 44 years B. C., and in the 56th year of his age, on his entrance into the Senate house, he was stabbed, and fell, pierced with twenty-three wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue.

Of Cæsar's intrepidity as a soldier, and abilities as a commander, the armies which he defeated and the countries which he conquered are sufficient proofs. To the talents of a consummate general he added those of an elegant historian and a persuasive orator. He spoke with the same spirit with which he fought.
and had he devoted himself to the bar, he would have been the only man capable of rivalling Cicero.

Calētes, ium, v. Calēti, ōrum, a people of Gaul, whose country lay a little to the north of the mouth of the Sequāna, (Seine.)

Cantābri, ōrum, (sing. Cantāber, ri,) a very brave and warlike people, who inhabited the northern part of Spain. They seem to have extended from the mouths of Iberus, (Ebro,) to the shores of the Bay of Biscay, which was, from them, called Oceānus Cantabribus. The term is often used to denote the Spaniards in general.

Cantium, i, n. (Kent,) a district of England which, in modern times, is bounded by the Strait of Dover, (Fretum Gallicicum, vel, Britannicum) on the east, by Sussex on the south, on the west by Surry, and on the north by the Thames, (Tamesis,) which separates it from Essex. But the ancient boundaries of Kent are not precisely ascertained.

Carcaso, ōnis, f. Carcasonne, a town of that part of Provincia, now called Languedoc, on the river Atax, (Aude.) Here are preserved some records of the place, written upon the bark of trees.

Carfulenus, i, an officer of Cæsar, who was dispatched to attack the highest part of the camp of the Alexandrians, which he carried. He was afterwards killed in an engagement at Mutina, fighting against Anthony.

Carnutes, um, v. ti, ōrum, a powerful nation of Gaul, between the rivers Sequāna, (Seine,) and Ligēris, (Loire,) south of Lutetia, (Paris.)

Carvilius, i, one of the four kings of Cantium, (Kent,) who, at the command of Cassivellaunus, made an attack on Cæsar's naval camp, in which they were repulsed, and lost a great number of men.

Cassi, ōrum, the hundred of Caishow, a British nation, supposed to be subject to Cassivellaunus at the time Cæsar invaded Britain, who submitted to that conqueror.

Cassius, i, (Lucius, i,) a Roman consul, who was killed by the Helvetii, who defeated his army and obliged it to pass under the yoke.

Cassivellaunus, i, one of the British kings, whose territories lay on the north bank of the Tamesis, (Thames,) towards the mouth of that river. On the arrival of the Roman forces in Britain under Cæsar, he was, by common consent, appointed Commander-in-chief. After making some attempts to check the progress of the
enemy, he was obliged to submit, and accept of such terms as Cæsar chose to offer.

Casticus, i, one of the Sequani, the son of Catamantalēdis, whom Orgetōrīx persuaded to seize on the sovereignty of the state, which his father had formerly held.

Castra, ōrum, a camp. The discipline of the Romans was chiefly conspicuous in their marches and encampments. They never passed a night, even in the longest marches, without pitching a camp, and fortifying it with a rampart and ditch. The form of the Roman camp, till later ages, was square, and was always of the same figure. It was surrounded by a ditch, usually nine feet deep, and twelve feet broad, and by a rampart or vallum, composed of the earth dug from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it. The camp had four gates, one on each side. They were called porta prētoria, next the enemy; Decumana, opposite to the former; porta Principalis Dextra, on the right side of the camp, at one end of the main street called Principia; and Principalis Sinistra, on the left side, at the other end. The camp was divided into two parts, called the upper and lower, by the main street just mentioned. In the lower part the troops were disposed in the following order. The cavalry were in the middle; on both sides of them were the triarii, principes, and hastati, or the third, second, and first Roman ranks; and next to these, on both sides, were the cavalry and foot of the allies, who were always posted in separate places, lest they should form any plots by being united. The velites commonly occupied the empty space between the ramparts and tents, which was 200 feet broad. The tents were covered with leather or skins, extended by means of ropes. In each tent were usually ten soldiers, with their decanus or petty officer who commanded them. The different divisions of the troops were separated by intervals called VLE. Of these there were five longwise, i.e. running from the decuman towards the prætorian side; and three across, one in the lower part of the camp, called quintāna, and two in the upper, namely, the principia, and another between the prætorium and the prætorian gate. The following wood cut and illustration will give a good idea of its shape and arrangements.
1. The *Pretorium*, or general’s tent, with a sufficient space around for the tents of his suite.

2. Ground behind the tents of the *Tribunes*, for their horses, baggage, &c.

3. The tents of the *Tribunes*.

4. Ground behind the tents of the *Prefects of the Allies*, for their horses, baggage, &c.

5. The tents of the *Prefects of the Allies*.

6. A cross street, one hundred feet wide, called *Principia* (*Vid. Principia*.)

7. A cross street, fifty feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the *Roman horse*.

8. The *Horse* of two Roman legions, in ten turmae or troops each.

9. The *Triarii* of two Roman legions (*Vid. Triarii*), in ten maniples each, facing on two different streets.
10. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the Triarii and Principes of two legions.

11. The Principes of two Roman legions (Vid. Principes), in ten maniples each.

12. The Hastati of two Roman legions (Vid. Hastati), in ten maniples each.

13. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the Hastati of the two Roman legions and the Horse of the Allies.

14. The Horse of the Allies, wanting the Extraordinarii (Vid. No. 25), and placed in two different parts of the camp. The forces of the allies, both cavalry and infantry, were always separated in this manner, to prevent plotting, as remarked above.

15. The Infantry of the Allies, wanting the Extraordinarii, and, like the horse, placed in two different parts of the camp.

16. The Quintana (scil. via), a street fifty feet wide, running across the camp, between the fifth and sixth maniples of each line. Hence, as it comes after the fifth maniple, reckoned from the Principia, it received the name of Quintana.

17. The Questorium, or Quaestor's tent.

18. The tents of the Legati. The space in front of these and the Questorium was called the Forum, where things were sold, &c.

19. Evocati Equites, or Veteran Horse. (Vid. Evocati.)

20. Evocati Pedites, or Veteran Foot.

21. Ablecti Equites (Vid. No. 25), or Horse of the Consular life-guards.

22. Ablecti Pedites, or foot of the Consular life-guards.

23. A cross street one hundred feet wide.


25. Extraordinarii Equites. A third part of the allied horse, and a fifth part of the allied foot, were selected, and posted near the consul, under the name of Extraordinarii, and one troop of horse, and maniple of foot, called Ablecti, or Selecti, to serve as his life-guard.


27. Quarters for strangers coming to the camp.

28. A space two hundred feet broad, between the outermost tents and the rampart.

29. Rampart, or Vallum.

30. Ditch, usually nine feet deep and twelve feet broad.

31. Porta Principalis Dextra.

32. Porta Principalis Sinistra.
33. *Porta Decumāna* (i.e. *Decimāna*, from *decem*, ten,) so called because all the *tens* of the maniples end here.

34. *Porta Praetoria.*

35. A traverse breastwork, with a ditch, opposite to, and protecting, each of the gates. (*Anthon’s Caesar.*)

Catapul'ta, a military engine for discharging stones, arrows, and other missiles. (*Vid. Balista.*)

Catamantālēdes, is, a nobleman of the nation of the Sequāni, who, for many years, enjoyed the supreme authority over that people. Cativolcus, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Eburōnes. He and Ambiōrix, at the instigation of Indutiomārus, excited the people to take up arms against the Romans. Having made an unsuccessful attack upon the Roman camp under the lieutenants, Titurius Sabinus, and L. Aurunculeius Cotta, they demanded a conference, in which Ambiōrix stated, that from gratitude to Cāsar, he considered himself bound to inform his lieutenant, that all the states of Gaul had agreed to attack the Roman camp in one day, that a great body of Germans had passed the Rhine, and that no time was to be lost in joining Cicēro or Labiēns, neither of whom were fifty miles distant. At the same time, he gave his solemn promise, that they should have a secure retreat through his territories. This artifice, through the folly or cowardice of Sabinus, succeeded. They left their camp, were attacked by a powerful army under Ambiōrix and Cativolcus, and were almost to a man cut in pieces. Cāsar afterwards completely routed them; and Cativolcus, from his great age, being unable to bear the fatigues of war, poisoned himself by drinking the juice of the yew-tree.

Caturīgēs, gum, a people of Gaul, who lived near the Alpes Maritimēs, at the S. E. extremity of Dauphinē.

Cavarlīnus, i, a nobleman whom Cāsar, in prejudice of his brother Moritasgus, the reigning sovereign, appointed king over his countrymen, the Senēnes, an honor which his ancestors had long enjoyed. The Senēnes formed the design of publicly assassinating him, but having received intelligence of the plot, he saved his life by fleeing to the camp of Cāsar.

Celtēs, ārum, the most powerful and numerous of all the nations of Gaul, who occupied nearly one-half of the country, and from whom that division was called *Celtica*. Their territories were bounded by the river Garumna, (*Garonne,* on the south; the Sequāna, (*Seine,* and the Matrona, (*Marne,* on the north; by Mount *Jura* on the east; and *Marc Atlanticum*, (*Atlantic Ocean,* on the west.
Cenimagni, orum, an ancient people of Britain, who, with the Se-
gontiacci, Ancalites, Bibroci, and Cassi, followed the example of
the Trinobantes, and submitted to Cesar. These nations are
supposed to have inhabited the counties of Essex, Middlesex, Nor-
folk, Hertford, Buckingham, Oxford, and Berkshire.

Censor, is, a Censor, a Roman magistrate whose number from first
to last was uniformly two. They were appointed (A. U. 312,) to
take an account of the number of the people, and the value of their
fortunes, and superintend the public morals. They were chosen
from the most reputable persons of consular rank, at first only
from the patricians but afterwards likewise from the plebians.
They were chosen every five years, but continued in office only
a year and a half. For any dishonorable action they had the power
to erase the name of a Senator from the list, deprive an eques of
his horse and ring, and any other citizen they could degrade and
deprive of all the privileges of a Roman citizen, except liberty.

The title of Censor was even more honorable than that of Con-
sul, though attended with less power. No one could be elected a
second time, and those who filled it were remarkable for leading
an irreproachable life; so that to be descended from a censorian
family was considered a distinguished ornament of nobility.

Census, ës, m. was a general review of the people, estimating their
estates, and proportioning their share of the public taxes. Every
man was obliged to give in to the Censors his own name, resi-
dence and occupation, his wife's name, and the names of his
children with their ages, the number of his slaves, and a minute
and accurate account of his property. The goods of the person,
who made a false return, were confiscated, and he himself, after
being scourged, was sold for a slave. By that act he had, in the
opinion of the state, deemed himself unworthy of the privileges
and honors of a Roman citizen. Servius Tullius, the 6th king of
Rome, appointed the Census, in order to ascertain the number of
men able to bear arms, and the amount of the whole wealth pos-
sessed by the citizens, and consequently what sums could be lev-
ied from them. It was held in the Campus Martius, where the
Censors, seated in curule chairs, attended by their clerks and
public officers, commanded the citizens to be called before them,
each in his own tribe. If nothing immoral or improper could be
charged against a senator or knight, they passed without remark;
but if otherwise, the senators were expelled the senate, and the
public horse taken from the knight. The other citizens were raised
to a higher tribe, if their wealth had increased, or sunk to a lower
tribe, if diminished; improper conduct deprived them of their right of voting, or subjected them to be taxed like strangers. A minute register of the whole was kept, and must have been of great advantage to the whole community, as determining with precision not only their number, but also their wealth. It ought to have been held at the end of every five years; but it is manifest from Roman history, that this period was not pointedly observed. At the end of this survey of the people they were ordered to attend a lustration, called, from sacrificing, a sow, a sheep, and a bull, Sudovetaurilia. The precedence at this sacrifice was decided by lot, and he on whom the lot fell was at the conclusion said "lustrum condere."

Centurio, ōnis, f, (from centum, a hundred,) a centurion or commander of a hundred men. The constitution of the Roman legion admitted of a gradation from the lowest centurion of the Hastāti, up to the first of the Triarii, who was called Primipilus, q. v. To the first captaincy, the meanest common soldier might aspire. Promotion in the Roman army could be obtained only by merit; appointments by purchase were unknown. This wise regulation produced the happiest effects. Besides each cohort having six centurions, and consequently each legion sixty, opened a wide field for promotion, and suggested numerous excitements to valor and heroism.

Centrōnes, um (B. G. I. 5,) a nation of Gaul in the Alpes Graiae, who, along with the Garocēli and Caturīges, were defeated by Cæsar in several engagements. There was another tribe, or horde, of this name, who were subject to the Nervii, a nation of Gallia Belgica, (B. G. Ch. V. 38.)

Cherusci, ōrum, m. a nation of Germany, between the rivers Albis, (Elbe,) and the Visurgis, (Weser.)

Cicēro, ōnis, (Quintus Tullius,) the brother of Marcus Tullius Cicēro, the celebrated orator, was, after the expiration of his praetorship, proconsul of Asia for three years. He gained considerable reputation as one of Cæsar’s lieutenants in Gaul. At the commencement of the civil war, he, in opposition to the advice of his brother, attached himself to Pompey. After Cæsar had defeated the republicans at Pharsalia, both Quintus and his son solicited the favor of the conqueror, by unjustly imputing their misconduct to the orator. So far was Cicero from resenting this injustice, that he used his utmost efforts for their safety and interest. Both perished in the proscription of the second triumvire.
Cimberius, i, the brother of Nasua, who headed the 100 cantons of the Suēvi, who had left their native country, and encamped on the banks of the river Rhenus, (Rhine,) with the view of crossing that river, and settling in Gaul.

Cimbri, örum, (sing. Cimber, ri,) a German nation, supposed to be descended from the Asiatic Cimmerians, whose country was, from them, called the Chersonesus Cimbrica, (Jutland,) which now forms part of the kingdom of Denmark. About 113, B, C. the Cimbri, leaving their territories, which were both narrow and barren, and being joined by the Teutones, a neighboring people, defeated several German nations, and a Roman consul with his army, who had been sent against them. They invaded, and seem to have overrun, a great part of Gaul; and being strengthened by the accession of many of the tribes who inhabited that country, marched against Rome. After slaughtering the whole army of Cæpio and Mallius, except ten men and two generals, C. Marius marched against them, slew 120,000 and took 60,000 prisoners. Though only an inconsiderable people in the days of Tacitus, it is manifest, that the sagacity of that profound historian was apprehensive of the final destruction of the Roman state by the hordes of Germany, which actually happened about 300 years after his death.

Cingetôrix, Īgis, a nobleman who headed that party in the state of the Treviri, which was formerly attached to Cæsar. In consequence of his fidelity to the Romans, he was, by means of his father-in-law, Indutiomárus, declared a public enemy, and his estate confiscated.

Cingetôrix, Īgis, one of the four kings of Cantium, (Kent,) who, by order of Cassivellaunus, made an attack on Cæsar’s naval camp.

Clepsydra, næ, s. an instrument contrived to measure time by water. The merit of this invention belongs to the Egyptians, as well as the discovery of the sun-dial.

There were different kinds of Clepsydræ among the ancients; which, however, were all constructed on this principle, that the water ran through a narrow passage from one vessel to another, and that on the surface of the water in the lower vessel, to the side of which a scale of hours was affixed, floated a piece of cork, which shewed the hour. It is manifest the water would be discharged with a rapidity proportioned to the quantity, and that, of course, it ran fastest when the vessel was full, and gradually became slower as the less water remained. Hence if the upper vessel discharged its water in twelve hours, and the under one
was an exact cylinder having its height divided into 144 equal parts, the water in the first hour would rise twenty-three of these parts, in the second hour, twenty-one, in the third, nineteen, &c., and the last or twelfth hour only one part. The state of the atmosphere would have considerable influence on the clepsydra, a defect which the ingenuity of a modern French philosopher, William Amontons has completely remedied. By means of several important inventions he also freed it from other less inconveniences to which it was subject; and rendered it a very accurate divisor of time.

Cocosates, um, a people of Aquitania in Gaul, whose country lay along the coast of Oceanus Cantabricus, (Bay of Biscay,) to the north of the territories of the Tarbelli. Their chief town was Cocosa.

Clypeus, i. a round shield of a smaller size than the Scutum, which see.

Cohors, tis, a division of the Roman legion. See Legio.

Commius, i, one of the nation of the Atrebates, hence called Commius Atrebas, whom Caesar appointed king over that people in return for his important services. He afterwards fell under the suspicion of Labienus, who employed C. Volusenus Quadratus to kill him in an interview. This perfidious design did not succeed. But in the scuffle, Commius was wounded in the head. He was, from that period, a violent enemy to the Romans. Being at last defeated, he was obliged to submit to Antony, which he did, on condition that he should not appear before any Roman. On these terms, Antony granted him peace.

Condusi, örmu, a people of Belgic Gaul, who lived on the river Mosa, (Mæse, or Meuse,) north of Silva Arduenna.

Considius Longus, (Caius, i,) a partisan of Pompey, who was at one time the governor of Drurūtum. He committed several acts of enormous cruelty. Considius afterwards commanded at Tisdra a garrison of Gaetulians, and, on hearing of the defeat of his party, fled from that town with his treasures. Escaping from these barbarians and taking the road for Numidia, he was pursued by them, and to obtain possession of his money, they put him to death.

Consul, úlís, a consul; the official title of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state. They were first created after the expulsion of the kings, A. U. 244. They had the same badges as the kings, except the crown, and nearly the same power. In time of war they had supreme command; one accompanied the army as com-
mander-in-chief, and the other remained at Rome; or, if neces-
sary, commanded another army, leaving the government in charge
of the Prætor. They levied soldiers, appointed the greater part
of the officers, and provided what was necessary for their support.

When any dangerous conjuncture arose, the consuls were armed
with absolute power by the Senate, which solemnly decreed that
they should take care that the republic received no harm. If any
serious tumult or sedition occurred, they called the citizens to
arms by proclaiming "Let those who wish to save the republic
follow me;" and this was usually sufficient to check it.

The authority of the consuls was first impaired by the creation
of Tribunes of the people, and afterwards by the Emperors. The
office however was retained, and the consuls, after their power
was gone, were still employed in consulting the Senate, adminis-
tering justice, managing the public games and the like; and the
year was usually characterized by their names.

At first the consuls were chosen from the Patricians only, but
afterwards from the Plebians also. They were elected annually,
and to be a candidate it was necessary to be forty-three years of
age,—to have gone through the inferior offices of Quæstor, Edile,
and Praetor,—and to be present in a private station.

Proconsul, ulis, a proconsul, a person invested with consular
authority for the government of a conquered country. The con-
suls, at the expiration of their offices, were generally appointed
proconsuls, and soon after quitted the city to take charge of their
province. Their powers, though subject to the will of the senate
and authority of the people, were very extensive. They had the
appointment of the taxes and of the contributions imposed on the
country, and it cannot be denied, that avarice and rapacity too
often trampled on the principles of justice and humanity. To the
honor of the Senate it must be mentioned, that they frequently
punished acts both of extortion and cruelty. These crimes, how-
ever, were generally very flagrant before they became the subject
of prosecution.

Proconsulæris, is, e, of or belonging to a proconsul, or the pro-
consulship, proconsular.

Consulæris, e, adj. of or belonging to a consul; consular; one who
had been a consul; a man of consular rank.

Cotta, æ, (Lucius Auruuculæius,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army,
who suspected the stratagem of Ambiûrix, and therefore endeav-
or to convince his colleague Sabinus of the impropriety of fol-
lowing the treacherous advice of that crafty Gaul, but without
Crassus, the distance of two miles from the camp, lay in ambuscade, and when crossing a large valley, made a furious attack on the Roman forces, in which Cotta, after displaying singular bravery, was killed, and almost the whole of the two legions.

Crassus, i, (Marcus Licinius,) surnamed Dives, on account of his prodigious wealth, was, in early life, very poor, but by trafficking in slaves, and by other dishonorable practices, soon acquired great riches. To escape the cruelties of Cinna, he fled to Spain, where he had formerly passed some years with his father, when governor of that country; and remained eight months concealed in a cave. On hearing of Cinna's death, he raised 2,500 men, for whom he procured shipping, sailed to Africa, and attached himself to Metellus Pius. The friendship of Crassus with Metellus was not of long continuance. He then formed an alliance with Sulla, and was of great service to him in the civil war. The military talents of Crassus were greatly inferior to those of Pompey, who, on that account, necessarily stood higher in the favor of Sulla. Hence the enmity of these two powerful citizens, which all the address and eloquence of Cæsar could scarcely subdue. The great object of Crassus seems to have been the accumulation of wealth. Besides buying the estates of the proscribed, he had recourse to other base and scandalous means in order to increase his overgrown fortune.

Crassus was not however, destitute of bravery or generosity. He was honored with an ovation for putting an end to the war with Spartacus by a decisive engagement, in which 12,000 of the slaves were killed. He used frequently to lend money to his friends without interest. After entertaining the populace at 10,000 tables, giving to every citizen corn to support him for three months, and consecrating the tenth part of his property to Hercules, he was worth 7,100 talents. He used to say that no man, who could not maintain an army ought to be called rich. His slaves whom he had ingenuity enough to employ so profitably that they not only defrayed their own expenses, but added greatly to the wealth of their master, were, in number, equal to an army.

A reconciliation between Crassus and Pompey was, at last, effected by Cæsar. The iniquitous combination of these three men to destroy the liberties of their fellow-citizens, was called the first triumvirate. Less solicitous for honor than riches, Crassus,
in this division of the empire, chose Syria for his province, in expectation of making large additions to his fortune. Without the authority of the senate, he crossed the Euphrates and advanced against that country. But he was deceived by Agbarus, an Arabian, defeated by the Parthians, and his army nearly annihilated. He then fled with a small number of his soldiers to Carræ, a town of Mesopotamia, and was prevailed on to meet Surena, on pretence of negotiating a peace, where he was treacherously put to death. The Parthians cut off his head, and, in contempt of his avarice, poured melted gold into his mouth. The bond of union between Pompey and Caesar, which had been greatly weakened by the death of Julia, was finally dissolved by that of Crassus. They had now recourse to arms, and their struggles for the superiority terminated in the final extinction of Roman liberty.

Cretenses, ium, the inhabitants of Crete, æ, vel, Crete, es, f. a large island in the Mediterranean Sea, opposite to Mare Aegaeum, (Archipelago.) From its principal city, it is now called Candia. Cres, Crete, m. et Cressa, æ, f. a native of Crete or Candia. Crete, Idis, of Crete or Candia, with relation to a female, or to a noun feminine.

Curiosolites, ärum, and Curiosolites, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, among Armoricas Civitates, whose country was afterwards called Bretagne.

D.

Daci, örum, the inhabitants of Dacia a country corresponding to the modern Wallachia, Transylvania, Moldavia, and that part of Hungary which lies to the east of the Tisibis or Teiss; B. VI. Ch. 25.

Danubius, i, the Danube, the largest river in Europe, rises in the black forest in Germany, (according to Strabo and Pliny, in the mountain Abnoba,) runs in an easterly direction, through Austria, Germany, Hungary, part of Turkey in Europe, and discharges itself into Pontus Euxinus, (the Black Sea.) The ancients gave the name of Ister to the eastern part of this river, after its junction with the Savus, (Save.) Though of great breadth and depth in many places, it is not generally navigable on account of the cataracts. Strabo, Diodorus Siculus, Tacitus, and Pliny, have given descriptions of this river in many respects different, and all
exceedingly inaccurate. With the whole course of the Danube the Greeks and Romans were very imperfectly acquainted. Their knowledge of the countries to the north of this large river, was almost wholly obtained by vague report from unlettered barbarians, and, of course, very incorrect.

In the decline of the Roman empire, it became better known to that people, in consequence of almost all the barbarous nations, who assailed that state, commencing hostilities by ravaging the country on the banks of the Danube. But learning had sunk with the state, and no minute or accurate account of this river is found in classic authors.

Decumāna (porta), the rear gate of the Roman camp, (See Castra) so called because the tens of the maniples were stationed there. Decurio, ōnis, m. (from decem, ten,) an officer of the cavalry among the Romans, who commanded ten men. Each Turma, or troop of horse, had three Decuriones, and each Decurio chose a subaltern, who was, on that account, called Optio.

Delectus, ōs, (from deligo, to choose,) a military term to denote the levying or enrollment of soldiers. The consuls, after they entered on their office, appointed a day, on which all who were of the military age (from 17 to 46,) should be present in the capitol. On the day appointed, the consuls seated in their curule chairs, assisted by the military or legionary tribunes, held a levy, unless hindered by the tribunes of the commons. It was determined by lot in what order the tribes should be called. The consuls ordered such as they pleased to be cited out of each tribe; and every one was obliged to answer to his name under a severe penalty. They were careful to choose those first who had what were thought lucky names; as, Valerius, Sabinus, Statorius, &c. Their names were written down on tables, hence, Scribere milites, to enlist, to levy, or to raise soldiers.

Diablintes, ium, et Diablītēs, et Dianīlītēs, ārum, a people of Gallia Celtīca, on the river Meduāna, (Māine.) Their chief town was Neodununum, afterwards Diablintes, now Jublens.

Dictator, ōris, m. a Dictator, an extraordinary Magistrate at Rome, who possessed absolute authority over not only the lives and fortunes of his fellow citizens, but even over the laws themselves. A free government could admit of such an officer being appointed only on important and alarming conjunctures. We find from Roman history that the first Dictator was chosen during the wars with the Latins, (499 B. C.) and that his appointment was a consequence of the plebeians refusing to enlist, and of the consuls
being unable to protect the state. Unless when threatened with imminent danger, either from domestic sedition or foreign wars, the consuls held the highest office, and the laws set bounds to their powers; but the Dictator knew no restriction. Twenty-four Lictors preceded him, and, whilst he remained in office, the functions of the other magistrates, with the exception of that of Tribunes of the people, were suspended. He proclaimed war, levied forces, and marched against the enemy; or made peace or disbanded them whenever he pleased. Execution followed his decision, and from his judgment lay no appeal. At the expiration of his office, which could not exceed six months, he might be called to an account for his conduct; but few instances of it occur in the annals of Rome. Bravery does not extirpate credulity, nor does greatness of mind obliterate the fictions of ignorance. Though a nation of intrepid warriors, the Romans were credulous and superstitious. Hence to avert a plague, to remove some dreadful calamity, or to stop the progress of an invading enemy, they sometimes named a Dictator to drive a nail into the temple of Jupiter, which trivial and absurd ceremony they thought possessed these virtues. They sometimes too appointed a Dictator to hold the comitia, or to celebrate public festivals, and once to choose Senators. But for these purposes, except on particular occasions, the state had seldom recourse to the election of that magistrate.

Dies, ci, m. & f. a day, or that space of time which elapses from the first appearance of light in the morning, till the return of darkness at night. It is more generally used to denote the time the sun is visible, or above the horizon, which strictly speaking constitutes a solar day. The term has frequently a more extended signification, and includes the night. This forms the Astronomical day, and has also been called the Natural or Civil day. It exceeds the Siderial day, or a complete revolution of the earth on its axis, by three minutes and fifty-six seconds. Different nations begin the day at different times. Among the Romans the natural day began when the sun first appeared above the horizon, which was called the first hour, and ended with that luminary disappearing, which was the twelfth hour. This mode of dividing that space of time during which the sun is visible into twelve parts, though still followed in Turkey, must have been attended with great inconvenience. The hours thus varied with the length of the day and those of the night were subject to the same alteration. Besides, the hours of these two portions of time could be equal only twice a year, viz: at the Equinoxes, (See Hora.) The civil day
began at midnight, when the third watch commenced. With us, and most of the nations of Europe, the day is reckoned from midnight to midnight. The Jews began their day at sun-setting, and like the Romans divided it into twelve hours; and the night with them also consisted of twelve hours. It may not be improper to observe that astronomers generally compute from noon to noon, reckoning in a numeral succession from one to twenty-four hours, and not by two twelves agreeably to common usage.

Dis, itis, the god of riches, Pluto.

Divico, ōnis, a nobleman of great influence among the Helvetii, who commanded the army in the war against Cassius, and was at the head of the embassy sent by that state to Cæsar, after three-fourths of their forces had crossed the Arar, (Suone,) and he had attacked and killed a great part of the other fourth.

Divitiācus, i, a nobleman of the Aedui, who had great influence with Cæsar, in consequence of his steady attachment to the Romans.

Druides, um, v. Druidae, ārum, (a term of doubtful etymology), Druids, the priests of the ancient Britons, Gauls, and Germans. Besides supreme authority in all matters of religion, their power extended to all public and private differences, and what is of much greater consequence, to making, explaining, and executing the laws. This exorbitant jurisdiction was necessarily attended with every mark of power. They were exempted from taxes and military service, and their persons were held sacred and inviolable. Among the Gauls there were only two classes of any note, the Druids and Equites, of which that of the Druids was the more illustrious. Their authority in many instances, surpassing that of the nobles, it is not surprising that they were, in general, sons of the first families. The worship and sacrifices of these priests were performed in deep groves, chiefly under an oak, which was their favorite tree. It was reckoned unlawful to commit any of their doctrines to writing; hence, many of their peculiar tenets are now unknown. It is generally supposed they believed in the immortality of the soul, and also the metempsychosis. Of natural philosophy, astronomy, arithmetic, and botany, it cannot be doubted their knowledge was very considerable. To the study of rhetoric they paid great attention, and to the charms of their eloquence, much of the admiration and power which they enjoyed, may be justly ascribed. Britain was, according to Cæsar, the great school of the Druids, whose chief settlement was Anglesy, called Mona by Tacitus. The natives of Gaul and Germany, who wished to be thoroughly versant in the mysteries of
Druidism, resorted to this island to complete their studies. At what time the Druids were wholly suppressed in Britain, is uncertain. But from the introduction of Christianity, their power and influence began to decline. It is worthy of remark, that some of their superstitious doctrines, and modes of predicting future events, are not, at this day, entirely forgotten in many parts of the island.

Dubis, is, m. the Doux, a river of Gallia, (France,) which originates in a small lake near mount Jura, and after a southwest course of sixty leagues, falls into the Arar, (Saone,) near to Cabillōnum, (Chalons.)

Dumnōrīx, īgis, one of the Āduī, and brother of Divitiācus. He persuaded the noblemen of Gallia, (France,) not to go with Cæsar into Britain, withdrew privately from the Roman camp, and was killed by the soldiers who were sent in pursuit of him, in consequence of his obstinacy in refusing to return. His character will be found in B. G. I. 18.

Durocortōrum, i, n. the capital of the Remi, now called Rheims, on the Vesle, one of the branches of the river Axōna, (Aisne.)

E.

Eburōnes, um, (Eburōnes, in Greek), a people of Gallia Belgica, whose territories lay on both sides of the river Mosa, (Mæse, or Meuse,) at its junction with the Sabis, (Sambre,) On their being dispossessed, they were succeeded by the Tungrī. They were under the vassalage of the Treviri. Cæsar attempted to extirpate this nation; but this barbarous design, even from his own account, he was unable to carry into full effect.

Eburōvīces, um, a people of Gallia, (France,) on the left bank of the Sequāna, (Seine.) The Lexovīi were between them and the sea. Their chief city was at first called Mediolānum, and afterwards Eburōvīces, now Evreux.

Elusātēs, ium, a people of Aquitania, who lived on the river Atur, (Adour,) whose principal city was Elūsa, ae, f. (Euse.)

Equītes, (from equus and eo,) cavalry. Of these the number belonging to each legion was 300, called justus equitātus, or ala. They were divided into ten turmae, or troops of thirty each; and each turma into three decuriae, or bodies of ten men. The office of the Equītes at first was to serve in the army. They were se-
lected both from the patricians and plebeians; they were required, when chosen, to be 18 years of age, and to possess a fortune of 400 sestertia, ($15,472.) See Gr. App. V.

Eratosthenes, is, a native of Cyrene, (Cyrenae,) the scholar of Callimachus, and of Aristo of Chios, and the second who was intrusted with the Alexandrian library, devoted his time to criticism and philosophy. He was eminent as a poet and mathematician, but more distinguished as an astronomer and geographer. He died in the year 194 B.C. in the 82d year of his age. B. VI. Ch. 24.

Essui, orum, supposed to be also called Saii, orum, a people of Gallia, whose territories lay on the Olêna, (Orne,) adjoining to the Diablintes and Aulerici Eburones.

Esubii, orum. This word occurs only in B. G. III. 7, where the readings are very different. Some copies have Esubios, or Eusubios, and others Lexuvios. The Greek has Unellos, to which Dr. Clarke, in a note, seems to give the preference, although he has retained Eusubios in the text.

Evocati, (from erôco, to call out,) veteran soldiers, who had served out their time and received their discharge, but who were sometimes again called out into public service. This class were highly respected, and were exempted from the drudgery of military service to which the other soldiers were subjected.

Excubiae, arum, watches either by day or night. Vigiliae, watches by night only. These were relieved at the end of every three hours; hence the night, from sunset till sunrise, was divided into four watches, called the first, second, third, and fourth. See Gr. App. I.

Exercitus, ús, (from exercéo, to exercise,) an army, a body of men trained to, or exercised in military service. (Agmen, from ago, an army on the march, or in marching order. Acies, an army drawn up in a line, or in battle array.) A consular army consisted of two Roman legions, (See Legio,) with the proper number of cavalry, and two legions of the allies with their cavalry, making in all about 20,000 men, or in the time of Polybius. 18,600

F.

Fabius, i, (Caius,) one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Fabius, i, (Quintus Fabius Maximus) a Roman consul who defeated the Averni and Ruténi.
Funditores, um, (from funda, a sling.) Slingers, a class of warriors usually joined with the Velites, but not properly a part of them. They were armed with slings and stones, or bullets of lead, which from practice they threw with great precision and with so much force that neither buckler nor head-piece could resist their impetuosity. They were generally obtained from the Balearic Isles, Achaia, Crete, Arabia, &c., the Balearians being considered the best. See Velites.

G.

Galba, æ, the name of a branch of the Sulpicii, v. Sulpitii, or, according to others, the surname of the founder of that tribe.

Galba, æ. the king of the Suessiones at the time Cæsar invaded Gaul. On account of his knowledge and love of justice, he was appointed commander-in-chief of the forces raised by the Belgian states, against the power of Rome, in the second year of the Gallic war.

Galba, æ, (Sergius) was the son of C. Galba, and grandson of Servius, or Sergius Galba, a celebrated orator and the first distinguished character of that family. He held the rank of lieutenant in Cæsar's army during the Gallic war, and afterwards joined the conspiracy, which the Republican party formed against the life of that ambitious and unprincipled general.

Galea, a helmet, a defensive piece of armor, made of brass or iron, which came down to the shoulders but left the face uncovered.

Gallia, æ, now France, (See the map,) was an extensive and populous country of Europe, bounded on the north by the British Channel, on the east by the Rhine, Mount Jura and the Alps; on the south by the Mediterranean and Spain; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. In the time of Cæsar it was divided into three parts; Gallia Belgica, or the country of the Belgæ (now Belgium) occupying the northern part; Gallia Celtica, or the country of the Celtæ, or Celts, by far the largest, and occupying the middle portion; and Aquitania, lying between the Garumna (Garonne,) and the Pyrenees,—much smaller than either of the others. Adjoining Gaul on the east, and separated from it by Mount Jura,

* Cæsar does not use this term always in precisely the same sense. In B. I. Ch. 1, it means the whole of Gaul not then subject to the Romans; and in the same chapter it is used to denote the central division, or that possessed by the Celts. It is used in the same restricted sense, B. III, Ch. 2.
lay Helvetia, (now part of Switzerland,) extending from Mount Jura to the Rhine, on the east; and from Lake Lemannus (Geneva) and the Rhone on the south, to the Rhine on the north. On the south and eastern border of Gallia lay what was called Provincia, the Roman Province. (See Provincia.) Each of these great divisions contained within them numerous nations or tribes, all living under their respective kings or chiefs, all of which were finally brought under subjection to the Romans. The whole of this extensive country was called by the Romans Gallia Transalpina, Gaul beyond the Alps, to distinguish it from the northern part of Italy, which they called Gallia Cisalpina.

In the 27th year before the Christian era, and twenty years after the conquest of Gaul was completed by C. Julius Caesar, Augustus Caesar made a new division of the whole, including Provincia Romana and Helvetia, into four grand divisions, in which more attention was paid to equality in the extent of the provinces than to the nations that inhabited them. Aquitania was extended northward and eastward to the Liger, (Loire,) Gallia Belgica on its eastern border was extended southward, taking in part of Gallia Celtica, and the whole country of the Helvetii. These four divisions were Gallia Belgica, Gallia Celtica, Aquitania, and Gallia Narbonensis (formerly Provincia, or Provincia Romana). These four divisions were again subdivided into seventeen provinces in all. And it is this division which is exhibited in the maps of ancient geography commonly in use. In the map accompanying this work, the division of the country in the time of Caesar, and the names by which these divisions were then known, have been preferred as more suitable for such a work as this.

The whole country of Gaul from the time of its conquest by Caesar, 47 years B. C., remained subject to the Romans, and a part of their vast empire for five hundred and fifty years. On the final dismemberment of that empire, Gaul being conquered by the Franks, (or Freemen,) a confederacy of warlike nations bordering on the Rhine, was from them called France about the beginning of the sixth century.

Galli, örum, the Gauls, or the inhabitants of Gaul. Gallus, i, a Gaul; one of the inhabitants of Gaul.

Gallus, i, (Marcus Trebius,) a prefect or Tribune of the soldiers, sent by P. Crassus, to forage among the Curiosolitæ.

Garites, um, a people of Aquitania, to the north of the Ausci.
Garumna, æ, m. the Garonne, a river of France, which rises in the valley of Arran, to the south of St. Bernard, runs with rapidity N. N. E. to Tolósa, (Toulouse,) afterwards N. N. W. to Guienne, and falls into Oceânsus Cantabricus, vel, Mare Aquitanicum, (the Bay of Biscay.) The general course of this river, which extends to about 250 miles, is northwest. After its junction with the Duranitus, (Dordogne,) below Burdegalia, (Bourdeaux,) it assumes the name of Gironde. According to Julius Cæsar's division of Gaul, the Garonne was the boundary of Aquitania, and separated that district from Gallia Celtica. It is navigable to Toulouse, and communicates with the Mediterranean by means of the Royal Canal, about 180 miles long, made through Languedoc by Louis XIV.

Genèva, æ, f. Geneva, a town at the western extremity of Lacus Lemainnus, (the Lake of Geneva,) on the south bank of the Rhoânsus, (Rhône.) From Geneva towards Mount Jura, Cæsar raised a mole or rampart of earth, nineteen miles in length.

In modern times, Geneva is a considerable city, nearly two miles in circumference, and contains thirty thousand inhabitants. Besides being neatly built, it is strongly fortified, and remarkable for its beautiful situation, fine walks, and delightful prospects. Calvin spent the latter part of his life at Geneva, and his followers have, ever since, held the government of the city.

Germania, æ, f. Germany, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by the Danubius, (Danube;) on the east by the Vistula, (Vistula;) on the north by Codanus Sinus, vel, Mare Suevicum, (the Baltic Sea;) and on the west by the Rhenus, (Rhine,) and Oceânsus Germanicus, (the German Sea.)

Germanus, i, pl. i, örum, the people of Germany; Germans.

Getulì, örum, (sing. Getulus, i,) the inhabitants of Getulia, or Gætulia, æ, f. Biledulgerid, a large country of Africa, to the south of Mauritania and Numidia. It formed part of the kingdom of Massinissa. Sallust, from books written in the Punic language which belonged to Hiempsal, gives the following character of the Getuli and Libyes:—"Africa was at first possessed by the Getuliens and Libyans, a savage and untutored people, who lived on the flesh of wild beasts, or grass of the field, like cattle; subject to no established customs, laws or government, a race of wanderers, who had no settled habitation, and who lay down to rest wherever night overtook them."—Sal. Bel. Jug. 18.

Gladius, i, a sword. The Roman sword was short, straight, and heavy; both for cutting and thrusting. It was worn on the right
side, so as in drawing not to interfere with the shield. The long sword of the cavalry was curved, and was worn on the left side. Gorduni, ërum, a people of the northern part of Gallia Belgica, subject to the Nervii, whose territories lay along the sea-coast, to the north of the Morini. Graiocéli, ërum, an ancient nation of Gaul, whose territories seem to have been adjacent to those of the Centrônes and Caturiges, a people who lived among the Alps. Grudii, ërum, a neighboring nation to the Gorduni. Their country was bounded on the north by the mouths of the Scaldis, (Scheldt.)

H.

Harûdes, um, a people of Germania, (Germany,) on the north bank of the Danubius, (Danube,) towards the source of that river. Hastáti, ërum, the name given to the first rank of the Roman legion (See Legio.) Helvetia, æ, f. Switzerland, a country of a triangular form, bounded on the north by the river Rhenus, (Rhone,) and Lacus Brigantinus, (Lake of Constance,) which separate it from Vindelicia and Germania, (Germany;) on the south by the Rhodânuus, (Rhone,) and Lacus Lemánus, (the Lake of Geneva,) which divides it from Provincia Româna; and on the west by Mount Jura which protected them from the Gauls. Hence it is manifest that Helvetia was of less extent than Switzerland. Cæsar (B. G. I. 1,) seems to consider the Helvetii as Gauls. In Lib. I. cap 24, he says, Helvetii—phalange factâ, by which is to be understood simply, that they fought in close order, not that they drew up their troops precisely in the form of the Macedonian Phalanx, so celebrated in ancient history. Helvetii, ërum, the people of Helvetia; the Helvetians. Hercynia, æ, f. a very extensive forest of Germany, the breadth of which, according to Cæsar, was nine days journey, and its length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Namnètes, and Raurâci, along the Danubius, (Danube,) to the country of the Daci and Anartes; then turning to the north, it spread over many large tracts of land, and is said to have contained many different animals, unknown in other countries, of which Cæsar describes two or three kinds. Since the other forests of Germany were only branches of the Hercynian, some writers have considered it as covering nearly the whole of that
extensive territory. As the country became more inhabited, the grounds were gradually cleared, and few vestiges of the ancient forest remain in modern times.

Hiberna, ërum, winter quarters The wars of the Romans were prosecuted chiefly in the summer. When the weather and the state of the country became unfavorable to military operations the troops were withdrawn from the field, and led into winter quarters, (hiberna.) These were strongly fortified and furnished with every accommodation, like a city, containing storehouses, (armaria,) workshops, (fabricœ,) an infirmary, (valetudinarium,) &c. Hence, from them many towns in Europe, and particularly in England, are supposed to have had their origin. This appears to be indicated by the terminations cester, or chester, from castra.

Hibernia, æ, l. Ireland, a considerable island in Mare Atlanticum, (the Atlantic Ocean). It is washed on the east by Oceanus Verginius, (St. George's Channel,) which separates it from England; on the north by Mare Hibernicum, (Irish Sea,) which divides it from Scotland; and on all other parts by Mare Atlanticum, (the Atlantic Ocean,) of which St. George's Channel, and the Irish Sea, form but very small parts.

Hiberni, ërum, the inhabitants of Hibernia.

Hispania, æ, l. Spain, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Gallitanae, or Herculeum, (the Strait of Gibraltar;) on the east by the Mediterranean, which was known among the Romans by the appellation of Nostrum Mare, and among the Greeks, of Mare Internum; on the north by the Pyrenæi Montes, (Pyrenées,) which separate it from Gallia, (France,) and Oceanæus Cantabricus, (the Bay of Biscay;) on the west by Lusitania, (Portugal, included in Hispania Ulterior,) and Mare Atlanticum, (the Atlantic Ocean,) which the Greeks called Mare Externum. Its greatest length, from east to west, is 600 miles, and its greatest breadth 550. The superficial contents of this country are about 148,000 square miles. Spain, including Portugal, was, by the Romans, divided into two parts, Hispania Citerior, (Hither Spain,) and Hispania Ulterior, (Further Spain;) hence, duæ Hispaniae, the two Spainis, or Hispania, Spains. The former, or northern, comprehending an extent of country equal to three-fourths of modern Spain, the latter, or southern, the rest of the country. These two divisions were sometimes governed by proconsuls, but more commonly by praetors.

In the reign of Augustus, Hispania Citerior was, from Tarráco, its principal city, called Tarracconensis, and Hispania Ulterior.
was divided into *Lusitania* and *Bœtica*. The former appellation was derived from the Lusitani, the most powerful of the nations who inhabited that country, and the latter, from Bœtis, the *Guadalquivir*, a very large river, which watered that province.

Hispani, örum, the people of Hispania.

**Hora, æ, f. an hour.** Among the Romans it was the twelfth part of the day. The first hour commenced with the rising of the sun, and the twelfth ended with his setting. It is manifest that the portion of time denominated an hour by them, was constantly changing, and was of equal length to our hour only at the equinoxes. At these two periods of the year, and at them only, their first hour corresponded to our 7 o'clock in the morning; the second to eight, third to 9, fourth to 10, and fifth to 11; but their sixth hour or noon (meridies) coincided exactly with our 12 o'clock noon, or mid-day throughout the whole year. Their 7th then answered to our 1 in the afternoon, 8th to 2, 9th to 3, 10th to 4, 11th to 5, and 12th to 6. At the summer solstice, or longest day, the sun rises at Rome a few minutes past 4 o'clock, and sets the same number of minutes before 8, consequently their hour is, at that time, nearly ½ longer than ours, and at the winter solstice it will be as much shorter.

**I.**

Iccius, i, m. one of the ambassadors whom the Rhemi sent to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Iccius, i, (sc. portus,) a harbor in the country of the Morini, in Gallia Belgica, which, according to some, was Boulogne, and, according to others, Vissant, or Calais. Ptolemy mentions it as a promontory, although it cannot be doubted that there was likewise a cognominal harbor. From his description, this seems to be the place which he had in view. It could not be Calais. Cæsar set out from Iccius Portus, when he sailed the second time for Britain.

Idus, uum, f. the Ides, one of the divisions of the Roman month. In March, July, and October, the Ides were on the 15th, and in the other months, on the 13th. Like the Kalends, and Nones, the Ides were reckoned backwards. (See Gr. App. I.)

**Illyricum,** (Croatia, Bosnia, and Slavonia,) a country opposite to Italy, bordering on the Adriatic. It was bounded on the south by Macedonia; on the east by Mœsia and Pannonia; on the north by
Noricum; and on the west by Histia and Mare Adriaticum, vel Supīrum, (the Gulf of Venice.)

Imanuentius, i, m. a Briton, the father of Mandubratius, and king of the Trinobantes. He was killed by Cassivellaunus.

Impedimenta, ōrum, baggage; (from impedio, to hinder.) The heavier baggage of the Romans, such as tents, mills, &c. was carried on beasts of burden; sometimes, though more seldom, on baggage wagons, (carri.) Every thing else was carried by the soldiers themselves, each of whom usually carried provisions for fifteen days, usually corn, sometimes dressed food, a saw, a basket, a mattock or axe, a reaper’s hook and leathern thong, a chain, a pot, usually three or four stakes, sometimes more, for the vallum, amounting in all, exclusive of armor, to 60 pounds; and under this load they commonly marched 20 miles a day, sometimes more.

Indutiomarus, i, a chief man among the Treviri, father-in-law to Cingetōrix, who attacked Labienus, but was repulsed, and slain.

Italia, æ, f. Italy, a large and celebrated country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Siculum, (the Strait of Messina,) which separates it from Sicily; on the northeast by Mare Adriaticum, or Supīrum, (the Gulf of Venice,) which divides it from Græcia, (Greece,) now part of Turkey in Europe. The Alpes, (Alps,) form the boundary between Italy and Germany on the north; and on the southwest it is washed by that part of the Mediterranean, formerly called Mare Tyrrehēnum, Tuscom. or Inserum, now the Tuscan Sea. The Appeninus, (Appenines,) forms a ridge of mountains which extends from the Alps to Rhegium, (Reggio,) the whole length of the country. The sources of all the rivers in Italy are found in these mountains. Roma, (Rome,) for many years the seat of universal empire, was the capital of Italy. From it, the inhabitants of Italy were frequently called Romāni, a name originally given only to the natives of that city and its territory, which was long very small.

Itāli, ōrum, the people of Italia; Italians.

Itius Portus, a harbor in the country of the Morīni, from which Cæsar sailed on his second expedition against Britain. See Iccius.

J.

Jugum, i, a yoke. This consisted of two spears or pieces of wood set upright in the ground, a little space apart, over which a third was laid across the top, the whole resembling the Greek Η.
Under this frame the soldiers of conquered armies were often obliged to pass naked, (nudi,) i. e. without their armor, which was previously laid down.

Jumenta, orum, beasts of burden, (horses, mules, asses, &c.) used by the Romans for carrying their heavier baggage. (See Impedimenta.)

Junius, i, (Quintus, i,) a Spaniard who was frequently sent by Caesar to converse with Ambiorix.

Jura, æ, m. a chain of mountains which, extending from the Rhodanus, (Rhone,) to the Rhenus, (Rhone,) separated Helvetia, (Switzerland,) from that part of Gallia Celtica which the Sequani possessed, now called Franche Compte. Vosègus, (Vauge,) is a branch, or an extension of Mount Jura.

Justus equitatus, the complement of cavalry attached to a Legion; three hundred in number, exclusive of the horsemen of the allies.

K.

Kalendæ, or Calendæ, arum, i. the Kalends, the name given by the Romans to the first day of every month. A priest was appointed to give notice to the people of the change of the moon, or when the new moon was first visible. This term appears to be derived from the Greek verb ἀκλεω, I call. (See Gr. App. I.)

L.

Laberius. (Quintus, L. Durus,) a tribune of the soldiers in Caesar's army. He was killed in Britain, B. G. V. 15.

Labiènus, i, (Titus, i,) one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the beginning of the Civil war he deserted to Pompey, escaped from the battle of Pharsalia, and was killed in that of Munda.

Latobrigi, orum, a people who appear to have been neighbors of the Helvetii Rauraci and Tulingi, but of whom little is known with certainty.

Legatus, i, m. a lieutenant-general, who was both appointed by, and acted immediately under, the consul, or Commander-in-chief. The number of these officers varied in proportion to the greatness or importance of the war. Each legion had at least one, often two. When separated from the main army, sent into win-
ter quarters, &c. the lieutenant-general, being the deputy of the commander, had the honor to be the highest officer.

At their first institution, the Legati were counsellors to the governors of provinces, and decided all causes of minor importance; but held no military rank. Hence the word primarily denoted an Ambassador. Their admission into the army naturally resulted from that place of intimacy and confidence. Under the emperors the term became a common appellation for all invested with the highest military command in foreign countries.

Legio, ēonis, f. a legion, or body of soldiers consisting of different numbers at different times. In the early part of the reign of Romulus, the legion contained 3,000 foot, and 300 horse, which he, on the increase of the citizens by the admission of the Sabines, raised to 4,000. To that number 1,000 was added during the war which Hannibal carried on in Italia, (Italy,) about 216 years B. C. but a reduction of 500 had taken place before the time Polybius wrote his history. Livy states that the legion consisted of 5,000 foot, and Vegetius, of 6,000 foot. It cannot be doubted that these historians recorded the exact number, which constituted a complete legion in their respective times. The legion consisted of ten cohorts, each cohort of three maniples, and each maniple of two centuries; and in the order of battle the troops were drawn up in three lines, first the Hastati; second, the Principes; and third, the Triarii. Those who formed the first line were called Hastati, from their fighting with Hasta, a long spear, which was afterwards laid aside on account of its being inconvenient. They were the flower of the Roman youth. The second line consisted of the same number of maniples, but of men more advanced in life, and of greater military experience, who were called Principes, probably from their being at one time the first line. Their arms were heavy. The Triarii made up the third line, and seem to have been a body of reserve. They were frequently, from Pilum, a javelin, called Pilāni, and the Hastati and Principes, Antepilāni, from being stationed before them. The Velites generally skirmished before the lines, sometimes between them, and appear to have been what the moderns call Irregulars. They had light armor, hence called expediti, levis armātūrā, &c. The archers and slingers were attached to this body. According to that historian, twenty Velites seem to have belonged to each maniple. They were, in battle, not formed into cohorts, or maniples, but fought in such parties and in such places as the commander judged most advantageous.
In the early ages of the Roman state, their army in battle order was drawn up, like the Macedonian phalanx, in a continued line. This fact rests on the authority of Livy. The disposition into three lines, and arranging in maniples at some distance from each other seems an improvement of later times. When the Hastati yielded to the superior force or bravery of the enemy, they fell back to the Principes, who filled up the spaces between the maniples, and with them they renewed the charge. If both were forced to give way, the Triarit came up, and a third attack was made on the enemy. Hence, ad triarios ventum est, it is come to the last push; matters are in the utmost danger. The cavalry fought on the wings, but their exact form or position is not certainly known. It probably did not differ very much from the practice of the moderns. If after the whole force was brought into action the enemy still prevailed, they of necessity submitted to a defeat.

All the cohorts of the legion were manifestly on an equal footing in the army of Caesar, and no preference seems to have been either acknowledged or claimed. The only vestige of the ancient division was the others retaining their former appellations, as Primus hastatus, Primus pilus, &c. Caesar frequently kept the third line as a body of reserve.

Lemanus (Lacus), the Lake of Geneva, is a most beautiful expanse of water, in the form of a crescent, the convex side of which is upwards of fifty-four miles long. Its hollow side is towards Switzerland, and its greatest breadth measures about twelve miles. The Rhodanuus, (Rhone,) descending from the Alps, traverses the whole length of the lake, and renders the water at its entrance turbid, on account of the quantity of earth and mud brought down from these steep mountains. Like the other waters and lakes of Switzerland, for nearly an hour in the evening, after the sun is hid behind Mount Jura, it shines with a splendor resembling burnished gold, by the reflection of the solar rays from the Glaciers.

Leponti, òrum, a people of the Alps, near the source of the Rhodanuus, (Rhone,) on the south of that river.

Levaci, òrum, a people in the northern part of Gallia Belgica, on the Scaldis, (Scheldt,) between the Nervii and Grudii. The Centrones, Grudii, Levaci, Pleumosii, and Gorduni. were vassals of the Nervii. B. G. V. 39.

Leuci, òrum, a Belgic nation who lived between the Mosa, (Meuse,) and the Mosella, (Moselle,) near the source of that river.
Lexovii, õrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, whose country was bounded on the north by the Sequana, (Seine,) and on the west by Fretum Gallicum, or, Britannicum, (the English Channel.)

Liger, õris, or Ligëris, is, m. the Loire, a large river of Gaul, which takes its rise in the country of the Helvii, runs N. N. W. and after a course of 200 miles, falls into Oceanus Cantabricus, (Bay of Biscay.) According to the division of Gaul made by Augustus, the Loire was the northern boundary of Aquitania.

Lingones, õm, a people of Gaul whose territories included Mount Vosegus, (Vauge,) consequently the sources of the rivers Mosa, (Meuse,) and Matrōna, (Marne.) Their chief town was Andomadūnum, or Andomatūnum, afterwards Lingones, now Langres.

Liscus, i, one of the Supreme magistrates of the õEdui, who along with Divitiacus and other chiefs of that nation, was in Cæsar's camp in the Gallic war, and informed him of the conduct and plans of Dumôrīx.

Lituus, i, a clarion, bent a little at the end like an augur's staff. It was used for the cavalry. The tuba was straight and employed by the infantry. The cornu was bent almost round. The buccina was commonly used for changing the watches.

Lorica, æ, a coat of mail, generally made of leather, covered with plates of iron in the form of scales, or iron rings twisted within one another like chains. It is also used to denote a battlement, or defence of towers and walls, constructed of stone or of hurdles.

Lucinius, i, (Quintus, i,) a centurion of the first rank, who was killed in attempting to rescue his son when surrounded by some of the troops of Ambiörīx, after that king had treacherously persuaded Aurunculeius Cotta and Q. Titurius Sabinus, lieutenants, with the army which they commanded, consisting of one legion and five cohorts, to leave their winter-quarters among the Ebūrōnes.

Lugotōrīx, īgis, one of the four kings of Cantium, (Kent;) some copies read Cingetōrīx (B. G. V. 22).

Lutetia, æ, f. Lutetia the capital of the Parisii, (Parīs, now the capital of France,) was originally a fortress on a small island in the Sequāna, (Seine.) There are two other islands in the Seine at Paris covered with buildings, and connected with each other and the town, by means of bridges. Paris, situated in a plain on both sides of the Seine, is of a circular form, and upwards of eleven miles in circumference. It contains many stately edifices, and the finest collections of medals, statues, and paintings, in the
world. Every thing excellent in Rome, and in the other cities of Italy, has been conveyed to Paris to enrich these collections and to adorn the city.

M.

MAGETOBRIA, a city of Gallia, (France,) at which Ariovistus defeated the combined forces of the Gauls. This victory put the country under his dominion.

Mandubratius, i, one of the nation of Trinobantes, who, on his father's being killed by Cassivellaunus, fled from Britain to Caesar then in Gaul, who took him and the state under his protection.

Manilius, (Lucius, i,) a proconsul, who was obliged to fly from Aquitania, with the loss of all his baggage.

Manilius, i, (Tusculeus,) one of the conspirators against Cassius Longinus, Proprætor of Farther Spain.

Manipulus, i, (See Legio.)

Marcomanni, or Marcomanni, orum, a people of Germania, (Germany,) whose territories were bounded on the west by the Rhenus, (Rhine,) and on the south by the Danubius, (Danube,) corresponding to part of the modern Circle of Swabia. They afterwards expelled the Boii, and took possession of their country, now called Bohemia.

Mare Nostrum, the Mediterranean Sea, to which the Romans gave this name, from its bounding their native country, Italia, (Italy,) on three sides. By the Greeks it was called Mare Internum; and the Atlantic Ocean, Mare Externum. In Scripture, this collection of water is denominated the Great Sea, which, though of small extent, when compared with the Pacific Ocean, &c. is the largest inland sea in the world. The modern appellation is manifestly derived from its situation, being wholly surrounded by land, except the narrow strait of Gibraltar, which connects it with the Atlantic Ocean.

The length of the Mediterranean is about 2,300 miles, and its breadth varies from 900 to 300 miles. Tides are scarcely known in this sea, except in the Gulf of Venice, and on the coast of Tripoli. There is a constant influx into the Mediterranean, both from the Atlantic and Pontus Euxinus, (the Black Sea.) That part of it which is east of the Archipelago, or of the island Candia, is called the Levant.

The principal islands in the Mediterranean, are the Baleares,
Matrona, w. f. the Marne, a river of Gallia, (France,) which formed part of the ancient boundary between Gallia Belgica and Gallia Celtica. It takes its rise at Sangres, runs northwest to Chalons, then westward, passes by Meaux, becomes navigable at Vitry, and at Charenton, a little above Paris, falls into the Sequana, (Seine,) after a course of about ninety-two leagues.

Mediomatrices, um, vel. i, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosella, (Moselle,) and the Rhenus, (Rhine.) The Treviri were their neighbors on the north. Their chief town was Divodurum, afterwards Mediomatrici, now Metz. At one period they were a powerful nation, and possessed a very extensive country. But the conquest of Gallia, (France,) by the Romans, destroyed their power, and confined them to a narrow territory.

Meldi, ōrum, a people whose country was included between the rivers Matrona, (Marne,) and Sequana, (Seine.) The modern town, Meaux, is of some note, and contains 6,000 inhabitants. The Meldi mentioned B. V. 5, were a Belgic tribe living on the Scaldis (Scheldt.)

Menapii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose territory was separated from Insula Batavorum, (Holland,) by the Mosa, (Meuse,) The Toxandri were their neighbors on the south.

Mensis, is, m. a month; a term originally employed to denote that portion of time which elapses between two successive changes of the moon. (See Gr. App. I.)

Messāla, w, (Marcus,) a noble Roman who was consul with Marcus Puppio Piso, in the 60th year B. C.

Mettius, i, (Marcus, i,) a man allied to Ariovistus by the rights of hospitality, whom Cæsar joined in commission with C. ValeriusProcillus, on an embassy to that king. As soon as they entered his camp, without suffering them to speak, Ariovistus commanded both to be put in irons. He thrice drew lots to determine whether they should be burned alive upon the spot, or reserved for another time. The lots being always favorable, their lives were preserved. After the defeat of Ariovistus, Cæsar himself in the pursuit fell in with Procillus, and Mettius was likewise recovered and brought back to the Roman camp.
Minucius, i., (Lucius M. Basilus,) one of Cæsar's officers. To C Fabius, and L. Minucius Basilus, he gave the joint command of two legions, which were stationed among the Rhemi.

Mona, æ, f. the Isle of Man, an island in the Irish Sea, nearly equidistant from England, Scotland, and Ireland. It is thirty miles long, and eight broad. The soil is fertile, the air salubrious, and the inhabitants live in general to a great age. The sovereignty of this island formerly belonged to the Dukes of Athol; but it was sold in 1765 to the crown. Tacitus and others call Anglesy, Mona, but Cæsar is more correct.

Morini, òrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay along the coast opposite to Cantium, (Kent.)

Moritasgus, i, the king of the Senones, at Cæsar's arrival in Gallia, (France.)

Mosa, æ, f. the Mæse, or Meuse, a river of Gallia, (France,) rising a little to the west of Mount Voséagus, (Vauge,) runs north, passes a number of celebrated towns, receives, at Namur, the Sabis, (Sambre,) joins the Vahalis, (Wahal, or, Waal,) below the island of Bommel, and falls into the German Sea. The course of this river, which extends to 160 leagues, is north.

Munatius, i, (Lucius M. Plancus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants, who, with Caius Trebonius, had the command of three legions which were settled in Belgium, during the winter.

Musculus, a species of moveable shed or pent-house on wheels, shaped like an arched wagon, usually sent before the large towers to prepare the way for their advance, by cutting down trees, filling up ditches, removing obstructions, and making a smooth and solid road even up to the enemy's walls.

N.

Nameius, i, a nobleman of the Helvetii, who, with Verudoctius, was at the head of the embassy which that nation sent to Cæsar, to request permission to march through the Roman province.

Namnètes, or, Nannètes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, who lived on the north bank of the Ligéris, (Loire,) where it falls into the sea.

Nantuates, um, a people, whose country lay on the south of Lacus Lemánus, (the Lake of Geneva.)

Narbo, ònis. f. Narbonne, a town of Provincia, to the south of the river Atax, (the Aude,) near the sea-coast, which afterwards gave name to that division of Gallia, (France,) called Narbonensis.
Nasua, æ, the brother of Cимерius, who commanded the 100 Can-
tons of the Suevi, who had encamped on the bank of the Rhenus
(Rhine,) with the design of crossing that river.
Naves, ium, (sing. navis,) ships. The kind of ships used by the
Romans were chiefly two, viz: Naves Longæ, ships of war, and
Naves Oneraria, ships of burden. The Naves longæ were so
called because they were of a longer shape than the others. They
were commonly impelled by oars, and were distinguished by a
helmet at the mast head. They were also ranked as biรีmes, tri-
รีmes, quadrรีmes, and quinquรีmes, according as they had two,
three, four, or five rows or tiers of oars. According to the gene-
rally received opinion, these rows or tiers ran from the prow to
the stern, as exhibited in the following wood cuts, taken from
antiques, the first of which has one row and the second two.
Over these were erected decks on which sometimes towers were
constructed, from which the enemy might be more conveniently
and successfully assailed.

NAVES LONGÆ.

The Naves Oneraria, or ships of burden, were broader and
rounder than the vessels of war. They were impelled by sails
NEMETES—NORICUM.

and distinguished by a basket, *(corbis,)* suspended from the mast head; whence they were sometimes called *corbitae.*

*Naves Acturiae* were ships contrived for lightness and expedition. They had but one bank of oars, or at most two, on each side. They were of different kinds, distinguished by different names; as, *Celóces, Lembi, Phaselli,* &c., but the most remarkable were the *Naves Liburnae,* a kind of light gallies used by the Liburni.

Nunètes, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, probably a tribe of the Germans, on the west bank of the river Rhenus, *(Rhine,)* between the Triboci and Vangiones. Their principal city was Noviomagus, *(Spire,)*

Nervii, órum, a powerful and warlike nation of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay on both sides of the Scaldis, *(Scheldt,)* near the source of that river, afterwards Hainault, and Nord. They revolted and attacked the Roman troops under Caesars; but were totally routed. Their mode of defence against the attacks of cavalry was simple and effectual. The different readings B. G. Lib. II. 17, are numerous, yet the idea conveyed by all is not very materially different. In the place where the Nervii wished to raise a barrier, they, probably at a considerable distance from each other, half cut two rows of young trees, so that they continued to grow, bent them longitudinally, and gave their branches a lateral direction. The middle space between these rows was planted or filled up with briers and thorns, which intermixing with the trees that formed the outside of the fence, rendered the whole so close and impervious, that it not only stopped the progress, but even the view of the invaders.

After *ramis* the common text has *enatis,* which Oudendorp and others reject as a mere gloss, unnecessary to the sense. It is also wanting in the best MSS.

Nonsæ, arum, f. the Nones, the second division of the Roman month; so called, it is supposed, because from that day to the Ides nine days intervened. In the months of March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the seventh, and in the other months on the fifth. *(See Gr. App. I.)*

Noreia, æ, f. a city of Noricum, the capital of the Taurisci. B. I. 5.

Noricum, i, n. or Noricus ager, a large country of Germany, between Italia, *(Italy,)* and the Danubius, *(Danube,)* It comprehended the greater part of Austria, all Saltzburg, Stiria, and Carinthia. Their chief city was Noreia, which was besieged by the
Boii, in the inroad which they had made upon Noricum, before they entered into alliance with the Helvetii.

Noricci, õrum, the people of Noricum.

Noviodunum, i, n. (B. G. II. 15.) a town of the Suessiones, (Soisons, or Noyons.) Another of the Ædui, (B. G. VII. 55.) now Nevers, on the banks of the Ligëris, (Loire). And a third belonged to the Bituriges, (B. G. VII. 14,) now Neuvi or, Neufy, about twenty miles west from Nevers.

Numidia, æ, f. Algiers, a country of Africa, bounded on the north by the Mediterranean; on the west by Mauritania, (Morocco and Fez;) on the south by Gaetulia; and on the east by Africa Propria, (Tunis.)

Numidæ, ærum, and, Nomâdes, um, the inhabitants of Numidia, described by Sallust, in the Jugurthan war, as faithless, unsteady, and fond of revolutions in the state.

O.

Ocellum, i, n. Oux, or Exilles, a town on the frontiers of Gallia Cisalpina, Citerior, or Togata, in Alpes Graiae.

Octodurus, i, (Octodorus, in Greek,) Martigny, a town, or village, of the Veragri, (Vicus Veragrorum, Cæsar, B. G. III. 1,) on the Drance, near its junction with the Rhodanus, (Rhône,) at a considerable distance above the entrance of the latter into Lacus Lemânuus, (the Lake of Geneva.)

Orcynia, æ, f. a name given by Eratosthenes, and some other Greeks, to Hercynia Silva; which see.

Orgetorix, īgis, was, according to Cæsar, the richest and most noble of the Helvetii. Prompted by a love of power, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles, and persuaded the people to quit their country. When his ambitious views were discovered by the state, he was obliged to answer to the charges preferred against him. Orgetorix, by means of his vassals and debtors, rescued himself, from the hands of his judges, and escaped. But whilst the state was endeavoring to support its authority by force, he died, as was suspected, by his own hands.

Osismii, õrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, one of the nations which went under the general name of Civitates Armoricae. Their country afterwards formed part of the province of Bretagne. It is now called Finisterre.
PADUS—PETROSIDIUS.

PADUS, i, m. the Po, the largest river of Italy, anciently called Eridanus. The northern branches of the Po, descending from the Alps, render it largest in the warmest months of summer, by the melting of the snow towards the summit of these lofty mountains. It disembogues into Mare Adriaticum, or Hadriaticum, (the Gulf of Venice,) by seven mouths, of which two were formed by nature, the other five by art.

Pæmâni, orum, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the east bank of the Mosa, (Meuse.) They had the Cæresi on the south, the Treviri on the east, and Silva Arduenna on the north.

Paludamentum, i, the military robe or cloak of the Roman commander; sometimes also worn by the chief officers. It was of a scarlet color, bordered with purple. The elevation of this upon a spear above the Praetorium, or general's tent, was often the signal given for commencing battle.

Parisii, orum, the inhabitants of Lutetia, from whom it was afterwards called Parisii, now Paris, the capital of France. (See Lutetia.)

Passus, us, a pace, (two steps,) was reckoned nearly equal to five feet. (See Gr. App. VI. 5,) Of these 125 made a stadium, and 1000 made a mile; hence, mille passuum, a mile.

Pedius, i, (Quintus) a grandson of one of Julius Cæsar's sisters, was one of his lieutenant-generals in the Gallic war, and appointed in his will co-heir with Octavius, who had Pedius for his colleague in his first consulship. He passed a law, from him called Lex Pedia, declaring the death of Julius Cæsar to have been murder, and subjecting the assassin to capital punishment.

Peligni, orum, a people of Italy, whose country lay between the sources of the rivers Sagrus, (Sangro,) and Aternus, (Pescara,) both of which fall into the Gulf of Venice.

Petrosidius, i, (Lucius, i,) a standard bearer of the army which, under the command of Q. Titurius Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, wintered among the Eburônes. These troops were, in consequence of a stratagem of Ambïôrix, attacked by him on disadvantageous ground two miles from the camp, and almost wholly cut off. Petrosidius having, with a few of his men, returned to the camp, threw his standard within the rampart, and was killed fighting with great bravery before the fortifications.
Pictōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtīca, on the south bank of the Ligēris. (Loire,) where it falls into the sea.

Pilāni. (See Legio.)

Pirustae, ārum, a people of Illyricum, on the east coast of Mare Hadriaticum, (the Gulf of Venice.)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius Calpurnius, i,) Cæsar's father-in-law, who was consul with A. Gabinius Paulus, in the year of the city 696. In their consulship, Cicero was banished from Rome, and Clodius was supported by Piso, in procuring that disgraceful sentence, (B. G. I. 6.)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius, i,) the grandfather of Piso above mentioned, was a lieutenant of Cassius, both of whom fell in an engagement with the Helvetii, (B. G. I. 12.)

Piso, ōnis, surnamed from his country, Aquitanus, a nobleman of Aquitania, whose father had been supreme magistrate in that country, and called Friend by the Romans, (B. G. IV. 12.)

Plancus, i, (L. Munatius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, to whom he gave the joint command with C. Trebonius, of three legions cantoned in Gallia Belgica. After the death of Julius Cæsar, L. Munatius Plancus joined Antony and Lepidus. With the latter he was consul. He is said to have founded Lugdūnum, (Lyons.)

Pleumosii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, supposed to have lived on the Scaldis, (Schelde,) near the place where the city Tournay now stands.

Pluteus, i, a kind of moveable gallery on wheels, in form resembling the Musculus, (which see,) but used chiefly to protect the archers stationed in it, in order to clear the walls with their arrows, and so facilitate the approach of storming parties and the erection of scaling ladders.

Pompeius, i, (Cneius,) a Roman who was well skilled in the language of the Gauls, and acted as interpreter to Quintus Titurius. After the credulity of that lieutenant had placed himself and his men at the mercy of Ambiōrīx, he sent Cneius Pompeius to the king of the Eburōnes, begging him to spare their lives. (See Titurius.)

Præconinus, i, a lieutenant who was himself killed, and his army defeated at Apollōnia.

Præfectus, i, an officer who commanded the allies, and who in the extent of his command resembled the legionary tribune. The commander of the cavalry of a legion was called præfectus alae.

Prætor, ōris, m. a Prætor; (from Præ and eo,) literally, one who goes before. In the early ages of the Roman State, this term is
supposed by some to have been a general appellation of all the Roman Magistrates, afterwards of the general of the army; even the Emperors were ambitious to include it among their other titles. But the word commonly denoted a Roman judge who administered justice both among his fellow-citizens, and also among the foreigners who resided in Rome. In dignity the Prætor ranked next to the Consul. He had power to alter laws, repeal them, and enact new at pleasure.

Prætoria cohors, Prætorian cohort, a select band of troops forming the general's body guard.

Preciani, õrum, a people of Aquitania, who are supposed to have lived at the foot of the Pyreneæi Montes, (Pyrenees,) near Mare Cantabricum, (the Bay of Biscay.)

Primopilus, i, (sometimes primus pilus,) the chief centurion of the legion. This name belonged to the first centurion of the first maniple of the Triarii. He was entrusted with the eagle or main standard of the legion; in pay he ranked among the equites, and had a place in the council of war with the consul and tribunes.

Provincia Romana, the Roman Province; that part of Transalpine Gaul in the possession of the Romans previous to the conquests of Caesar. It extended along the shore of the Mediterranean, from the Pyrenees to the Alps, and was bounded on its northwest side by the Mount Cebenna, (or Cevennes,) and on the north, eastward, by the Ambani, Sequari, and Helvetii. In the new division of Gaul afterwards made by Augustus, its boundaries remained as before, but as all Gaul was now become a Roman Province it ceased to be distinguished by that name, and was called Narbonensis, from Narbo its principal city. (See Narbo.)

Pulpio, Gnis, (Titus, i,) a Roman centurion of distinguished valor, who, to decide a dispute with L. Varènus respecting superiority of courage, rushed forth from the camp, when attacked by the Nervii, and displayed great bravery without the fortifications. Nor was his rival for military fame, inferior to him either in bravery or generosity; B. V. Ch. 44. (See Varènus.)

R.

Rauraci, õrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the northern extremity of Mount Jura. The Rhenus, (Rhine,) was their boundary on the east.

Remi, õrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay to the north of the Matrona, (Marne). Their chief town was Durocorvorum, now Rheims.
Rhédones, um, a people of Gallia Celtica. The Rhédones were one of those nations reckoned among the Civitates Armortice. Their country is now called Bretagne.

Rhenus, i, m. the Rhine, a celebrated river of Europe, which takes its rise in Mount Adula, (St. Gothard) in the country of the Grissons, passes Lacus Brigantinus, (Lake of Constance,) and continues to run nearly west about 75 miles, when it reaches Basti. On leaving this city, it takes a northerly direction and becomes the boundary between France, or the Netherlands, and Germany, till it divides into two branches, which, with the German Sea, formed, what was anciently called, Insula Batavorum, (Holland, or the United Provinces.) After a course of 600 miles, and receiving several rivers on both banks, the Rhine discharges itself into that part of Mare Atlanticum, (the Atlantic Ocean,) called Oceanus Germanicus, (the German Sea.)

Rhodanus, i. m. the Rhone, a large and rapid river of Europe, which has its source in Mount la Fourche, near St. Gothard, in the canton of Uri, not more than two leagues south from that of the Rhenus, (Rhine,) passes Lacus Lemannus, (the Lake of Geneva,) five leagues below which it disappears between two rocks for a considerable way, rises again, flows with great rapidity in a southern direction, and discharges itself by three mouths into that part of the Mediterranean formerly called Gallicus Sinus, (the Gulf of Lyons.) The course of the Rhone is about 400 miles, during which it falls 5,400 feet. In Strabo's time it was navigable a good way up; but its mouths are now so full of rocks brought down from the mountain by its impetuous current, that no ship can enter them. The Rhone is largest in summer, and is at its greatest height soon after the longest day. This is most probably occasioned by the heat of the sun melting part of the snow on the Alps during the summer months.

Roma, æ, f. Rome, one of the most celebrated cities of antiquity, stood on the banks of the Tiber, about fifteen miles from the sea. Romulus, from whom the name is derived, laid the foundation of this city on Mons Palatinus, 15th April, 753 B. C. From a very small beginning it gradually increased, until its circumference, according to Pliny, was not less than twenty miles. After the lapse of many years, Rome became the capital of Italia. (Italy,) and, at the commencement of the Christian Era, the known world was in subjection to that gigantic power. It was divided into twenty-four regions or wards, had seven great, and thirteen smaller aqueducts, thirty-seven gates, and six hundred and forty-four tow-
To ascertain its population when in the height of power, is perhaps impossible; but it could not fall much below four millions.

Roscius, i, (Lucius, i,) a lieutenant, to whom Cæsar gave the command of the third legion, which he was to march into the territories of the Essui.

Rufus, i, (P. Sulpicius, i,) one of Cæsar’s lieutenants, to whom he gave the charge of the port in Gallia, (France,) from which he sailed for Britannia, (Britain,) and a garrison sufficient to protect it during his absence.

Sabinus, i, (Caius Calvisius,) an officer in Cæsar’s army, whom he sent into Ætolia, in Græcia, (Greece,) with five cohorts and a few men.

Sabinus, i, (Q. Titurius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar’s army. He, and L. Aurunculeius Cotta, had the command of the troops which were stationed among the Menapii, and in other parts of Gallia Belgica. When in their quarters on the frontiers of the Eburönes, the artful stratagem of Ambiorix, king of that tribe, to cut off these lieutenants and their two legions succeeded, through the credulity and obstinacy of Sabinus. A few of the private soldiers escaped the sword of the Gauls. (See Cotta.) This officer is sometimes called simply Titurius, or, Sabinus.

Sabis, is, m. the Sambre, a river of Gallia Belgica, which has its rise in what is now called Picardy, runs northeast and falls into the Mosa, (Meuse,) near Namur.

Sagittarii, örum, archers; men who fought with bows and arrows, attached to the velites. (See Legio.) The best archers were the Cretans. The Romans did not use the bow in the early times of the republic, and when introduced they had scarcely any archers except those of the auxiliary troops.

Samarobriva, w, f. (i.e. the bridge of the Samâra.) Amiens, a town of Gallia Belgica, on the south bank of the river Samâra, (Somme.) It was afterwards called Ambianum, from its inhabitants; hence the present name.
Santones, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, to the north of the river Carantōnus, (Charente.) Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Santones, now Saintes.

Scaldis, is, the Scheld, or the Scheldt, a river of Gallia Belgica, which takes its rise about fifteen miles south of Camaracum, (Cambray,) in the province of Picardy, runs north, and dividing into two branches, falls into the German Sea. Cæsar erroneously makes it a branch of the Mosa, (Meuse,) (B. G. VI. 33.)

Scorpiones, a species of military engine for throwing darts and javelins, similar to the Balista, or probably only another name for the same. (See Balista.)

Scutum, i. m. a shield; a part of the defensive armor of the Roman infantry, which they wore on their left arms to protect their bodies against the arrows, darts, and other missile weapons thrown by the enemy. It consisted of thin pieces of wood joined by plates of iron, and covered with thick skin or hide. The most common form was oval, extending to four feet in length and two and a half in breadth. When a soldier had not his shield he was said to fight nudo corpore.

Sedōni, örum, a nation of Helvetia, (Switzerland,) on the north bank of the Rhodānus, (Rhone,) above Lacus Lemanus, (the Lake of Geneva.)

Sedusii, örum, a nation of Germany, on the northeast bank of the Rhe- nus, (Rhine.) Their country was watered by the Mōnus, (Maine.)

Segōnax, acis, one of the four kings who reigned in Cantium, (Kent,) at the time Cæsar invaded Britain.

Segontiaci, örum, a British nation on the south of the river Tamēsis, (Thames.) They appear to have been subject to Cassivel- launus, at the time Cæsar attempted to add this island to the Ro- man empire. (B. V. Ch. 21.)

Segusiāni, örum, a people of Gallia Celtica, to the west of the Rhodānus, (Rhone.) Their country was traversed by the Ligeris, (Loire,) towards the source of that river.

Senènes, um, a warlike nation of Gallia Celtica, who lived on the Sequāna, (Seine,) about 70 miles above Paris.

Septimius, i, (Lucius, i,) a tribune of the soldiers, sent along with Achillas, by Ptolemaeus king of Egypt, to murder Pompey, in whose army he had formerly been a centurion.

Sequāna, æ, the Seine, a river of Gallia, (France,) has its source near Nevers in Bourgogne, runs in a northwest direction, and falls into that part of the Atlantic called Fretum Britannicum, (the British Channel,) at Havre de Grace. The course of this beautiful and picturesque river extends to 250 miles. Paris, the capital of France, originally a fort on a small island in the Seine, above 120 miles from the sea, now stands on both sides of this river, over which there are, in that city, 12 bridges.

Sequāna, æ, f. a district of Gallia, (France,) bounded on the east by Mons Jura, (Mount Jura,) which separated it from the country of the Helvetii; on the north by Mount Vosegus, (Vauge,) which divided it from that of the Leuci; on the west by the country of the Ædui and Lingōnes; and on the south by that of the Ambarri and Allobróges.
SEQUANI—TARUSATES. 307

Sequani ērum, (sing. Sequānus, i,) the people of Sequāna. This nation headed one of the factions of the Gallic states, and the Ėdui the other.

Sesuvii, ērum, (or Sesovii,) one of the Armorican states in Gaul, the situation of which is not known.

Sextius, i, (Publius S. Baculus,) a centurion of the first rank in Cæsar's army, in the Gallic wars.

Sextius, i, (Titus, i,) one of the three lieutenants whom Cæsar sent to augment his army, in the sixth year of the war in Gallia, (France.)

Sibutzates, um, a people of Aquitania, whose country lay along the Atur, (Adour.) Of their history nothing is known.

Sigambri, ērum, a German nation, who lived on the east bank of the Rhine, to the south of the river Rura, (Rotr.)

Silanus, i, (Marcus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he ordered to levy troops for the war in Gallia, (France.)

Silius, i, (Titus, i,) an officer whom P. Crassus sent to the Veneti, to procure grain and forage with Velanius. But the Veneti, seized them in expectation of regaining their hostages by this measure.

Sotiātes, ium, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the Garumna, (Garonne.) Their territories formed part of what was afterwards called Novempopulana, bounded by the Garonne, Pyrenees, and Bay of Biscay.

Suesiones, Susiiones, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country was bounded on the south by the Matrona, (Marne.) Although a brave and powerful nation, they were obliged to submit to the arms of Cæsar.

Suevi, ērum, a nation of Germania, (Germany,) who inhabited a large tract of country, Suevia, æ, f. lying between the Albis Elbe, and the Vistula, (Vistula,) on the northern side of Silva Hercynia. They made many inroads on the Roman territories.

Sulpitius, i, (Publius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Q. Tullius Cicero, and P. Sulpitius, were stationed among the Ėdui, at Cabillo, v. Cabillōnum, (Chalons,) and Matisco, (Mascon,) on the Arar, (Saone.) These two officers were entrusted with the care of provisions.

T.

Tamesis, or Thamesis, is, m. the Thames, one of the largest rivers of England, rises in Cotswold hills in the western extremity of Gloucestershire, runs eastward, and after passing through London, falls into the German Sea. With respect to commerce, this is the first river in the world. It is navigable about 130 miles, and the tide flows up as far as Richmond in Surrey, which taking the course of the river, is 70 miles.

Tarbelli ērum, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the sea-coast, from the Pyrenæi Montes, (Pyrenees,) to the territories of the Cocosates.

Tarusates, ium, a people of Aquitania. The Tarbelli were between them and the Bay of Biscay.
Tasgetius, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Carnutes, whose forefathers had possessed the sovereignty of that state.

Tæximagulus, i, one of the four kings who reigned over Cantium. (Kent.) They seem to have all been under the power of Cassivelonaus.

Tectosages, um, and Tectosagi, orum, a very valiant people of Gallia, a branch of the Volcae, near the Pyrenees. (See Volcae.)

Tenchtueri, orum, a people of Germany, on the river Rhenus, (Rhine,) south of the Sigambri.

Terrasidius, i, (Titus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he sent into the country of the Esubii.

Testudo, ìmis, f. I. A wooden tower used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers when employed in undermining the walls of a town, or in battering them with the ram, (See Aries.) It was erected of wood, and covered with hides, earth, or any other kind of substance which is with difficulty set on fire.

II. When the soldiers of a company advanced to an assault, they frequently stood close together, and formed a shade or screen of their shields, to protect their bodies against the missile weapons, thrown by the enemy from the walls. This defence they also called Testudio, from the resemblance which the locked shields had to the shell or covering of the tortoise, (See the following wood cut,) but it must not be confounded with the tower or mantlet just described.

**TESTUDO.**

Tigurinus Pagus, one of the four cantons or districts, into which Helvetia (Switzerland,) is divided according to Cæsar, compre-
heding the modern cantons Zurich, Schwitz, Schaffhausen, and the lands of the Abbey of St. Gal.

Tigurini, örum, the people of Pagus Tigurinus.

Titus, i, a common praenomen among the Romans.

Titurius, i, (Quintus T. Sabinus,) one of Cæsar’s lieutenants, often called simply, Titurius, killed by Ambiorix. (See Aurunculeius.)

Tolösä, æ, Thoulouse, or Toulouse, a town of Aquitania, beautifully situated on the north bank of Garumna. Tolösä was one of the most flourishing cities of Gaul, afterwards the residence of a Roman colony, and, at a later period, the metropolis of the Visigoths.

Tolosâtes, ium, the inhabitants of Tolösä.

Trebius, i, (Marcus T. Gallius,) an officer sent by Cæsar to the Curiosolitae, to procure provisions.

Trevirî, örum, or (sing. Trevir, íri,) a nation of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosella, (Moselle,) and Silva Arduenna. Their chief city, Augusta Trevirorum, now Tréier, or Trieres, stands on the east bank of the Moselle, over which it has a large bridge.

Tribuni, örum, (sing. Tribûnus, i,) militum, Tribunes of the soldiers; officers in the Roman army, who had the command of a division of a legion. To take care of the works and camp, to communicate the watchword to the guards, and to give judgment in certain cases, formed the duty of the military tribunes. Romulus first appointed the tribunes, to whom he gave that name from their being only three in number, one out of each tribe. But afterwards, each legion had six tribunes. The right of nomination belonged first to the kings, then to the consuls, or dictators, and, at a later period, to the people.

Trinobantes, um, a nation of ancient Britain, inhabiting the counties now called Essex and Middlesex. Cassivellaunus was their king at the time Cæsar invaded this island.

Tulingi, örum, a people of Germany, between the rivers Danubius, (Dannbius,) and Rhenus, (Rhine.)

Túrnônes, um, or, i, örum, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the banks of the river Loire, about 140 miles from the sea. Their name is perpetuated by the modern appellation of the country, Touraine, and their city Tours, anciently Túrnônes.

Turris, is, a tower. The towers used in the Roman military works were of two kinds, the fixed and the moveable. The fixed towers were erected on the agger, or mound, and were raised suffi-
ciently high to overlook and command the enemy’s ramparts, and from them showers of arrows, darts, and other missiles were thrown by means of various engines. The moveable towers (See wood cut, next page,) were pushed forward on rollers or wheels fixed below. To prevent them from being set on fire they were covered with raw hides and pieces of coarse woollen cloth. They were of immense size, sometimes forty or fifty feet square, and higher than the walls, or even the towers of the city. When brought up against the walls, a place was seldom able to stand out long. Sometimes they were provided with a species of drop or platform, which being let down reached from the tower to the top of the wall and formed a species of bridge by which the assailants took possession of the walls.
Ubii, a people of Germany, whose territories were on the Rhine opposite to the Sigambri.

Unelli, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the northwest of what is now called Normandy. Their country was bounded on three sides by the sea. Their chief town was Coriallum, (Gouril.) Off the coast of the Unelli, lay the islands of Caesarea, (Jersey,) Sarnia, (Guernsey,) and Reduna, (Alderney,) which have long been in possession of the British.

Usipetes, um, or Usipii, a people of Germany, on the right bank of the Rhenus, (Rhine.)

Vahalis, is, m. Wakah, or, Waal, the left branch of the Rhenus, (Rhine.) It joins the Mosa, (Meuse,) at the island of Voorn, and falls into the German sea below the Breil.

Valerius, i, (Caius V. Caburus,) a chief man among the Gauls in Provincia, whose original name appears to have been Caburus.
On being made a Roman citizen, by C. Valerius Flaccus, he, as was usual, took the name of his patron.

Valerius, i, (Caius, V. Flaccus,) a noble Roman, who conferred the freedom of the city on C. Valerius Caburus.

Valerius i, (Caius V. Procillus,) the son of C. Valerius Caburus, was the chief man in Provincia. Caesar, on account of his knowledge of the Gallic language, sent him and M. Mettius to hold an interview with Ariovistus, king of Germany. The German king imprisoned them both, but they were afterwards rescued by the Romans during the flight of their army.

Vallum, the ramparts of a Roman encampment, composed of the earth dug out from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it to keep it together. (See Castra.)

Vangiones, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the west bank of the Rhenus, (Rhine.) They were originally from Germany, and, at one time, had probably lands on both sides of that river. Their chief town was Borbetomagus, now Worms.

Velanius, i, (Quintus, i,) sent by Caesar with Silius to procure corn from the Veneti, who detained them in order to receive the hostages which they had given to that general.

Velauni, orum, a small tribe in Gallia Celtica, on the sources of the Ligeris. Their chief city was Anderilium, now Javoli, or Javoux.

Velites, light-armed troops. They were equipped with bows, slings, seven javelins or spears with slender points like arrows, so that, when thrown, they bent, and could not easily be returned by the enemy; a Spanish sword, having both edge and point; a round buckler (parma,) about three feet in diameter, made of wood and covered with leather; and a helmet or casque for the head, generally made of the skin of some wild beast. When the army was drawn up in order of battle, the velites were placed in the spaces or intervals between the maniples, or else on the wings. (See Legio.)

Velocasses. (See Bellovasses.)

Veneti, orum, a nation in the west part of Gallia Celtica, whose chief town was Venetia. Their country lay on the sea coast, northwest from the mouth of the Liger, (Loire.)

Veragri, orum, a people who lived in that part of Provincia, now called Dauphine, on the south bank of the Rhodanius, (Rhone,) above Lacus Lemnus, (the Lake of Geneva.)

Verbiganus, i. (sc. pagus,) or, Urbigenus, one of the four divisions of Helvetia, (Switzerland,) included the cantons of Fribur and Bern, with the districts of Neuchatel and Vallegin.

Vergobretus, i, the title of the supreme magistrate among the Ædui, who was created yearly, and had the power of life and death over his countrymen.

Veromandui, orum, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Nervii and Sueessiones. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduorum, (St. Quentin,) on the right bank of the Samara, (Somme.) Like most of the other nations of Gallia Belgica, they were originally from Germany.

Verto, ënis, a nobleman of the Nervii, who was in Cicero's camp, when attacked by the Eburones, and prevailed on a slave to carry a letter to Caesar, communicating information of that event.
Verudoctius, i, one of the Helvetii. He and Nameius were at the head of the embassy sent to Caesar, requesting permission to march through Provincia.

Vesontio, ōnis, f. Besançon, the chief town of the Sequani, on the east bank of the river Dubis, (Doux)

Vigilia, w, f. a watch, the time a Roman soldier remained on guard during the night. Of these there were four, each three hours long. (See Gr. App. I.)

Vineae, arum, f. a shed, used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers in besieging towns. It consisted of four upright posts, upon which was fixed a roof of hurdle or wicker-work. Above the hurdles were spread raw hides, a little earth, &c. to protect it from fire. The size of the vineae differed according to circumstances. The whole rested upon wheels, so that this mantelet would be easily moved, and under it the besiegers either worked the ram, (See Aries,) or tried to undermine the walls. (See Pluteus.)

Virdomárius, one of the Aedui, more distinguished by political influence, than by noble birth. Caesar, at the request of Divitiácius, raised him to the highest dignity in the state.

Viridivoix, icis, the leading man among the Unelli, who headed a powerful army in an attack on Sabinus, one of Caesar’s lieutenants stationed among them, who defeated Viridivoix by an artful stratagem.

Vocates, ium, a people of Aquitania, supposed by some to be the same with Vasates, whose territories lay on the south bank of the Garonne, about ninety miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was Cossio.

Vocio, ōnis, king of the Norici, to whose sister Ariovistus was married.

Vocontii, ōrum, a nation of Gaul, on the banks of a small stream called Druna, (Drome,) which falls into the Rhodanús, (Rhone,) about 100 miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was Dia, Díe.

Voségus, i, or Vógésus, m. Vauge, is a branch of Mount Jura, stretching in a northern direction, in which are the sources of the Arar, (Saone,) the Mosa, (Meuse,) and the Mosella. (Moselle.)

Volcatius Tullus, Volcati Tulli, an officer, who, according to Caesar, sustained, at Dyrrachium, (Durazza,) with three cohorts, the charge of a whole legion.

Volcae, arum. a numerous and powerful nation of Gaul, between the Garumna, (Garonne,) and the Rhodanús, (Rhone,) divided into the Arecomici, and Tectostigés. q. v.

Volusénus, i, (Caius, i,) an officer whom Caesar sent with a galley to survey the coast of Britain opposite Gaul, and to acquire as correct information as he could, respecting the harbors and landing places, previously to his sailing against that island.

[THE END.]
BOOKS ON THE SCIENCES.

Comstock's Natural Philosophy.
Comstock's Introduction to do.
Comstock's Elements of Chemistry.
Comstock's Young Botanist.
Comstock's Elements of Botany.
Comstock's Elements of Mineralogy.
Comstock's Outlines of Physiology.
Comstock's Natural History of Birds and Beasts.
Brocklesby's Elements of Meteorology.
Brocklesby's Views of the Microscopic World.

Most of the works of Dr. Comstock have been revised within a very short period. His new editions of Natural Philosophy, Chemistry, Botany, &c., have been adopted by many of those who had been induced to try other treatises. They elucidate the subjects in the light of the present moment, and for adaptation to the school-room have not been equaled. The general opinion is expressed in the following:

"The entire series of Comstock's works I consider the best for our public schools, and shall hereafter use them, as I have done heretofore."

E. B. Huntington.

"The text book on Meteorology, and the revelations offered by the Microscope, by Prof. Brocklesby, of Trinity college, are quite extensively used, and ought to be in the hands of all. The subjects treated of are of constant interest and could hardly be better managed."

Professors Olmsted and Silliman; Rev. T. H. Gallaudet; J. L. Comstock, M.D., and many eminent scientific men recommend them highly.

Olney's Geography and Atlas as a work for schools is probably known to teachers generally. It is not known to all, however, that it is now almost a new book. Still possessing the same plan which has always been so popular, it contains, in addition, Ancient Geography and Physical Geography. The Atlas is very large and full. Notwithstanding that other works continue to adopt successive improvements that appear in this, so far as they think they can with safety, it is still the best adapted for schools.

The same author has prepared a set of Outline Maps to precede the Geography and Atlas, which are admirable for young pupils. Also, a Quarto Geography, which is beautifully embellished, and well arranged for those who prefer that form.
University of Toronto
Library

DO NOT REMOVE THE CARD FROM THIS POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU